

INTELLIGENT NETWORK INTERFACE CARD  
AND SYSTEM FOR PROTOCOL PROCESSING



Provisional Patent Application Under 35 U.S.C. § 111 (b)

Inventors: Laurence B. Boucher  
Stephen E. J. Blightman  
Peter K. Craft  
David A. Higgin  
Clive M. Philbrick  
Daryl D. Starr

Assignee: Alacritech Corporation

## 1 Background of the Invention

Network processing as it exists today is a costly and inefficient use of system resources. A 200 MHz Pentium-Pro is typically consumed simply processing network data from a 100Mb/second-network connection. The reasons that this processing is so costly are described here.

### 1.1 Too Many Data Moves

When network packet arrives at a typical network interface card (NIC), the NIC moves the data into pre-allocated network buffers in system main memory. From there the data is read into the CPU cache so that it can be checksummed (assuming of course that the protocol in use requires checksums. Some, like IPX, do not.). Once the data has been fully processed by the protocol stack, it can then be moved into its final destination in memory. Since the CPU is moving the data, and must read the destination cache line in before it can fill it and write it back out, this involves at a minimum 2 more trips across the system memory bus. In short, the best one can hope for is that the data will get moved across the system memory bus 4 times before it arrives in its final destination. It can, and does, get worse. If the data happens to get invalidated from system cache after it has been checksummed, then it must get pulled back across the memory bus before it can be moved to its final destination. Finally, on some systems, including Windows NT 4.0, the data gets copied yet another time while being moved up the protocol stack. In NT 4.0, this occurs between the miniport driver interface and the protocol driver interface. This can add up to a whopping 8 trips across the system memory bus (the 4 trips described above, plus the move to replenish the cache, plus 3 more to copy from the miniport to the protocol driver). That's enough to bring even today's advanced memory busses to their knees.

Provisional Pat. App. of Alacritech, Inc.  
Inventors Laurence B. Boucher et al.  
Express Mail Label # EH756230105US

*AlPro*

**PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT COVER SHEET**  
 (Large Entity)

JC534 U.S. PTO  
 10/14/97

This is a request for filing a PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT under 37 CFR 1.53 (b)(2).

|               |         |                                      |   |
|---------------|---------|--------------------------------------|---|
| Docket Number | ALA-001 | Type a plus sign (+) inside this box | + |
|---------------|---------|--------------------------------------|---|

| INVENTOR(s)/APPLICANT(s) |            |                |  |
|--------------------------|------------|----------------|--|
| LAST NAME                | FIRST NAME | MIDDLE INITIAL | RESIDENCE (CITY AND EITHER STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY) |
| Boucher                  | Laurence   | B.             | Saratoga, California                                 |
| Blightman                | Stephen    | E. J.          | San Jose, California                                 |
| Craft                    | Peter      | K.             | San Francisco, California                            |
| Higgin                   | David      | A.             | Saratoga, California                                 |

TITLE OF THE INVENTION (280 characters max)

INTELLIGENT NETWORK INTERFACE CARD AND SYSTEM FOR PROTOCOL PROCESSING

CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

Mark Lauer  
 6850 Regional Street,  
 Suite 250  
 Dublin  
 Tel: (510)556-3500  
 Fax: (510) 803-8189

|       |    |          |       |         |     |
|-------|----|----------|-------|---------|-----|
| STATE | CA | ZIP CODE | 94568 | COUNTRY | USA |
|-------|----|----------|-------|---------|-----|

ENCLOSED APPLICATION PARTS (check all that apply)

|                                     |               |                  |                           |                                     |                 |  |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Specification | Number of Pages  | 130                       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Other (specify) | Drawings are included within Specification |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Drawing(s)    | Number of Sheets | included in Specification |                                     |                 |  |

METHOD OF PAYMENT OF FILING FEES FOR THIS PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT (check one)

|                                     |  |                   |          |
|-------------------------------------|--|-------------------|----------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | A check or money order is enclosed to cover the filing fees                                    | FILING FEE AMOUNT | \$150.00 |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge filing fees and credit Deposit Account Number: |                   |          |

The invention was made by an agency of the United States Government or under a contract with an agency of the United States

No.  
 Yes, the name of the U.S. Government agency and the Government contract number \_\_\_\_\_

Respectfully submitted,

SIGNATURE 

Date **October 14 1997**

TYPED or PRINTED NAME **Mark Lauer**

REGISTRATION NO. **36,578**  
 (if appropriate)

Additional inventors are being named on separately numbered sheets attached hereto

**USE ONLY FOR FILING A PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT**  
 SEND TO: Box Provisional Application, Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231

**PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT COVER SHEET**  
(Large Entity)

| INVENTOR(s)/APPLICANT(s) |            |                |  |
|--------------------------|------------|----------------|--|
| LAST NAME                | FIRST NAME | MIDDLE INITIAL | RESIDENCE (CITY AND EITHER STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY) |
| Philbrick                | Clive      | M.             | San Jose, California                                 |
| Starr                    | Daryl      | D.             | Milpitas, California                                 |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |
|                          |            |                |  |

PHILBRICK STARR

**USE ONLY FOR FILING A PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT**  
**SEND TO: Box Provisional Application, Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231**

**CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY "EXPRESS MAIL" (37 CFR 1.10)**

Docket No.

Applicant(s): **Laurence B. Boucher et al.**

**ALA-001**

Serial No.

Filing Date

Examiner

Group Art Unit

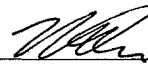
Invention: **INTELLIGENT NETWORK INTERFACE CARD AND SYSTEM FOR PROTOCOL PROCESSING**

I hereby certify that this **PROVISIONAL PATENT APPLICATION, COVER SHEET & CHECK FOR \$150.00**  
*(Identify type of correspondence)*

is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under  
37 CFR 1.10 in an envelope addressed to: The Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231 on  
**October 14, 1997**  
*(Date)*

**Mark Lauer**

*(Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Correspondence)*



*(Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence)*

**EH756230105US**

*("Express Mail" Mailing Label Number)*

**Note: Each paper must have its own certificate of mailing.**

264401 60879009

# INTELLIGENT NETWORK INTERFACE CARD AND SYSTEM FOR PROTOCOL PROCESSING

Provisional Patent Application Under 35 U.S.C. § 111 (b)

Inventors: Laurence B. Boucher  
Stephen E. J. Blightman  
Peter K. Craft  
David A. Higgin  
Clive M. Philbrick  
Daryl D. Starr

Assignee: Alacritech Corporation

## 1 Background of the Invention

Network processing as it exists today is a costly and inefficient use of system resources. A 200 MHz Pentium-Pro is typically consumed simply processing network data from a 100Mb/second-network connection. The reasons that this processing is so costly are described here.

### 1.1 Too Many Data Moves

When network packet arrives at a typical network interface card (NIC), the NIC moves the data into pre-allocated network buffers in system main memory. From there the data is read into the CPU cache so that it can be checksummed (assuming of course that the protocol in use requires checksums. Some, like IPX, do not.). Once the data has been fully processed by the protocol stack, it can then be moved into its final destination in memory. Since the CPU is moving the data, and must read the destination cache line in before it can fill it and write it back out, this involves at a minimum 2 more trips across the system memory bus. In short, the best one can hope for is that the data will get moved across the system memory bus 4 times before it arrives in its final destination. It can, and does, get worse. If the data happens to get invalidated from system cache after it has been checksummed, then it must get pulled back across the memory bus before it can be moved to its final destination. Finally, on some systems, including Windows NT 4.0, the data gets copied yet another time while being moved up the protocol stack. In NT 4.0, this occurs between the miniport driver interface and the protocol driver interface. This can add up to a whopping 8 trips across the system memory bus (the 4 trips described above, plus the move to replenish the cache, plus 3 more to copy from the miniport to the protocol driver). That's enough to bring even today's advanced memory busses to their knees.

Provisional Pat. App. of Alacritech, Inc.  
Inventors Laurence B. Boucher et al.  
Express Mail Label # EH756230105US

2025 RELEASE UNDER E.O. 14176

## 1.2 Too Much Processing by the CPU

In all but the original move from the NIC to system memory, the system CPU is responsible for moving the data. This is particularly expensive because while the CPU is moving this data it can do nothing else. While moving the data the CPU is typically stalled waiting for the relatively slow memory to satisfy its read and write requests. A CPU, which can execute an instruction every 5 nanoseconds, must now wait as long as several hundred nanoseconds for the memory controller to respond before it can begin its next instruction. Even today's advanced pipelining technology doesn't help in these situations because that relies on the CPU being able to do useful work while it waits for the memory controller to respond. If the only thing the CPU has to look forward to for the next several hundred instructions is more data moves, then the CPU ultimately gets reduced to the speed of the memory controller.

Moving all this data with the CPU slows the system down even after the data has been moved. Since both the source and destination cache lines must be pulled into the CPU cache when the data is moved, more than 3k of instructions and or data resident in the CPU cache must be flushed or invalidated for every 1500 byte frame. This is of course assuming a combined instruction and data second level cache, as is the case with the Pentium processors. After the data has been moved, the former resident of the cache will likely need to be pulled back in, stalling the CPU even when we are not performing network processing. Ideally a system would never have to bring network frames into the CPU cache, instead reserving that precious commodity for instructions and data that are referenced repeatedly and frequently.

But the data movement is not the only drain on the CPU. There is also a fair amount of processing that must be done by the protocol stack software. The most obvious expense is calculating the checksum for each TCP segment (or UDP datagram). Beyond this, however, there is other processing to be done as well. The TCP connection object must be located when a given TCP segment arrives, IP header checksums must be calculated, there are buffer and memory management issues, and finally there is also the significant expense of interrupt processing which we will discuss in the following section.

## 1.3 Too Many Interrupts

A 64k SMB request (write or read-reply) is typically made up of 44 TCP segments when running over Ethernet (1500 byte MTU). Each of these segments may result in an interrupt to the CPU. Furthermore, since TCP must acknowledge all of this incoming data, it's possible to get another 44 transmit-complete interrupts as a result of sending out the TCP acknowledgements. While this is possible, it is not terribly likely. Delayed ACK timers allow us to acknowledge more than one segment at a time. And delays in interrupt processing may mean that we are able to process more than one incoming network frame per interrupt. Nevertheless, even if we assume 4 incoming frames per input, and an acknowledgement for every 2 segments (as is typical per the ACK-every-other-segment property of TCP), we are still left with 33 interrupts per 64k SMB request.

Interrupts tend to be very costly to the system. Often when a system is interrupted, important information must be flushed or invalidated from the system cache so that the interrupt routine instructions, and needed data can be pulled into the cache. Since the

CPU will return to its prior location after the interrupt, it is likely that the information flushed from the cache will immediately need to be pulled back into the cache.

What's more, interrupts force a pipeline flush in today's advanced processors. While the processor pipeline is an extremely efficient way of improving CPU performance, it can be expensive to get going after it has been flushed.

Finally, each of these interrupts results in expensive register accesses across the peripheral bus (PCI). This is discussed more in the following section.

#### **1.4 Inefficient Use of the Peripheral Bus (PCI)**

We noted earlier that when the CPU has to access system memory, it may be stalled for several hundred nanoseconds. When it has to read from PCI, it may be stalled for many microseconds. This happens every time the CPU takes an interrupt from a standard NIC. The first thing the CPU must do when it receives one of these interrupts is to read the NIC Interrupt Status Register (ISR) from PCI to determine the cause of the interrupt. The most troubling thing about this is that since interrupt lines are shared on PC-based systems, we may have to perform this expensive PCI read even when the interrupt is not meant for us!

There are other peripheral bus inefficiencies as well. Typical NICs operate using descriptor rings. When a frame arrives, the NIC reads a receive descriptor from system memory to determine where to place the data. Once the data has been moved to main memory, the descriptor is then written back out to system memory with status about the received frame. Transmit operates in a similar fashion. The CPU must notify that NIC that it has a new transmit. The NIC will read the descriptor to locate the data, read the data itself, and then write the descriptor back with status about the send. Typically on transmits the NIC will then read the next expected descriptor to see if any more data needs to be sent. In short, each receive or transmit frame results in 3 or 4 separate PCI reads or writes (not counting the status register read).

## **2 Summary of the Invention**

Alacritech was formed with the idea that the network processing described above could be offloaded onto a cost-effective Intelligent Network Interface Card (INIC). With the Alacritech INIC, we address each of the above problems, resulting in the following advancements:

1. The vast majority of the data is moved directly from the INIC into its final destination. A single trip across the system memory bus.
2. There is no header processing, little data copying, and no checksumming required by the CPU. Because of this, the data is never moved into the CPU cache, allowing the system to keep important instructions and data resident in the CPU cache.
3. Interrupts are reduced to as little as 4 interrupts per 64k SMB read and 2 per 64k SMB write.
4. There are no CPU reads over PCI and there are fewer PCI operations per receive or transmit transaction.

In the remainder of this document we will describe how we accomplish the above.

## 2.1 Perform Transport Level Processing on the INIC

In order to keep the system CPU from having to process the packet headers or checksum the packet, we must perform this task on the INIC. This is a daunting task. There are more than 20,000 lines of C code that make up the FreeBSD TCP/IP protocol stack. Clearly this is more code than could be efficiently handled by a competitively priced network card. Furthermore, as we've noted above, the TCP/IP protocol stack is complicated enough to consume a 200 MHz Pentium-Pro. Clearly in order to perform this function on an inexpensive card, we need special network processing hardware as opposed to simply using a general purpose CPU.

### 2.1.1 Only Support TCP/IP

In this section we introduce the notion of a "context". A context is required to keep track of information that spans many, possibly discontinuous, pieces of information. When processing TCP/IP data, there are actually two contexts that must be maintained. The first context is required to reassemble IP fragments. It holds information about the status of the IP reassembly as well as any checksum information being calculated across the IP datagram (UDP or TCP). This context is identified by the IP\_ID of the datagram as well as the source and destination IP addresses. The second context is required to handle the sliding window protocol of TCP. It holds information about which segments have been sent or received, and which segments have been acknowledged, and is identified by the IP source and destination addresses and TCP source and destination ports.

If we were to choose to handle both contexts in hardware, we would have to potentially keep track of many pieces of information. One such example is a case in which a single 64k SMB write is broken down into 44 1500 byte TCP segments, which are in turn broken down into 131 576 byte IP fragments, all of which can come in any order (though the maximum window size is likely to restrict the number of outstanding segments considerably).

Fortunately, TCP performs a Maximum Segment Size negotiation at connection establishment time, which should prevent IP fragmentation in nearly all TCP connections. The only time that we should end up with fragmented TCP connections is when there is a router in the middle of a connection which must fragment the segments to support a smaller MTU. The only networks that use a smaller MTU than Ethernet are serial line interfaces such as SLIP and PPP. At the moment, the fastest of these connections only run at 128k (ISDN) so even if we had 256 of these connections, we would still only need to support 34Mb/sec, or a little over three 10bT connections worth of data. This is not enough to justify any performance enhancements that the INIC offers. If this becomes an issue at some point, we may decide to implement the MTU discovery algorithm, which should prevent TCP fragmentation on all connections (unless an ICMP redirect changes the connection route while the connection is established).

With this in mind, it seems a worthy sacrifice to not attempt to handle fragmented TCP segments on the INIC.

UDP is another matter. Since UDP does not support the notion of a Maximum Segment Size, it is the responsibility of IP to break down a UDP datagram into MTU sized



packets. Thus, fragmented UDP datagrams are very common. The most common UDP application running today is NFSV2 over UDP. While this is also the most common version of NFS running today, the current version of Solaris being sold by Sun Microsystems runs NFSV3 over TCP by default. We can expect to see the NFSV2/UDP traffic start to decrease over the coming years.

In summary, we will only offer assistance to non-fragmented TCP connections on the INIC.

### 2.1.2 Don't handle TCP "exceptions"

As noted above, we won't provide support for fragmented TCP segments on the INIC. We have also opted to not handle TCP connection and breakdown. Here is a list of other TCP "exceptions" which we have elected to not handle on the INIC:

Fragmented Segments –Discussed above.

Retransmission Timeout – Occurs when we do not get an acknowledgement for previously sent data within the expected time period.

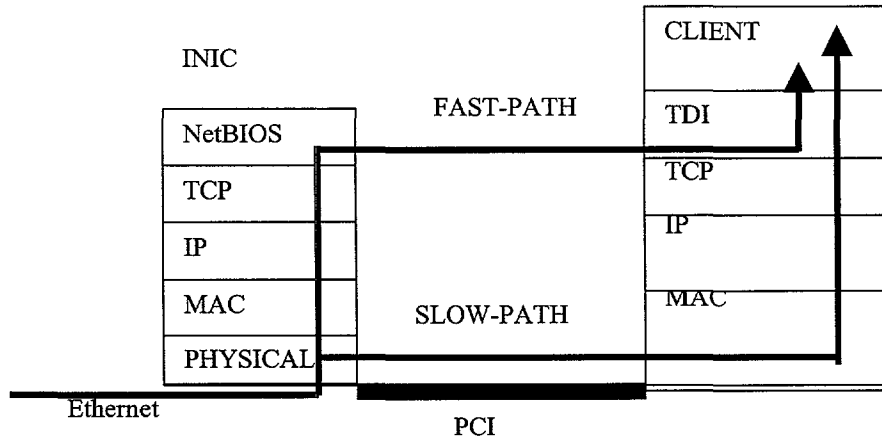
Out of order segments – Occurs when we receive a segment with a sequence number other than the next expected sequence number.

FIN segment – Signals the close of the connection.

Since we have now eliminated support for so many different code paths, it might seem hardly worth the trouble to provide any assistance by the card at all. This is not the case. According to W. Richard Stevens and Gary Write in their book "TCP/IP Illustrated Volume 2", TCP operates without experiencing any exceptions between 97 and 100 percent of the time in local area networks. As network, router, and switch reliability improve this number is likely to only improve with time.

### 2.1.3 Two modes of operation

So the next question is what to do about the network packets that do not fit our criteria. The answer is to use two modes of operation: One in which the network frames are processed on the INIC through TCP and one in which the card operates like a typical dumb NIC. We call these two modes fast-path, and slow-path. In the slow-path case, network frames are handed to the system at the MAC layer and passed up through the host protocol stack like any other network frame. In the fast path case, network data is given to the host after the headers have been processed and stripped.



The transmit case works in much the same fashion. In slow-path mode the packets are given to the INIC with all of the headers attached. The INIC simply sends these packets out as if it were a dumb NIC. In fast-path mode, the host gives raw data to the INIC which it must carve into MSS sized segments, add headers to the data, perform checksums on the segment, and then send it out on the wire.

### 2.1.4 The TCB cache

Consider a situation in which a TCP connection is being handled by the card and a fragmented TCP segment for that connection arrives. In this situation, it will be necessary for the card to turn control of this connection over to the host.

This introduces the notion of a Transmit Control Block (TCB) cache. A TCB is a structure that contains the entire context associated with a connection. This includes the source and destination IP addresses and source and destination TCP ports that define the connection. It also contains information about the connection itself such as the current send and receive sequence numbers, and the first-hop MAC address, etc. The complete set of TCBs exists in host memory, but a subset of these may be "owned" by the card at any given time. This subset is the TCB cache. The INIC can own up to 256 TCBs at any given time.

TCBs are initialized by the host during TCP connection setup. Once the connection has achieved a "steady-state" of operation, its associated TCB can then be turned over to the INIC, putting us into fast-path mode. From this point on, the INIC owns the connection until either a FIN arrives signaling that the connection is being closed, or until an

exception occurs which the INIC is not designed to handle (such as an out of order segment). When any of these conditions occur, the INIC will then flush the TCB back to host memory, and issue a message to the host telling it that it has relinquished control of the connection, thus putting the connection back into slow-path mode. From this point on, the INIC simply hands incoming segments that are destined for this TCB off to the host with all of the headers intact.

Note that when a connection is owned by the INIC, the host is not allowed to reference the corresponding TCB in host memory as it will contain invalid information about the state of the connection.

### 2.1.5 TCP hardware assistance

When a frame is received by the INIC, it must verify it completely before it even determines whether it belongs to one of its TCBs or not. This includes all header validation (is it IP, IPV4 or V6, is the IP header checksum correct, is the TCP checksum correct, etc). Once this is done it must compare the source and destination IP address and the source and destination TCP port with those in each of its TCBs to determine if it is associated with one of its TCBs. This is an expensive process. To expedite this, we have added several features in hardware to assist us. The header is fully parsed by hardware and its type is summarized in a single status word. The checksum is also verified automatically in hardware, and a hash key is created out of the IP addresses and TCP ports to expedite TCB lookup. For full details on these and other hardware optimizations, refer to the INIC Hardware Specification sections (Heading 8).

With the aid of these and other hardware features, much of the work associated with TCP is done essentially for free. Since the card will automatically calculate the checksum for TCP segments, we can pass this on to the host, even when the segment is for a TCB that the INIC does not own.

### 2.1.6 TCP Summary

By moving TCP processing down to the INIC we have offloaded the host of a large amount of work. The host no longer has to pull the data into its cache to calculate the TCP checksum. It does not have to process the packet headers, and it does not have to generate TCP ACKs. We have achieved most of the goals outlined above, but we are not done yet.

## 2.2 Transport Layer Interface

This section defines the INIC's relation to the hosts transport layer interface (Called TDI or Transport Driver Interface in Windows NT). For full details on this interface, refer to the Alacritech TCP (ATCP) driver specification (Heading 4).

### 2.2.1 Receive

Simply implementing TCP on the INIC does not allow us to achieve our goal of landing the data in its final destination. Somehow the host has to tell the INIC where to put the data. This is a problem in that the host can not do this without knowing what the data

201908141449

actually *is*. Fortunately, NT has provided a mechanism by which a transport driver can "indicate" a small amount of data to a client above it while telling it that it has more data to come. The client, having then received enough of the data to know what it is, is then responsible for allocating a block of memory and passing the memory address or addresses back down to the transport driver, which is in turn responsible for moving the data into the provided location.

We will make use of this feature by providing a small amount of any received data to the host, with a notification that we have more data pending. When this small amount of data is passed up to the client, and it returns with the address in which to put the remainder of the data, our host transport driver will pass that address to the INIC which will DMA the remainder of the data into its final destination.

Clearly there are circumstances in which this does not make sense. When a small amount of data (500 bytes for example), with a push flag set indicating that the data must be delivered to the client immediately, it does not make sense to deliver some of the data directly while waiting for the list of addresses to DMA the rest. Under these circumstances, it makes more sense to deliver the 500 bytes directly to the host, and allow the host to copy it into its final destination. While various ranges are feasible, it is currently preferred that anything less than a segment's (1500 bytes) worth of data will be delivered directly to the host, while anything more will be delivered as a small piece which may be 128 bytes, while waiting until receiving the destination memory address before moving the rest.

The trick then is knowing when the data should be delivered to the client or not. As we've noted, a push flag indicates that the data should be delivered to the client immediately, but this alone is not sufficient. Fortunately, in the case of NetBIOS transactions (such as SMB), we are explicitly told the length of the session message in the NetBIOS header itself. With this we can simply indicate a small amount of data to the host immediately upon receiving the first segment. The client will then allocate enough memory for the entire NetBIOS transaction, which we can then use to DMA the remainder of the data into as it arrives. In the case of a large (56k for example) NetBIOS session message, all but the first couple hundred bytes will be DMA'd to their final destination in memory.

But what about applications that do not reside above NetBIOS? In this case we can not rely on a session level protocol to tell us the length of the transaction. Under these circumstances we will buffer the data as it arrives until A) we have receive some predetermined number of bytes such as 8k, or B) some predetermined period of time passes between segments or C) we get a push flag. If after any of these conditions occur we will then indicate some or all of the data to the host depending on the amount of data buffered. If the data buffered is greater than about 1500 bytes we must then also wait for the memory address to be returned from the host so that we may then DMA the remainder of the data.

### 2.2.2 Transmit

The transmit case is much simpler. In this case the client (NetBIOS for example) issues a TDI Send with a list of memory addresses which contain data that it wishes to send along

with the length. The host can then pass this list of addresses and length off to the INIC. The INIC will then pull the data from its source location in host memory, as it needs it, until the complete TDI request is satisfied.

### 2.2.3 Affect on interrupts

Note that when we receive a large SMB transaction, for example, that there are two interactions between the INIC and the host. The first in which the INIC indicates a small amount of the transaction to the host, and the second in which the host provides the memory location(s) in which the INIC places the remainder of the data. This results in only two interrupts from the INIC. The first when it indicates the small amount of data and the second after it has finished filling in the host memory given to it. A drastic reduction from the 33/64k SMB request that we estimate at the beginning of this section.

On transmit, we actually only receive a single interrupt when the send command that has been given to the INIC completes.

### 2.2.4 Transport Layer Interface Summary

Having now established our interaction with Microsoft's TDI interface, we have achieved our goal of landing most of our data directly into its final destination in host memory. We have also managed to transmit all data from its original location on host memory. And finally, we have reduced our interrupts to 2 per 64k SMB read and 1 per 64k SMB write. The only thing that remains in our list of objectives is to design an efficient host (PCI) interface.

## 2.3 Host (PCI) Interface

In this section we define the host interface. For a more detailed description, refer to the "Host Interface Strategy for the Alacritech INIC" section (Heading 3).

### 2.3.1 Avoid PCI reads

One of our primary objectives in designing the host interface of the INIC was to eliminate PCI reads in either direction. PCI reads are particularly inefficient in that they completely stall the reader until the transaction completes. As we noted above, this could hold a CPU up for several microseconds, a thousand times the time typically required to execute a single instruction. PCI writes on the other hand, are usually buffered by the memory-bus $\leftrightarrow$ PCI-bridge allowing the writer to continue on with other instructions. This technique is known as "posting".

#### 2.3.1.1 Memory-based status register

The only PCI read that is required by most NICs is the read of the interrupt status register. This register gives the host CPU information about what event has caused an interrupt (if any). In the design of our INIC we have elected to place this necessary status register into host memory. Thus, when an event occurs on the INIC, it writes the status register to an agreed upon location in host memory. The corresponding driver on the host reads this local register to determine the cause of the interrupt. The interrupt lines are

held high until the host clears the interrupt by writing to the INIC's Interrupt Clear Register. Shadow registers are maintained on the INIC to ensure that events are not lost.

### 2.3.1.2 Buffer Addresses are pushed to the INIC

Since it is imperative that our INIC operate as efficiently as possible, we must also avoid PCI reads from the INIC. We do this by pushing our receive buffer addresses to the INIC. As mentioned at the beginning of this section, most NICs work on a descriptor queue algorithm in which the NIC reads a descriptor from main memory in order to determine where to place the next frame. We will instead write receive buffer addresses to the INIC as receive buffers are filled. In order to avoid having to write to the INIC for every receive frame, we instead allow the host to pass off a pages worth (4k) of buffers in a single write.

### 2.3.2 Support small and large buffers on receive

In order to reduce further the number of writes to the INIC, and to reduce the amount of memory being used by the host, we support two different buffer sizes. A small buffer contains roughly 200 bytes of data payload, as well as extra fields containing status about the received data bringing the total size to 256 bytes. We can therefore pass 16 of these small buffers at a time to the INIC. Large buffers are 2k in size. They are used to contain any fast or slow-path data that does not fit in a small buffer. Note that when we have a large fast-path receive, a small buffer will be used to indicate a small piece of the data, while the remainder of the data will be DMA'd directly into memory. Large buffers are never passed to the host by themselves, instead they are always accompanied by a small buffer which contains status about the receive along with the large buffer address. By operating in the manner, the driver must only maintain and process the small buffer queue. Large buffers are returned to the host by virtue of being attached to small buffers. Since large buffers are 2k in size they are passed to the INIC 2 buffers at a time.

### 2.3.3 Command and response buffers

In addition to needing a manner by which the INIC can pass incoming data to us, we also need a manner by which we can instruct the INIC to send data. Plus, when the INIC indicates a small amount of data in a large fast-path receive, we need a method of passing back the address or addresses in which to put the remainder of the data. We accomplish both of these with the use of a command buffer. Sadly, the command buffer is the only place in which we must violate our rule of only pushing data across PCI. For the command buffer, we write the address of command buffer to the INIC. The INIC then reads the contents of the command buffer into its memory so that it can execute the desired command. Since a command may take a relatively long time to complete, it is unlikely that command buffers will complete in order. For this reason we also maintain a response buffer queue. Like the small and large receive buffers, a page worth of response buffers is passed to the INIC at a time. Response buffers are only 32 bytes, so we have to replenish the INIC's supply of them relatively infrequently. The response buffers only purpose is to indicate the completion of the designated command buffer, and to pass status about the completion.

## 2.4 Examples

In this section we will provide a couple of examples describing some of the differing data flows that we might see on the Alacritech INIC.

### 2.4.1 Fast-path 56k NetBIOS session message

Let's say a 56k NetBIOS session message is received on the INIC. The first segment will contain the NetBIOS header, which contains the total NetBIOS length. A small chunk of this first segment is provided to the host by filling in a small receive buffer, modifying the interrupt status register on the host, and raising the appropriate interrupt line. Upon receiving the interrupt, the host will read the ISR, clear it by writing back to the INIC's Interrupt Clear Register, and will then process its small receive buffer queue looking for receive buffers to be processed. Upon finding the small buffer, it will indicate the small amount of data up to the client to be processed by NetBIOS. It will also, if necessary, replenish the receive buffer pool on the INIC by passing off a pages worth of small buffers. Meanwhile, the NetBIOS client will allocate a memory pool large enough to hold the entire NetBIOS message, and will pass this address or set of addresses down to the transport driver. The transport driver will allocate an INIC command buffer, fill it in with the list of addresses, set the command type to tell the INIC that this is where to put the receive data, and then pass the command off to the INIC by writing to the command register. When the INIC receives the command buffer, it will DMA the remainder of the NetBIOS data, as it is received, into the memory address or addresses designated by the host. Once the entire NetBIOS transaction is complete, the INIC will complete the command by writing to the response buffer with the appropriate status and command buffer identifier.

In this example, we have two interrupts, and all but a couple hundred bytes are DMA'd directly to their final destination. On PCI we have two interrupt status register writes, two interrupt clear register writes, a command register write, a command read, and a response buffer write.

With a standard NIC this would result in an estimated 30 interrupts, 30 interrupt register reads, 30 interrupt clear writes, and 58 descriptor reads and writes. Plus the data will get moved anywhere from 4 to 8 times across the system memory bus.

### 2.4.2 Slow-path receive

If the INIC receives a frame that does not contain a TCP segment for one of its TCB's, it simply passes it to the host as if it were a dumb NIC. If the frame fits into a small buffer (~200 bytes or less), then it simply fills in the small buffer with the data and notifies the host. Otherwise it places the data in a large buffer, writes the address of the large buffer into a small buffer, and again notifies the host. The host, having received the interrupt and found the completed small buffer, checks to see if the data is contained in the small buffer, and if not, locates the large buffer. Having found the data, the host will then pass the frame upstream to be processed by the standard protocol stack. It must also replenish the INIC's small and large receive buffer pool if necessary.

With the INIC, this will result in one interrupt, one interrupt status register write and one interrupt clear register write as well as a possible small and or large receive buffer register write. The data will go through the normal path although if it is TCP data then the host will not have to perform the checksum.

With a standard NIC this will result in a single interrupt, an interrupt status register read, an interrupt clear register write, and a descriptor read and write. The data will get processed as it would by the INIC, except for a possible extra checksum.

### 2.4.3 Fast-path 400 byte send

In this example, lets assume that the client has a small amount of data to send. It will issue the TDI Send to the transport driver which will allocate a command buffer, fill it in with the address of the 400 byte send, and set the command to indicate that it is a transmit. It will then pass the command off to the INIC by writing to the command register. The INIC will then DMA the 400 bytes into its own memory, prepare a frame with the appropriate checksums and headers, and send the frame out on the wire. After it has received the acknowledgement it will then notify the host of the completion by writing to a response buffer.

With the INIC, this will result in one interrupt, one interrupt status register write, one interrupt clear register write, a command buffer register write a command buffer read, and a response buffer write. The data is DMA'd directly from the system memory.

With a standard NIC this will result in a single interrupt, an interrupt status register read, an interrupt clear register write, and a descriptor read and write. The data would get moved across the system bus a minimum of 4 times. The resulting TCP ACK of the data, however, would add yet another interrupt, another interrupt status register read, interrupt clear register write, a descriptor read and write, and yet more processing by the host protocol stack.

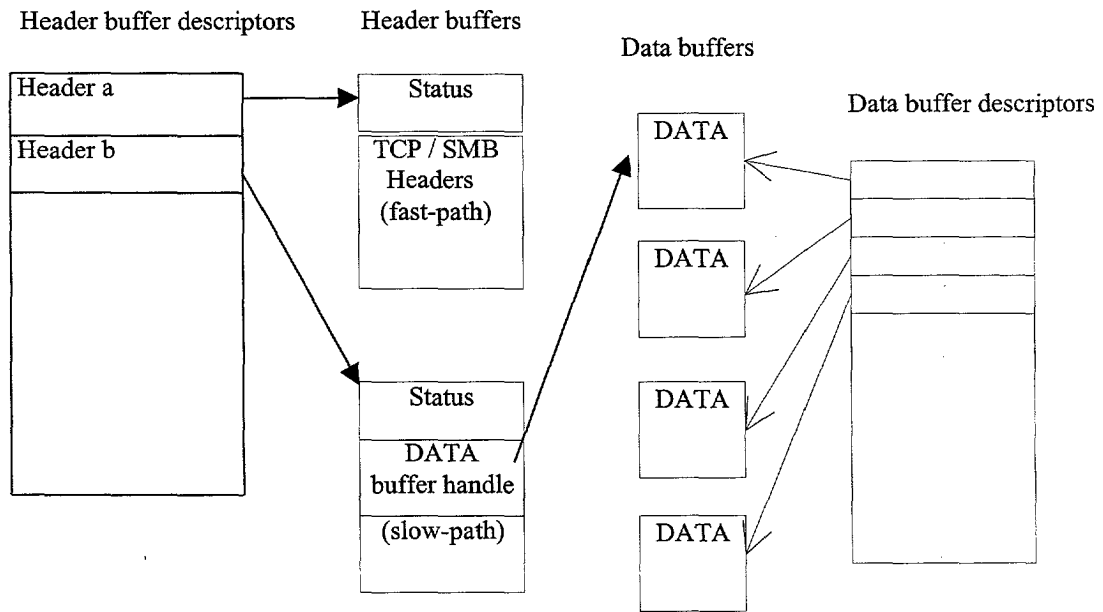
## 3 Host Interface Strategy for the Alacritech INIC

This section describes the host interface strategy for the Alacritech Intelligent Network Interface Card (INIC). The goal of the Alacritech INIC is to not only process network data through TCP, but also to provide zero-copy support for the SMP upper-layer protocol. It achieves this by supporting two paths for sending and receiving data, the fast-path and the slow-path. The fast path data flow corresponds to connections that are maintained on the NIC, while slow-path traffic corresponds to network data for which the NIC does not have a connection. The fast-path flow works by passing a header to the host and subsequently holding further data for that connection on the card until the host responds via an INIC command with a set of buffers into which to place the accumulated data. In the slow-path data flow, the INIC will be operating as a "dumb" NIC, so that these packets are simply dumped into frame buffers on the host as they arrive. To do either path requires a pool of smaller buffers to be used for headers and a pool of data buffers for frames/data that are too large for the header buffer, with both pools being managed by the INIC. This section discusses how these two pools of data are managed as well as how buffers are associated with a given context.



### 3.1 Receive Interface

The varying requirements of the fast and slow paths and a desire to save PCI bandwidth are the driving forces behind the host interface that is described herein. As mentioned above, the fast-path flow puts a header into a header buffer that is then forwarded to the host. The host uses the header to determine what further data is following, allocates the necessary host buffers, and these are passed back to the INIC via a command to the INIC. The INIC then fills these buffers from data it was accumulating on the card and notifies the host by sending a response to the command. Alternatively, the fast-path may receive a header and data that is a complete request, but that is also too large for a header buffer. This results in a header and data buffer being passed to the host. This latter flow is identical to the slow-path flow, which also puts all the data into the header buffer or, if the header is too small, uses a large (2K) host buffer for all the data. This means that on the unsolicited receive path, the host will only see either a header buffer or a header and at most, one data buffer. Note that data is never split between a header and a data buffer. The diagram below illustrates both situations:



Since we want to fill in the header buffer with a single DMA, the header must be the last piece of data to be written to the host for any received transaction.

#### 3.1.1 Receive Interface Details

#### 3.1.2 Header Buffers

Header buffers in host memory are 256 bytes long, and are aligned on 256 byte boundaries. There will be a field in the header buffer indicating it has valid data. This field will initially be reset by the host before passing the buffer descriptor to the INIC. A

set of header buffers are passed from the host to the INIC by the host writing to the *Header Buffer Address Register* on the INIC. This register is defined as follows:

Bits 31-8            Physical address in host memory of the first of a set of contiguous header buffers

Bits 7-0            Number of header buffers passed.

In this way the host can, say, allocate 16 buffers in a 4K page, and pass all 16 buffers to the INIC with one register write. The INIC will maintain a queue of these header descriptors in the SmallHType queue in it's own local memory, adding to the end of the queue every time the host writes to the *Header Buffer Address Register*. Note that the single entry is added to the queue; the eventual dequeuer will use the count after extracting that entry.

The header buffers, will be used and returned to the host in the same order that they were given to the INIC. The valid field will be set by the INIC before returning the buffer to the host. In this way a PCI interrupt, with a single bit in the interrupt register, may be generated to indicate that there is a header buffer for the host to process. When servicing this interrupt, the host will look at its queue of header buffers, reading the valid field to determine how many header buffers are to be processed.

### 3.1.3 Receive Data Buffers

Receive data buffers in host memory are aligned to page boundaries, assumed here to be 2K bytes long and aligned on 4K page boundaries, 2 buffers per page. In order to pass receive data buffers to the INIC, the host must write to two registers on the INIC. The first register to be written is the *Data Buffer Handle Register*. The buffer handle is not significant to the INIC, but will be copied back to the host to return the buffer to the host. The second register written is the *Data Buffer Address Register*. This is the physical address of the data buffer. When both registers have been written, the INIC will add the contents of these two registers to FreeType queue of data buffer descriptors. Note that the INIC host driver sets the handle register first, then the address register. There needs to be some mechanism put in place to ensure the reading of these registers does not get out of sync with writing them. Effectively the INIC can read the address register first and save its contents, then read the handle register. It can then lock the register pair in some manner such that another write to the handle register is not permitted until the current contents have been saved. Both addresses extracted from the registers are to be written to the FreeType queue. The INIC will extract 2 entries each time when dequeuing.

Data buffers will be allocated and used by the INIC as needed. For each data buffer used by a slow-path transaction, the data buffer handle will be copied into a header buffer. Then the header buffer will be returned to the host.

## 3.2 Transmit Interface

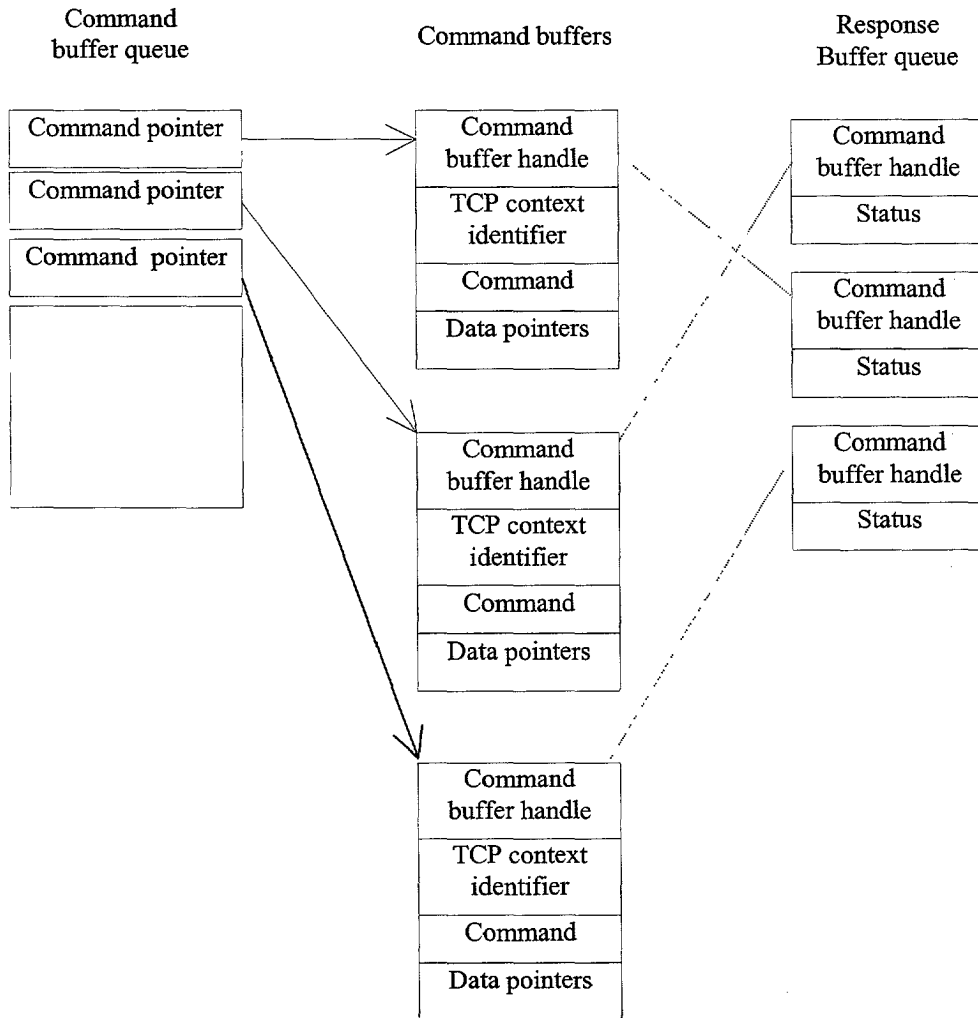
### 3.2.1 Transmit Interface Overview

The transmit interface, like the receive interface, has been designed to minimize the amount of PCI bandwidth and latencies. In order to transmit data, the host will transfer a command buffer to the INIC. This command buffer will include a command buffer

5064809 101497

handle, a command field, possibly a TCP context identification, and a list of physical data pointers. The command buffer handle is defined to be the first word of the command buffer and is used by the host to identify the command. This word will be passed back to the host in a response buffer, since commands may complete out of order, and the host will need to know which command is complete. Commands will be used for many reasons, but primarily to cause the INIC to transmit data, or to pass a set of buffers to the INIC for input data on the fast-path as previously discussed.

Response buffers are physical buffers in host memory. They are used by the INIC in the same order as they were given to it by the host. This enables the host to know which response buffer(s) to next look at when the INIC signals a command completion.



SECRET

### 3.2.2 Transmit Interface Details

#### 3.2.2.1 Command Buffers

Command buffers in host memory are a multiple of 32 bytes, up to a maximum of 1K bytes, and are aligned on 32 byte boundaries. A command buffer is passed to the INIC by writing to one of 5 *Command Buffer Address Registers*. These registers are defined as follows:

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| Bits 31-5 | Physical address in host memory of the command buffer.                        |
| Bits 4-0  | Length of command buffer in bytes / 32 (i.e. number of multiples of 32 bytes) |

This is the physical address of the command buffer. The register to which the command is written predetermines the XMT interface number, or if the command is for the RCV CPU; hence there will be 5 of them, 0 – 3 for XMT and 4 for RCV. When one of these registers has been written, the INIC will add the contents of the register to its own internal queue of command buffer descriptors. The first word of all command buffers is defined to be the command buffer handle. It is the job of the utility CPU to extract a command from its local queue, DMA the command into a small INIC buffer (from the FreeSType queue), and queue that buffer into the Xmit#Type queue, where # is 0 – 3 depending on the interface, or the appropriate RCV queue. The receiving CPU will service the queues to perform the commands. When that CPU has completed a command, it extracts the command buffer handle and passes it back to the host via a response buffer.

#### 3.2.2.2 Response Buffers

Response buffers in host memory are 32 bytes long and aligned on 32 byte boundaries. They are handled in a very similar fashion to header buffers. There will be a field in the response buffer indicating it has valid data. This field will initially be reset by the host before passing the buffer descriptor to the INIC. A set of response buffers are passed from the host to the INIC by the host writing to the *Response Buffer Address Register* on the INIC. This register is defined as follows:

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Bits 31-8 | Physical address in host memory of the first of a set of contiguous response buffers |
| Bits 7-0  | Number of response buffers passed.   |

In this way the host can, say, allocate 128 buffers in a 4K page, and pass all 128 buffers to the INIC with one register write. The INIC will maintain a queue of these header descriptors in its ResponseType queue, adding to the end of the queue every time the host writes to the *Response Buffer Address Register*. The INIC writes the extracted contents including the count, to the queue in exactly the same manner as for the header buffers.

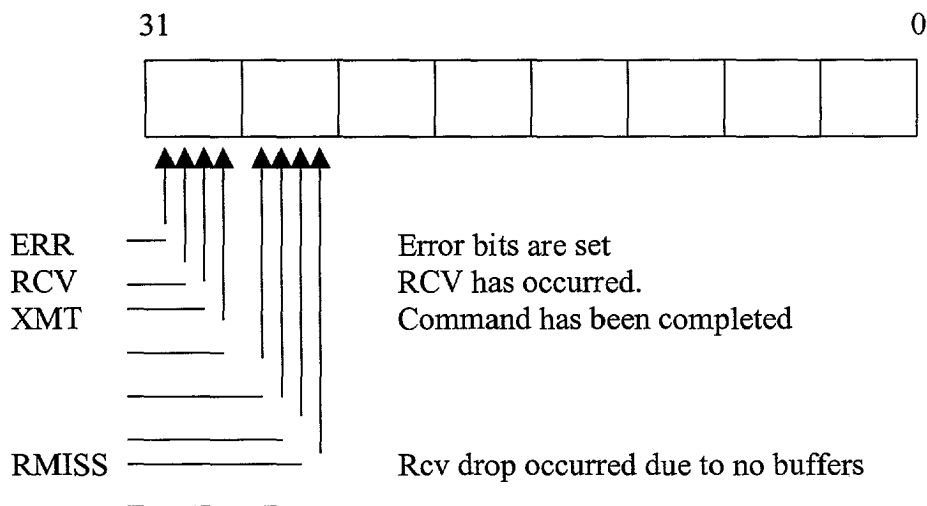
The response buffers can be used and returned to the host in the same order that they were given to the INIC. The valid field will be set by the INIC before returning the buffer

20190910 10:44:59

to the host. In this way a PCI interrupt, with a single bit in the interrupt register, may be generated to indicate that there is a response buffer for the host to process. When servicing this interrupt, the host will look at its queue of response buffers, reading the valid field to determine how many response buffers are to be processed.

### 3.2.3 Interrupt Status Register / Interrupt Mask Register:

The following is the general format of this register:



The setting of any bits in the ISR will cause an interrupt, provided the corresponding bit in the Interrupt Mask Register is set. The default setting for the IMR is 0.

The INIC is configured so that the host should never need to directly read the ISR from the INIC. To support this, it is important for the host/INIC to arrange a buffer area in host memory into which the ISR is dumped. The address and size of that area can be passed to the INIC via a command on the XMT interface. That command will also specify the setting for the IMR. Until the INIC receives this command, it will not DMA the ISR to host memory, and no events will cause an interrupt. The host could if necessary, read the ISR directly from the INIC in this case.

For the host to never have to actually read the register from the INIC itself, it is necessary for the INIC to update this host copy of the register whenever anything in it changes. The host will Ack (or deassert) events in the register by writing the register with 0's in appropriate bit fields. So that the host does not miss events, the following scheme has been developed:

The INIC keeps a local copy of the register whenever it DMAs it to the host i.e. after some event(s). Call this COPYA. Then the INIC starts accumulating any new events not reflected in the host copy in a separate word. Call this NEWA. As the host clears bits by writing the register back with those bits set to zero, the INIC clears these bits in COPYA (or the host write-back goes directly to COPYA). If there are new events in NEWA, it

ORs them with COPYA, and DMAs this new ISR to the host. This new ISR then replaces COPYA, NEWA is cleared and the cycle then repeats.

### 3.2.4 Register Addresses

For the sake of simplicity, in this example the registers are at 4-byte increments from whatever the base address is. Hence:

|       |      |                             |
|-------|------|-----------------------------|
| ISR   | 0x0  | Interrupt Status            |
| IMR   | 0x4  | Interrupt Mask              |
| HBAR  | 0x8  | Header Buffer Address       |
| DBHR  | 0xC  | Data Buffer Handle          |
| DBAR  | 0x10 | Data Buffer Address         |
| CBAR0 | 0x14 | Command Buffer Address XMT0 |
| CBAR1 | 0x18 | Command Buffer Address XMT1 |
| CBAR2 | 0x1C | Command Buffer Address XMT2 |
| CBAR3 | 0x20 | Command Buffer Address XMT3 |
| CBAR4 | 0x24 | Command Buffer Address RCV  |
| RBAR  | 0x28 | Response Buffer Address     |

## 4 Alacritech TCP (ATCP) Design Specification

This section outlines the design specification for the Alacritech TCP (ATCP) transport driver. The ATCP driver consists of three components:

1. The bulk of the protocol stack is based on the FreeBSD TCP/IP protocol stack. This code performs the Ethernet, ARP, IP, ICMP, and (slow path) TCP processing for the driver.
2. At the top of the protocol stack we introduce an NT filter driver used to intercept TDI requests destined for the Microsoft TCP driver.
3. At the bottom of the protocol stack we include an NDIS protocol-driver interface which allows us to communicate with the INIC miniport NDIS driver beneath the ATCP driver.

This section covers each of these topics, as well as issues common to the entire ATCP driver.

### 4.1 Coding style

In order to ensure that our ATCP driver is written in a consistent manner, we have adopted a set of coding guidelines. These guidelines are introduced with the philosophy that we should write code in a Microsoft style since we are introducing an NT-based product. The guidelines below apply to all code that we introduce into our driver. Since a very large portion of our ATCP driver will be based on FreeBSD, and since we are somewhat time-constrained on our driver development, the ported FreeBSD code will be exempt from these guidelines.

20190910 10:49:09

1. Global symbols – All function names and global variables in the ATCP driver should begin with the “ATK” prefix (ATKSend() for instance).
2. Variable names – Microsoft seems to use capital letters to separate multi-word variable names instead of underscores (VariableName instead of variable\_name). We should adhere to this style.
3. Structure pointers – Microsoft typedefs all of their structures. The structure types are always capitals and they typedef a pointer to the structure as “P”<name> as follows:

```
typedef struct _FOO {
    INT    bar;
} FOO, *PFOO;
We will adhere to this style.
```

4. Function calls – Microsoft separates function call arguments on separate lines:

```
X = foobar(
    argument1,
    argument2,
);
We will adhere to this style.
```

5. Comments – While Microsoft seems to alternatively use // and /\* \*/ comment notation, we will exclusively use the /\* \*/ notation.
6. Function comments – Microsoft includes comments with each function that describe the function, its arguments, and its return value. We will also include these comments, but will move them from within the function itself to just prior to the function for better readability.
7. Function arguments – Microsoft includes the keywords IN and OUT when defining function arguments. These keywords denote whether the function argument is used as an input parameter, or alternatively as a placeholder for an output parameter. We will include these keywords.
8. Function prototypes – We will include function prototypes in the most logical header file corresponding to the .c file. For example, the prototype for function foo() found in foo.c will be placed in foo.h.
9. Indentation – Microsoft code fairly consistently uses a tabstop of 4. We will do likewise.
10. Header file #ifndef – each header file should contain a #ifndef/#define/#endif which is used to prevent recursive header file includes. For example, foo.h would include:

```
#ifndef __FOO_H__
#define __FOO_H__
<foo.h contents..>
#endif /* __FOO_H__ */
```

Note the `__NAME_H__` format.

11. Each file must contain a comment at the beginning which includes the \$Id\$ as follows:

```
/*
 * $Id$
 */
```

CVS (RCS) will expand this keyword to denote RCS revision, timestamps, author, etc.

## 4.2 SMP

This section describes the process by which we will make the ATCP driver SMP safe.

The basic rule for SMP kernel code is that any access to a memory variable must be protected by a lock that prevents a competing access by code running on another processor. Spinlocks are the normal locking method for code paths which do not take a long time to execute (and which do not sleep.)

In general each instance of a structure will include a spinlock, which must be acquired before members of that structure are accessed, and held while a function is accessing that instance of the structure. Structures which are logically grouped together may be protected by a single spinlock: for example, the 'in\_pcb' structure, 'tcpb' structure, and 'socket' structure which together constitute the administrative information for a TCP connection will probably be collectively managed by a single spinlock in the 'socket' structure.

In addition, every global data structure such as a list or hash table must also have a protecting spinlock which must be held while the structure is being accessed or modified. The NT DDK in fact provides a number of convenient primitives for SMP-safe list manipulation, and it is recommended that these be used for any new lists. Existing list manipulations in the FreeBSD code can probably be left as-is to minimize code disturbance, except of course that the necessary spinlock acquisition and release must be added around them.

Spinlocks should not be held for long periods of time, and most especially, must not be held during a sleep, since this will lead to deadlocks. There is a significant deficiency in the NT kernel support for SMP systems: it does not provide an operation which allows a spinlock to be exchanged atomically for a sleep lock. This would be a serious problem in a UNIX environment where much of the processing occurs in the context of the user process which initiated the operation. (The spinlock would have to be explicitly released, followed by a separate acquisition of the sleep lock: creating an unsafe window.)

The NT approach is more asynchronous, however: IRPs are simply marked as 'PENDING' when an operation cannot be completed immediately. The calling thread does NOT sleep at that point: it returns, and may go on with other processing. Pending IRPs are later completed, not by waking up the thread which initiated them, but by an 'IoCompleteRequest' call which typically runs at DISPATCH level in an arbitrary context.

Thus we have not in fact used sleep locks anywhere in the design of the ATCP driver, hoping the above issue will not arise.

## 4.3 Data flow overview



The ATCP driver supports two paths for sending and receiving data, the fast-path and the slow-path. The fast-path data flow corresponds to connections that are maintained on the INIC, while slow-path traffic corresponds to network data for which the INIC does not have a connection. In order to set some groundwork for the rest of this section, these two data paths are summarized here.

#### 4.3.1 Fast-path input data flow

There are 2 different cases to consider:

1. NETBIOS traffic (identifiable by port number.)
2. Everything else.

##### 4.3.1.1 NETBIOS input

As soon as the INIC has received a segment containing a NETBIOS header, it will forward it up to the TCP driver, along with the NETBIOS length from the header. (In principle the host could get this from the header itself, but since the INIC has already done the decode, it seem reasonable to just pass it.)

From the TDI spec, the amount of data in the buffer actually sent must be at least 128 bytes. For small SMBs, all of the received SMB should be forwarded; it will be absorbed directly by the TDI client without any further MDL exchange. Experiments tracing the TDI data flow show that the NETBIOS client directly absorbs up to 1460 bytes: the amount of payload data in a single Ethernet frame. Thus the initial system specifies that the INIC will indicate anything up to a complete segment to the ATCP driver. [See note (1)]

Once the INIC has passed up an indication with an NETBIOS length greater than the amount of data in the packet it passed, it will continue to accumulate further incoming data in DRAM on the INIC. Overflow of INIC DRAM buffers will be avoided by using a receive window on the INIC at this point, which can be 8K.

On receiving the indicated packet, the ATCP driver will call the receive handler registered by the TDI client for the connection, passing the actual size of the data in the packet from the INIC as "bytes indicated" and the NETBIOS length as "bytes available." [See note (2)].

In the "large data input" case, where "bytes available" exceeds the packet length, the TDI client will then provide an MDL, associated with an IRP, which must be completed when this MDL is filled. (This IRP/MDL may come back either in the response to TCP's call of the receive handler, or as an explicit TDI\_RECEIVE request.)

The ATCP driver will build a "receive request" from the MDL information, and pass this to the INIC. This request will contain:

- The TCP context identifier.
- Size and offset information.
- A list of physical addresses corresponding to the MDL pages.

- A context field to allow the ATCP driver to identify the request on completion.
- "Piggybacked" window update information (this will be discussed in section 6.1.3.)

Note: the ATCP driver must copy any remaining data (which was not taken by the receive handler) from the segment indicated by the INIC to the start of the MDL, and must adjust the size & offset information in the request passed to the INIC to account for this.

The INIC will fill the given page(s) with incoming data up to the requested amount, and respond to the ATCP driver when this is done [see note (3)]. If the MDL is large, the INIC may open up its advertised receive window for improved throughput while filling the MDL.

On receiving the response from the INIC, the ATCP driver will complete the IRP associated with this MDL, to tell the TDI client that the data is available.

At this point the cycle of events is complete, and the ATCP driver is now waiting for the next header indication.

#### 4.3.1.2 Other TCP input.

In the general case we do not have a higher-level protocol header to enable us to predict that more data is coming. So on non-NETBIOS connections, the INIC will just accumulate incoming data in INIC DRAM up to a quantity of 8K in this example. Again, a maximum advertised window size, which may be 16K, will be used to prevent overflow of INIC DRAM buffers.

When the prescribed amount has been accumulated, or when a PSH flag is seen, the INIC will indicate a small packet which may be 128 bytes of the data to the ATCP driver, along with the total length of the data accumulated in INIC DRAM.

On receiving the indicated packet, the ATCP driver will call the receive handler registered by the TDI client for the connection, passing the actual size of the data in the packet from the INIC as "bytes indicated" and the total INIC-buffer length as "bytes available."

As in the NETBIOS case, if "bytes available" exceeds "bytes indicated", the TDI client will provide an IRP with an MDL. The ATCP driver will pass the MDL to the INIC to be filled, as before. The INIC will reply to the ATCP driver, which in turn will complete the IRP to the TDI client.

Using an MDL from the client avoids a copy step. However, if we can only buffer 8K and delay indicating to the ATCP driver until we have done so, a question arises regarding further segments coming in, since INIC DRAM is a scarce resource. We do not want to ACK with a zero-size window advertisement: this would cause the transmitting end to go into persist state, which is bad for throughput. If the transmitting end is also our INIC, this results in having to implement the persist timer on the INIC, which we do not wish to do. Instead for large transfers (i.e. no PSH flag seen) we will not send an ACK

60061809 101497

until the host has provided the MDL, and also, to avoid stopping the transmitting end, we will use a receive window of twice the amount we will buffer before calling the host. Since the host comes back with the MDL quite quickly (measured at < 100 microseconds), we do not expect to experience significant overruns.

#### 4.3.1.3 INIC Receive window updates

If the INIC "owns" an MDL provided by the TDI client (sent by ATCP as a receive request), it will treat this as a "promise" by the TDI client to accept the data placed in it, and may therefore ACK incoming data as it is filling the pages.

However, for small requests, there will be no MDL returned by the TDI client: it absorbs all of the data directly in the receive callback function. We need to update the INIC's view of data which has been accepted, so that it can update its receive window. In order to be able to do this, the ATCP driver will accumulate a count of data which has been accepted by the TDI client receive callback function for a connection.

From the INIC's point of view, though, segments sent up to the ATCP driver are just "thrown over the wall"; there is no explicit reply path. We will therefore "piggyback" the update on requests sent out to the INIC. Whenever the ATCP driver has outgoing data for that connection, it will place this count in a field in the send request (and then clear the counter.) Any receive request (passing a receive MDL to the INIC) may also be used to transport window update info in the same way.

Note: we will probably also need to design a message path whereby the ATCP driver can explicitly send an update of this "bytes consumed" information (either when it exceeds a preset threshold or if there are no requests going out to the INIC for more than a given time interval), to allow for possible scenarios in which the data stream is entirely one-way.

#### 4.3.1.4 Notes

- 1) The PSH flag can help to identify small SMB requests that fit into one segment.
- 2) Actually, the observed "bytes available" from the NT TCP driver to its client's callback in this case is always 1460. The NETBIOS-aware TDI client presumably calculates the size of the MDL it will return from the NETBIOS header. So strictly speaking we do not need the NETBIOS header length at this point: just an indication that this is a header for a "large" size. However, we \*do\* need an actual "bytes available" value for the non-NETBIOS case, so we may as well pass it.
- 3) We observe that the PSH flag is set in the segment completing each NETBIOS transfer. The INIC can use this to determine when the current transfer is complete and the MDL should be returned. It can, at least in a debug mode, sanity check the amount of received data against what is expected, though.

437015089005

### 4.3.2 Fast-path output data flow

The fast-path output data flow is similar to the input data-flow, but simpler. In this case the TDI client will provide a MDL to the ATCP driver along with an IRP to be completed when the data is sent. The ATCP driver will then give a request (corresponding to the MDL) to the INIC. This request will contain:

- The TCP context identifier.
- Size and offset information.
- A list of physical addresses corresponding to the MDL pages.
- A context field to allow the ATCP driver to identify the request on completion.
- “Piggybacked” window update information (as discussed in section 6.1.3.)

The INIC will copy the data from the given physical location(s) as it sends the corresponding network frames onto the network. When all of the data is sent, the INIC will notify the host of the completion, and the ATCP driver will complete the IRP.

Note that there may be multiple output requests pending at any given time, since SMB allows multiple SMB requests to be simultaneously outstanding.

### 4.3.3 Slow-path data flow

For data for which there is no connection being maintained on the INIC, we will have to perform all of the TCP, IP, and Ethernet processing ourselves. To accomplish this we will port the FreeBSD protocol stack.

In this mode, the INIC will be operating as a “dumb NIC”; the packets which pass over the NDIS interface will just contain MAC-layer frames.

The MBUFs in the incoming direction will in fact be managing NDIS-allocated packets. In the outgoing direction, we need protocol-allocated MBUFs in which to assemble the data and headers. The MFREE macro must be cognizant of the various types of MBUFs, and “do the right thing” for each type. (See more extensive discussion of MBUFs in section XXX.)

We will retain a (modified) socket structure for each connection, containing the socket buffer fields expected by the FreeBSD code. The TCP code that operates on socket buffers (adding/removing MBUFs to & from queues, indicating acknowledged & received data etc) will remain essentially unchanged from the FreeBSD base (though most of the socket functions & macros used to do this will need to be modified; these are the functions in kern/uipc\_socket2.c)

The upper socket layer (kern/uipc\_socket.c), where the overlying OS moves data in and out of socket buffers, must be entirely re-implemented to work in TDI terms. Thus, instead of sosend(), there will be a function that copies data from the MDL provided in a TDI\_SEND call into socket buffer MBUFs. Instead of soreceive(), there will be a handler that calls the TDI client receive callback function, and also copies data from socket buffer

454707 60879009

MBUFs into any MDL provided by the TDI client (either explicitly with the callback response or as a separate TDI\_RECEIVE call.)

We must note that there is a semantic difference between TDI\_SEND and a write() on a BSD socket. The latter may complete back to its caller as soon as the data has been copied into the socket buffer. The completion of a TDI\_SEND, however, implies that the data has actually been sent on the connection. Thus we will need to keep the TDI\_SEND IRPs (and associated MDLs) in a queue on the socket until the TCP code indicates that the data from them has been ACK'd.

#### 4.3.4 Data Path Notes

1. There might be input data on a connection object for which there is no receive handler function registered. This has not been observed, but we can probably just ASSERT for a missing handler for the moment. If it should happen, however, we must assume that the TDI client will be doing TDI\_RECEIVE calls on the connection. If we can't make a callup at the time that the indication from the INIC appears, we can queue the data and handle it when a TDI\_RECEIVE does appear.
2. NT has a notion of "canceling" IRPs. It is possible for us to get a "cancel" on an IRP corresponding to an MDL which has been "handed" to the INIC by a send or receive request. We can handle this by being able to force the context back off the INIC, since IRPs will only get cancelled when the connection is being aborted.

### 4.4 Context Passing Between ATCP and INIC

#### 4.4.1 From ATCP to INIC

There is a synchronization problem that must be addressed here. The ATCP driver will make a decision on a given connection that this connection should now be passed to the INIC. It builds and sends a command identifying this connection to the INIC.

Before doing so, it must ensure that no slow-path outgoing data is outstanding. This is not difficult; it simply pends and queues any new TDI\_SEND requests and waits for any unacknowledged slow path output data to be acknowledged before initiating the context pass operation.

The problem arises with incoming slow-path data. If we attempt to do the context-pass in a single command handshake, there is a window during which the ATCP driver has send the context command, but the INIC has not yet seen this (or has not yet completed setting up its context.) During this time, slow-path input data frames could arrive and be fed into the slow-path ATCP processing code. Should that happen, the context information which the ATCP driver passed to the INIC is no longer correct. We can simply abort the outward pass of the context in this event, but it seems better to have a reliable handshake.

Therefore, the command to pass context from ATCP driver to INIC will be split into two halves, and there will be a two-exchange handshake.

The initial command from ATCP to INIC expresses an “intention” to hand out the context. It will include the source and destination IP addresses and ports, which will allow the INIC to establish a “provisional” context. Once it has this “provisional” context in place, the INIC will not send any more slow-path input frames for that src/dest IP/port combination (it will queue them, if any are received.)

When the ATCP driver receives the response to this initial “intent” command, it knows that the INIC will send no more slow-path input. The ATCP driver then waits for any remaining unconsumed slow-path input data for this connection to be consumed by the client. (Generally speaking there will be none, since the ATCP driver will not initiate a context pass while there is unconsumed slow-path input data; the handshake is simply to close the crossover window.)

Once any such data has been consumed, we know things are in a quiescent state. The ATCP driver can then send the second, “commit” command to hand out the context, with confidence that the TCB values it is handing out (sequence numbers etc) are reliable.

Note 1: it is conceivable that there might be situations in which the ATCP driver decides, after having sent the original “intention” command, that the context is not to be passed after all. (E.g. the local client issues a close.) So we must allow for the possibility that the second command may be a “abort”, which should cause the INIC to deallocate and clear up its “provisional” context.

Note 2: to simplify the logic, the ATCP driver will guarantee that only one context may be in process of being handed out at a time: in other words, it will never issue another initial “intention” command until it has completed the second half of the handshake for the first one.

#### 4.4.2 From INIC to ATCP

There are two possible cases for this: a context transfer may be initiated either by the ATCP driver or by the INIC.

However the machinery will be very similar in the two cases. If the ATCP driver wishes to cause context to be flushed from INIC to host, it will send a "flush" message to the INIC specifying the context number to be flushed. Once the INIC receives this, it will proceed with the same steps as for the case where the flush is initiated by the INIC itself:

- The INIC will send an error response to any current outstanding receive request it is working on (corresponding to an MDL into which data is being placed.) Before sending the response, it updates the receive command “length” field to reflect the amount of data which has actually been placed in the MDL buffers at the time of the flush.
- Likewise it will send an error response for any current send request, again reporting the amount of data actually sent from the request.
- The INIC will DMA the TCB for the context back to the host. (Note: part of the information provided with a context must be the address of the TCB in the host.)

- The INIC will send a “flush” indication to the host (very preferably via the regular input path as a special type of frame) identifying the context which is being flushed. Sending this indication via the regular input path ensures that it will arrive before any following slow-path frames.

At this point, the INIC is no longer doing fast-path processing, and any further incoming frames for the connection will simply be sent to the host as raw frames for the slow input path.

The ATCP driver may not be able to complete the cleanup operations needed to resume normal slow path processing immediately on receipt of the “flush frame”, since there may be outstanding send and receive requests to which it has not yet received a response.

If this is the case, the ATCP driver must set a “pend incoming TCP frames” flag in its per-connection context. The effect of this is to change the behavior of `tcp_input()`. This runs as a function call in the context of `ip_input()`, and normally returns only when incoming frames have been processed as far as possible (queued on the socket receive buffer or out-of-sequence reassembly queue.) However, if there is a flush pending and we have not yet completed resynchronization, we cannot do TCP processing and must instead queue input frames for TCP on a “holding queue” for the connection, to be picked up later when context flush is complete and normal slow path processing resumes. (This is why we want to send the “flush” indication via the normal input path: so that we can ensure it is seen before any following frames of slow-path input.)

Next we need to wait for any outstanding “send” requests to be errored off:

- The INIC maintains its context for the connection in a “zombie” state. As “send” requests for this connection come out of the INIC queue, it sends error responses for them back to the ATCP driver. (It is apparently difficult for the INIC to identify all command requests for a given context; simpler for it to just continue processing them in order, detecting ones that are for a “zombie” context as they appear.)
- The ATCP driver has a count of the number of outstanding requests it has sent to the INIC. As error responses for these are received, it decrements this count, and when it reaches zero, the ATCP driver sends a “flush complete” message to the INIC.
- When the INIC receives the “flush complete” message, it dismantles its “zombie” context. From the INIC perspective, the flush is now completed.
- When the ATCP driver has received error responses for all outstanding requests, it has all the information needed to complete its cleanup. This involves completing any IRPs corresponding to requests which have entirely completed and adjusting fields in partially-completed requests so that send and receive of slow path data will resume at the right point in the byte streams.
- Once all this cleanup is complete, the ATCP driver will loop pulling any “pending” TCP input frames off the “pending queue” mentioned above and feeding them into the normal TCP input processing. Once all input frames on this queue have been cleared off, the “pend incoming TCP frames” flag can be cleared for the connection, and we are back to normal slow-path processing.

45101 6081500

## 4.5 FreeBSD Porting Specification

The largest portion of the ATCP driver is either derived, or directly taken from the FreeBSD TCP/IP protocol stack. This section defines the issues associated with porting this code, the FreeBSD code itself, and the modifications required for it to suit our needs.

### 4.5.1 Porting philosophy

FreeBSD TCP/IP (current version referred to as Net/3) is a general purpose TCP/IP driver. It contains code to handle a variety of interface types and many different kinds of protocols. To meet this requirement the code is often written in a sometimes confusing, over-complex manner. General-purpose structures are overlaid with other interface-specific structures so that different interface types can coexist using the same general-purpose code. For our purposes much of this complexity is unnecessary since we are only supporting a single interface type and a few specific protocols. It is therefore tempting to modify the code and data structures in an effort to make it more readable, and perhaps a bit more efficient. There are, however, some problems with doing this. First, the more we modify the original FreeBSD, the more changes we will have to make. This is especially true with regard to data structures. If we collapse two data structures into one we might improve the cleanliness of the code a bit, but we will then have to modify every reference to that data structure in the entire protocol stack. Another problem with attempting to “clean up” the code is that we might later discover that we need something that we had previously thrown away. Finally, while we might gain a small performance advantage in cleaning up the FreeBSD code, the FreeBSD TCP code will mostly only run in the slow-path connections, which are not our primary focus. Our priority is to get the slow-path code functional and reliable as quickly as possible.

For the reasons above we have adopted the philosophy that we should initially keep the data structures and code as close to the original FreeBSD implementation as possible. The code will be modified for the following reasons:

5. As required for NT interaction – Obviously we can't expect to simply “drop-in” the FreeBSD code as is. The interface of this code to the NT system will require some significant code modifications. This will mostly occur at the topmost and bottommost portions of the protocol stack, as well as the “ioctl” sections of the code. Modifications for SMP issues are also needed.
6. Unnecessary code can be removed – While we will keep the code as close to the original FreeBSD as possible, we will nonetheless remove code that will never be used (UDP is a good example of this).

### 4.5.2 Unix ⇔ NT conversion

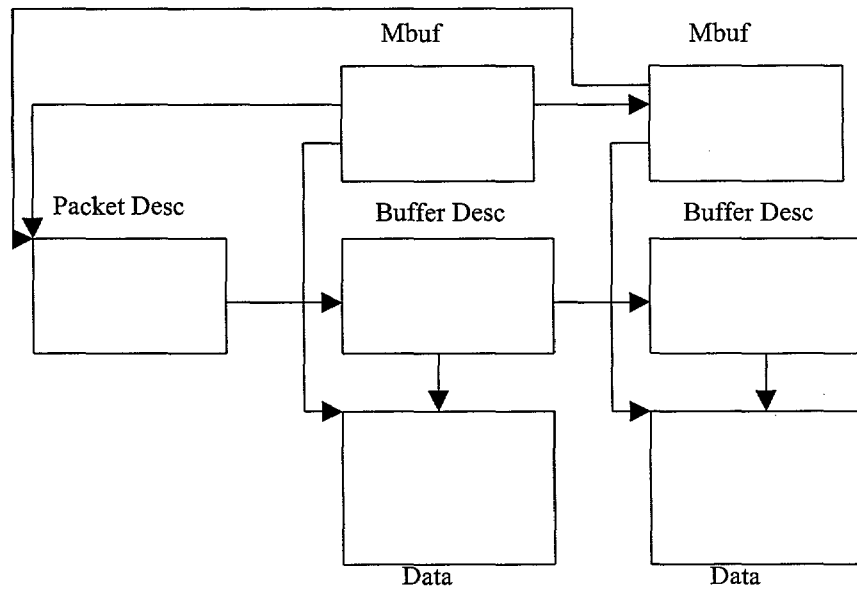
The FreeBSD TCP/IP protocol stack makes use of many Unix system services. These include bcopy to copy memory, malloc to allocate memory, timestamp functions, etc. These will not be itemized in detail since the conversion to the corresponding NT calls is a fairly trivial and mechanical operation.

An area which will need non-trivial support redesign is MBUFs.



#### 4.5.2.1 Network buffers

Under FreeBSD, network buffers are mapped using mbufs. Under NT network buffers are mapped using a combination of packet descriptors and buffer descriptors (the buffer descriptors are really MDLs). There are a couple of problems with the Microsoft method. First it does not provide the necessary fields which allow us to easily strip off protocol headers. Second, converting all of the FreeBSD protocol code to speak in terms of buffer descriptors is an unnecessary amount of overhead. Instead, in our port we will allocate our own mbuf structures and remap the NT packets as follows:



The mbuf structure will provide the standard fields provided in the FreeBSD mbuf including the data pointer, which points to the current location of the data, data length fields and flags. In addition each mbuf will point to the packet descriptor which is associated with the data being mapped. Once an NT packet is mapped, our transport driver should never have to refer to the packet or buffer descriptors for any information except when we are finished and are preparing to return the packet.

There are a couple of things to note here. We have designed our INIC such that a packet header should never be split across multiple buffers. Thus, we should never require the equivalent of the “m\_pullup” routine included in Unix. Also note that there are circumstances in which we will be accepting data that will also be accepted by the Microsoft TCP/IP. One such example of this is ARP frames. We will need to build our own ARP cache by looking at ARP replies as they come off the network. Under these circumstances, it is absolutely imperative that we do not modify the data, or the packet and buffer descriptors. We will discuss this further in the following sections.

454707 6087509

We will allocate a pool of mbuf headers at ATCP initialization time. It is important to remember that unlike other NICs, we can not simply drop data if we run out of the system resources required to manage/map the data. The reason for this is that we will be receiving data from the card that has already been acknowledged by TCP. Because of this it is essential that we never run out of mbuf headers. To solve this problem we will statically allocate mbuf headers for the maximum number of buffers that we will ever allow to be outstanding. By doing so, the card will run out of buffers in which to put the data before we will run out of mbufs, and as a result, the card will be forced to drop data at the link layer instead of us dropping it at the transport layer.

DhXXX: as we've discussed, I don't think this is really true anymore. The INIC won't ACK data until either it's gotten a window update from ATCP to tell it the data's been accepted, or it's got an MDL.

Thus it seems workable, though undesirable, if we can't accept a frame from the INIC & return an error to it saying it was not taken.

We will also require a pool of actual mbufs (not just headers). These mbufs are required in order to build transmit protocol headers for the slow-path data path, as well as other miscellaneous purposes such as for building ARP requests. We will allocate a pool of these at initialization time and we will add to this pool dynamically as needed. Unlike the mbuf headers described above, which will be used to map acknowledged TCP data coming from the card, the full mbufs will contain data that can be dropped if we can not get an mbuf.

#### 4.5.3 The code

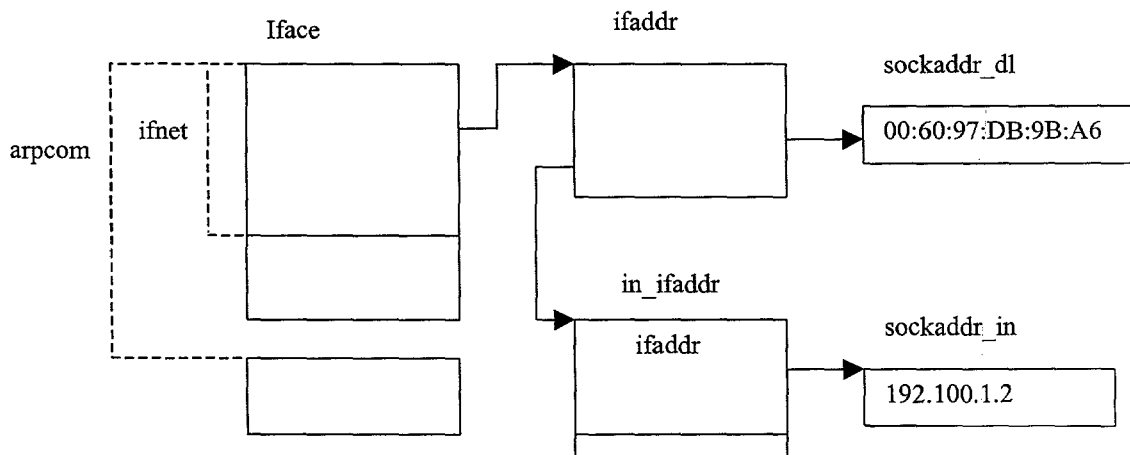
In this section we describe each section of the FreeBSD TCP/IP port. These sections include Interface Initialization, ARP, Route, IP, ICMP, and TCP.

##### 4.5.3.1 Interface initialization

###### 4.5.3.1.1 Structures

There are a variety of structures, which represent a single interface in FreeBSD. These structures include:

ifnet, arpcom, ifaddr, in\_ifaddr, sockaddr, sockaddr\_in, and sockaddr\_dl. The following illustration shows the relationship between all of these structures:



In this example we show a single interface with a MAC address of 00:60:97:DB:9B:A6 configured with an IP address of 192.100.1.2. As illustrated above, the `in_ifaddr` is actually an `ifaddr` structure with some extra fields tacked on to the end. Thus the `ifaddr` structure is used to represent both a MAC address and an IP address. Similarly the `sockaddr` structure is recast as a `sockaddr_dl` or a `sockaddr_in` depending on its address type. An interface can be configured to multiple IP addresses by simply chaining `in_ifaddr` structures after the `in_ifaddr` structure shown above.

As mentioned in the Porting Philosophy section, many of the above structures could likely be collapsed into fewer structures. In order to avoid making unnecessary modifications to FreeBSD, for the time being we will leave these structures mostly as is. We will however eliminate the fields from the structure that will never be used. These structure modifications are discussed below.

We also show above a structure called `iface`. This is a structure that we define. It contains the `arpcom` structure, which in turn contains the `ifnet` structure. It also contains fields that enable us to blend our FreeBSD implementation with NT NDIS requirements. One such example is the NDIS binding handle used to call down to NDIS with requests (such as `send`).

#### 4.5.3.1.2 The functions

FreeBSD initializes the above structures in two phases. First when a network interface is found, the `ifnet`, `arpcom`, and first `ifaddr` structures are initialized first by the network layer driver, and then via a call to the `if_attach` routine. The subsequent `in_ifaddr` structure(s) are initialized when a user dynamically configures the interface. This occurs in the `in_ioctl` and the `in_ifinit` routines. Since NT allows dynamic configuration of a network interface we will continue to perform the interface initialization in two phases, but we will consolidate these two phases as described below:

##### 4.5.3.1.2.1 *IfInit*

The `IfInit` routine will be called from the `ATKProtocolBindAdapter` function. The `IfInit` function will initialize the `Iface` structure and associated `arpcom` and `ifnet` structures. It will then allocate and initialize an `ifaddr` structure in which to contain link-level information about the interface, and a `sockaddr_dl` structure to contain the interface name and MAC address. Finally it will add a pointer to the `ifaddr` structure into the `ifnet_addr` array (using the `if_index` field of the `ifnet` structure) contained in the extended device object. `IfInit` will then call `IfConfig` for each IP address that it finds in the registry entry for the interface.

##### 4.5.3.1.2.2 *IfConfig*

`IfConfig` is called to configure an IP address for a given interface. It is passed a pointer to the `ifnet` structure for that interface along with all the information required to configure an IP address for that interface (such as IP address, netmask and broadcast info, etc). `IfConfig` will allocate an `in_ifaddr` structure to be used to configure the interface. It will chain it to the total chain of `in_ifaddr` structures contained in the extended device object, and will then configure the structure with the information given to it. After that it will add a static route for the newly configured network and then broadcast a gratuitous ARP request to notify others of our Mac/IP address and to detect duplicate IP addresses on the net.

#### 4.5.3.2 ARP

We will port the FreeBSD ARP code to NT mostly as-is. For some reason, the FreeBSD ARP code is located in a file called `if_ether.c`. While the functionality of this file will remain the same, we will rename it to a more logical `arp.c`. The main structures used by ARP are the `llinfo_arp` structure and the `rtentry` structure (actually part of `route`). These structures will not be require major modifications. The functions that will require modification are defined here.

##### 4.5.3.2.1 In\_arpinput

This function is called to process an incoming ARP frame. An ARP frame can either be an ARP request or an ARP reply. ARP requests are broadcast, so we will see every ARP request on the network, while ARP replies are directed so we should only see ARP replies that are sent to us. This introduces the following possible cases for an incoming ARP frame:

1. ARP request trying to resolve our IP address – Under normal circumstances, ARP would reply to this ARP request with an ARP reply containing our MAC address. Since ARP requests will also be passed up to the Microsoft TCP/IP driver, we need not reply. Note however, that FreeBSD also creates or updates an ARP cache entry with the information derived from the ARP request. It does this in anticipation of the fact that any host that wishes to know our MAC address is likely to wish to talk to us soon. Since we will need to know his MAC address in order to talk back, we might as well add the ARP information now rather than issuing our own ARP request later.
2. ARP request trying to resolve someone else's IP address – Since ARP requests are broadcast, we see every one on the network. When we receive an ARP request of this type, we simply check to see if we have an entry for the host that sent the request in our ARP cache. If we do, we check to see if we still have the correct MAC address associated with that host. If it is incorrect, we update our ARP cache entry. Note that we do not create a new ARP cache entry in this case.
3. ARP reply – In this case we add the new ARP entry to our ARP cache. Having resolved the address, we check to see if there is any transmit requests pending for the resolve IP address, and if so, transmit them.

Given the above three possibilities, the only major change to the `in_arpinput` code is that we will remove the code which generates an ARP reply for ARP requests that are meant for our interface.

##### 4.5.3.2.2 Arpintr

This is the FreeBSD code that delivers an incoming ARP frame to `in_arpinput`. We will be calling `in_arpinput` directly from our `ProtocolReceiveDPC` routine (discussed in the NDIS section below) so this function is not needed.

#### 4.5.3.2.3 Arpwhoas

This is a single line function that serves only as a wrapper around arprequest. We will remove it and replace all calls to it with direct calls to arprequest.

#### 4.5.3.2.4 Arprequest

This code simply allocates a mbuf, fills it in with an ARP header, and then passes it down to the ethernet output routine to be transmitted. For us, the code remains essentially the same except for the obvious changes related to how we allocate a network buffer, and how we send the filled in request.

#### 4.5.3.2.5 Arp\_ifinit

This is simply called when an interface is initialized to broadcast a gratuitous ARP request (described in the interface initialization section) and to set some ARP related fields in the ifaddr structure for the interface. We will simply move this functionality into the interface initialization code and remove this function.

#### 4.5.3.2.6 Arptimer

This is a timer-based function that is called every 5 minutes to walk through the ARP table looking for entries that have timed out. Although the time-out period for FreeBSD is 20 minutes, RFC 826 does not specify any timer requirements with regard to ARP so we can modify this value or delete the timer altogether to suit our needs. Either way the function won't require any major changes.

All other functions in if\_ether.c will not require any major changes.

#### 4.5.3.3 Route

On first thought, it might seem that we have no need for routing support since our ATCP driver will only receive IP datagrams whose destination IP address matches that of one of our own interfaces. Therefore, we will not "route" from one interface to another. Instead, the MICROSOFT TCP/IP driver will provide that service. We will, however, need to maintain an up-to-date routing table so that we know a) whether an outgoing connection belongs to one of our interfaces, b) to which interface it belongs, and c) what the first-hop IP address (gateway) is if the destination is not on the local network.

We discuss four aspects on the subject of routing in this section. They are as follows:

1. The mechanics of how routing information is stored
2. The manner in which routes are added or deleted from the route table.
3. When and how route information is retrieved from the route table.
4. Notification of route table changes to interested parties.

454707" 50219095

#### 4.5.3.3.1 The route table

In FreeBSD, the route table is maintained using an algorithm known as PATRICIA (Practical Algorithm To Retrieve Information Coded in Alphanumeric). This is a complicated algorithm that is a bit costly to set up, but is very efficient to reference. Since the routing table should contain the same information for both NT and FreeBSD, and since the key used to search for an entry in the routing table will be the same for each (the destination IP address), we should be able to port the routing table software to NT without any major changes.

The software which implements the route table (via the PATRICIA algorithm) is located in the FreeBSD file, radix.c. This file will be ported directly to the ATCP driver with no significant changes required.

#### 4.5.3.3.2 Adding and deleting routes

Routes can be added or deleted in a number of different ways. The kernel adds or deletes routes when the state of an interface changes or when an ICMP redirect is received. User space programs such as the RIP daemon, or the route command also modify the route table.

For kernel-based route changes, the changes can be made by a direct call to the routing software. The FreeBSD software that is responsible for the modification of route table entries is found in route.c. The primary routine for all route table changes is called rtrequest(). It takes as its arguments, the request type (ADD, RESOLVE, DELETE), the destination IP address for the route, the gateway for the route, the netmask for the route, the flags for the route, and a pointer to the route structure (struct rentry) in which we will place the added or resolved route. Other routines in the route.c file include rtinit(), which is called during interface initialization time to add a static route to the network, rtreirect, which is called by ICMP when we receive a ICMP redirect, and an assortment of support routines used for the modification of route table entries. All of these routines found in route.c will be ported with no major modifications.

For user-space-based changes, we will have to be a bit more clever. In FreeBSD, route changes are sent down to the kernel from user-space applications via a special route socket. This code is found in the FreeBSD file, rtsock.c. Obviously this will not work for our ATCP driver. Instead the filter driver portion of our driver will intercept route changes destined for the Microsoft TCP driver and will apply those modifications to our own route table via the rtrequest routine described above. In order to do this, it will have to do some format translation to put the data into the format (sockaddr\_in) expected by the rtrequest routine. Obviously, none of the code from rtsock.c will be ported to the ATCP driver. This same procedure will be used to intercept and process explicit ARP cache modifications.

#### 4.5.3.3.3 Consulting the route table

In FreeBSD, the route table is consulted in ip\_output when an IP datagram is being sent. In order to avoid a complete route table search for every outgoing datagram, the route is stored into the in\_pcb for the connection. For subsequent calls to ip\_output, the route entry is then simply checked to ensure validity. While we will keep this basic operation as is, we will require a slight modification to allow us to coexist with the Microsoft TCP

driver. When an active connection is being set up, our filter driver will have to determine whether the connection is going to be handled by one of the INIC interfaces. To do this, we will have to consult the route table from the filter driver portion of our driver. This is done via a call to the `rtalloc1` function (found in `route.c`). If a valid route table entry is found, then we will take control of the connection and set a pointer to the `rtentry` structure returned by `rtalloc1` in our `in_pcb` structure.

#### 4.5.3.3.4 What to do when a route changes.

When a route table entry changes, there may be connections that have pointers to a stale route table entry. These connections will need to be notified of the new route. FreeBSD solves this by checking the validity of a route entry during every call to `ip_output`. If the entry is no longer valid, its reference to the stale route table entry is removed, and an attempt is made to allocate a new route to the destination. For our slow path, this will work fine. Unfortunately, since our IP processing is handled by the INIC for our fast path, this sanity check method will not be sufficient. Instead, we will need to perform a review of all of our fast path connections during every route table modification. If the route table change affects our connection, we will need to advise the INIC with a new first-hop address, or if the destination is no longer reachable, close the connection entirely.

#### 4.5.3.4 ICMP

Like the ARP code above, we will need to process certain types of incoming ICMP frames. Of the 10 possible ICMP message types, there are only three that we need to support. These include `ICMP_REDIRECT`, `ICMP_UNREACH`, and `ICMP_SOURCEQUENCH`. Any FreeBSD code to deal with other types of ICMP traffic will be removed. Instead, we will simply return `NDIS_STATUS_NOT_ACCEPTED` for all but the above ICMP frame types. This section describes how we will handle these ICMP frames.

##### 4.5.3.4.1 ICMP\_REDIRECT

Under FreeBSD, an `ICMP_REDIRECT` causes two things to occur. First, it causes the route table to be updated with the route given in the redirect. Second, it results in a call back to TCP to cause TCP to flush the route entry attached to its associated `in_pcb` structures. By doing this, it forces `ip_output` to search for a new route. As mentioned in the Route section above, we will also require a call to a routine which will review all of the TCP fast-path connections, and update the route entries as needed (in this case because the route entry has been zeroed). The INIC will then be notified of the route changes.

##### 4.5.3.4.2 ICMP\_UNREACH

In both FreeBSD and Microsoft TCP, the `ICMP_UNREACH` results in no more than a simple statistic update. We will do the same.

##### 4.5.3.4.3 ICMP\_SOURCEQUENCH

A source quench is sent to cause a TCP sender to close its congestion window to a single segment, thereby putting the sender into slow-start mode. We will keep the FreeBSD code as-is for slow-path connections. For fast path connections we will send a notification to the card that the congestion window for the given connection has been reduced. The INIC will then be responsible for the slow-start algorithm.

454707-6047909

#### 4.5.3.5 IP

The FreeBSD IP code should require few modifications when porting to the ATCP driver. What few modifications will be required will be discussed in this section.

##### 4.5.3.5.1 IP initialization

During initialization time, `ip_init` is called to initialize the array of `protosw` structures. These structures contain all the information needed by IP to be able to pass incoming data to the correct protocol above it. For example, when a UDP datagram arrives, IP locates the `protosw` entry corresponding to the UDP protocol type value (0x11) and calls the input routine specified in that `protosw` entry. We will keep the array of `protosw` structures intact, but since we are only handling the TCP and ICMP protocols above IP, we will strip the `protosw` array down substantially.

##### 4.5.3.5.2 IP input

Following are the changes required for IP input (function `ip_intr()`).

###### 4.5.3.5.2.1 No IP forwarding

Since we will only be handling datagrams for which we are the final destination, we should never be required to forward an IP datagram. All references to IP forwarding, and the `ip_forward` function itself, can be removed.

###### 4.5.3.5.2.2 IP options

The only options supported by FreeBSD at this time include record route, strict and loose source and record route, and timestamp. For the timestamp option, FreeBSD only logs the current time into the IP header so that before it is forwarded. Since we will not be forwarding IP datagrams, this seems to be of little use to us. While FreeBSD supports the remaining options, NT essentially does nothing useful with them. For the moment, we will not bother dealing with IP options. They will be added in later if needed.

###### 4.5.3.5.2.3 IP reassembly

There is a small problem with the FreeBSD IP reassembly code. The reassembly code reuses the IP header portion of the IP datagram to contain IP reassembly queue information. It can do this because it no longer requires the original IP header. This is an absolute no-no with the NDIS 4.0 method of handling network packets. The NT DDK explicitly states that we must not modify packets given to us by NDIS. This is not the only place in which the FreeBSD code modifies the contents of a network buffer. It also does this when performing endian conversions. At the moment we will leave this code as is and violate the DDK rules. We believe we can do this because we are going to ensure that no other transport driver looks at these frames. If this becomes a problem we will have to modify this code substantially by moving the IP reassembly fields into the `mbuf` header.

##### 4.5.3.5.3 IP output

There are only two modifications required for IP output. The first is that since, for the moment, we are not dealing with IP options, there is no need for the code that inserts the IP options into the IP header. Second, we may discover that it is impossible for us to ever receive an output request that requires fragmentation. Since TCP performs Maximum Segment Size negotiation, we should theoretically never attempt to send a TCP segment larger than the MTU.



## 4.6 NDIS Protocol Driver

This section defines protocol driver portion of the ATCP driver. The protocol driver portion of the ATCP driver is defined by the set of routines registered with NDIS via a call to `NdisRegisterProtocol`. These routines are limited to those that are called (indirectly) by the INIC miniport driver beneath us. For example, we register a `ProtocolReceivePacket` routine so that when the INIC driver calls `NdisMIndicateReceivePacket` it will result in a call from NDIS to our driver. Strictly speaking, the protocol driver portion of our driver does not include the method by which our driver calls down to the miniport (for example, the method by which we send network packets). Nevertheless, we will describe that method here for lack of a better place to put it. That said, we cover the following topics in this section of the document:

1. Initialization
2. Receive
3. Transmit
4. Query/Set Information
5. Status indications
6. Reset
7. Halt

### 4.6.1 Initialization

The protocol driver initialization occurs in two phases. The first phase occurs when the `ATCP DriverEntry` routine calls `ATKProtoSetup`. The `ATKProtoSetup` routine performs the following:

1. Allocate resources – We attempt to allocate many of the required resources as soon as possible so that we are more likely to get the memory we want. This mostly applies to allocating and initializing our mbuf and mbuf header pools.
2. Register Protocol – We call `NdisRegisterProtocol` to register our set of protocol driver routines.
3. Locate and initialize bound NICs – We read the Linkage parameters of the registry to determine which NIC devices we are bound to. For each of these devices we allocate and initialize a `IFACE` structure (defined above). We then read the TCP parameters out of the registry for each bound device and set the corresponding fields in the `IFACE` structure.

After the underlying INIC devices have completed their initialization, NDIS will call our driver's `ATKBindAdapter` function for each underlying device. It will perform the following:

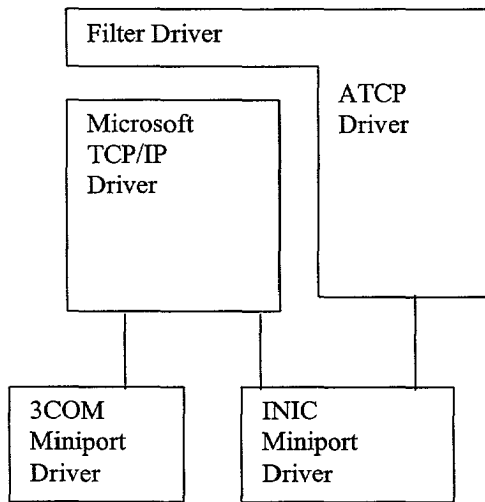
1. Open the device specified in the call the `ATKBindAdapter`
2. Find the `IFACE` structure that was created in `ATKProtoSetup` for this device.
3. Query the miniport for adapter information. This includes such things as link speed and MAC address. Save relevant information in the `IFACE` structure.
4. Perform the interface initialization as specified in section 4.5.3.1 Interface initialization

## 4.6.2 Receive

Receive is handled by the protocol driver routine `ATKReceivePacket`. Before we describe this routine, it is important to consider each possible receive type and how it will be handled.

### 4.6.2.1 Receive overview

Our INIC miniport driver will be bound to our transport driver as well as the generic Microsoft TCP driver (and possibly others). The ATCP driver will be bound exclusively to INIC devices, while the Microsoft TCP driver will be bound to INIC devices as well as other types of NICs. This is illustrated below:



By binding the driver in this fashion, we can choose to direct incoming network data to our own ATCP transport driver, the Microsoft TCP driver, or both. We do this by playing with the ethernet "type" field as follows.

To NDIS and the transport drivers above it, our card is going to be registered as a normal ethernet card. When a transport driver receives a packet from our driver, it will expect the data to start with an ethernet header, and consequently, expects the protocol type field to be in byte offset 12. If Microsoft TCP finds that the protocol type field is not equal to either IP, or ARP, it will not accept the packet. So, to deliver an incoming packet to our driver, we must simply map the data such that byte 12 contains a non-recognized ethernet type field. Note that we must choose a value that is greater than 1500 bytes so that the transport drivers do not confuse it with an 802.3 frame. We must also choose a value that will not be accepted by other transport driver such as Appletalk or IPX. Similarly, if we want to direct the data to Microsoft TCP, we can then simply leave the ethernet type field set to IP (or ARP). Note that since we will also see these frames we can choose to accept or not-accept them as necessary.

Incoming packets are delivered as follows:

Packets delivered to ATCP only (not accepted by MSTCP):

1. All TCP packets destined for one of our IP addresses. This includes both slow-path frames and fast-path frames. In the slow-path case, the TCP frames are given in their entirety (headers included). In the fast-path case, the ATKReceivePacket is given a header buffer that contains status information and data with no headers (except those above TCP). More on this later.

Packets delivered to Microsoft TCP only (not accepted by ATCP):

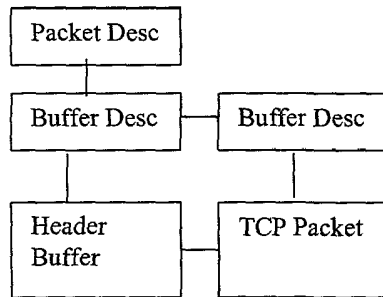
1. All non-TCP packets.
2. All packets that are not destined for one of our interfaces (packets that will be routed). Continuing the above example, if there is an IP address 144.48.252.4 associated with the 3com interface, and we receive a TCP connect with a destination IP address of 144.48.252.4, we will actually want to send that request up to the ATCP driver so that we create a fast-path connection for it. This means that we will need to know every IP address in the system and filter frames based on the destination IP address in a given TCP datagram. This can be done in the INIC miniport driver. Since it will be the ATCP driver that learns of dynamic IP address changes in the system, we will need a method to notify the INIC miniport of all the IP addresses in the system. More on this later.

Packets delivered to both:

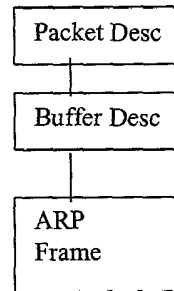
1. All ARP frames
2. All ICMP frames

#### 4.6.2.2 Two types of receive packets

There are several circumstances in which the INIC will need to indicate extra information about a receive packet to the ATCP driver. One such example is a fast path receive in which the ATCP driver will need to be notified of how much data the card has buffered. To accomplish this, the first (and sometimes only) buffer in a received packet will actually be an INIC header buffer. The header buffer contains status information about the receive packet, and may or may not contain network data as well. The ATCP driver will recognize a header buffer by mapping it to an ethernet frame and inspecting the type field found in byte 12. We will indicate all TCP frames destined for us in this fashion, while frames that are destined for both our driver and the Microsoft TCP driver (ARP, ICMP) will be indicated without a header buffer.



Example of incoming TCP pkt



Example of incoming ARP Frame

#### 4.6.2.3 NDIS 4 ProtocolReceivePacket operation

NDIS has been designed such that all packets indicated via `NdisMIndicateReceivePacket` by an underlying miniport are delivered to the `ProtocolReceivePacket` routine for all protocol drivers bound to it. These protocol drivers can choose to accept or not accept the data. They can either accept the data by copying the data out of the packet indicated to it, or alternatively they can keep the packet and return it later via a call to `NdisReturnPackets`. By implementing it in this fashion, NDIS allows more than one protocol driver to accept a given packet. For this reason, when a packet is delivered to a protocol driver, the contents of the packet descriptor, buffer descriptors and data must all be treated as read-only. At the moment, we intend to violate this rule. We choose to violate this because much of the FreeBSD code modifies the packet headers as it examines them (mostly for endian conversion purposes). Rather than modify all of the FreeBSD code, we will instead ensure that no other transport driver accepts the data by making sure that the ethernet type field is unique to us (no one else will want it). Obviously this only works with data that is only delivered to our ATCP driver. For ARP and ICMP frames we will instead copy the data out of the packet into our own buffer and return the packet to NDIS directly. While this is less efficient than keeping the data and returning it later, ARP and ICMP traffic should be small enough, and infrequent enough, that it doesn't matter.

The DDK specifies that when a protocol driver chooses to keep a packet, it should return a value of 1 (or more) to NDIS in its `ProtocolReceivePacket` routine. The packet is then later returned to NDIS via the call to `NdisReturnPackets`. This can only happen after the `ProtocolReceivePacket` has returned control to NDIS. This requires that the call to `NdisReturnPackets` must occur in a different execution context. We can accomplish this by scheduling a DPC, scheduling a system thread, or scheduling a kernel thread of our own. For brevity in this section, we will assume it is done through a DPC. In any case, we will require a queue of pending receive buffers on which to place and fetch receive packets.

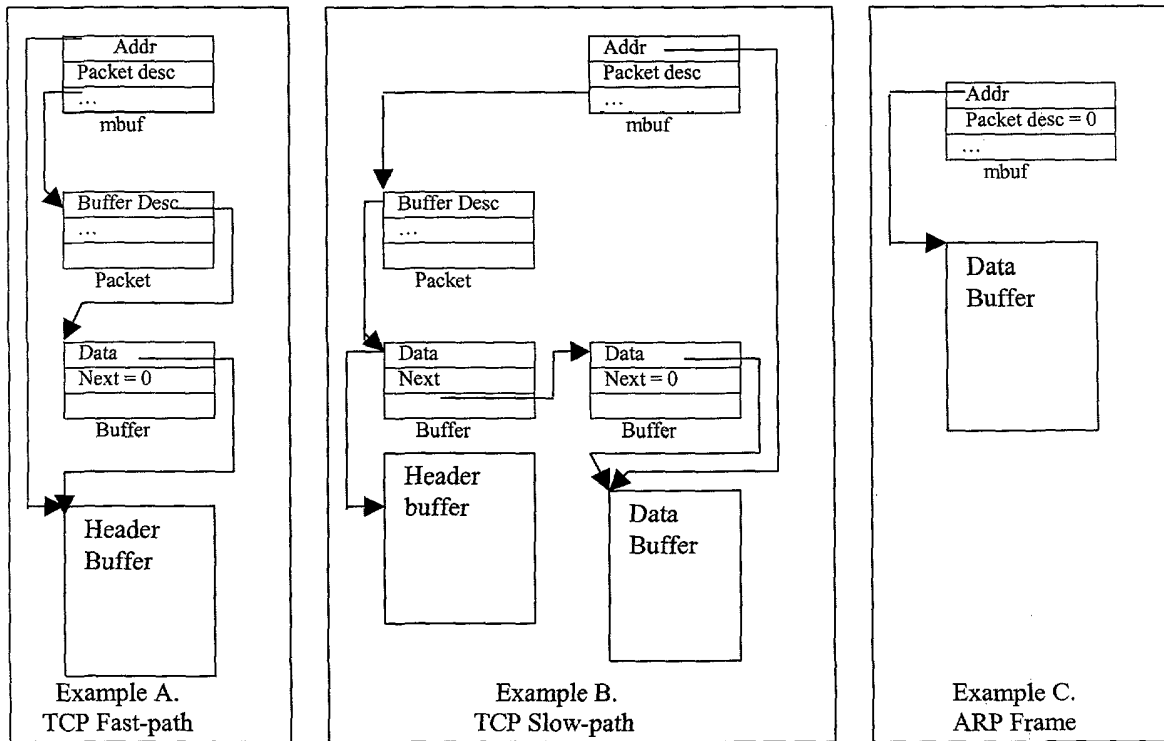
After a receive packet is dequeued by the DPC it is then either passed to TCP directly for fast-path processing, or it is sent through the FreeBSD path for slow-path processing. Note that in the case of slow-path processing, we may be working on data that needs to be returned to NDIS (TCP data) or we may be working on our own copy of the data

454707-80879008

(ARP and ICMP). When we finish with the data we will need to figure out whether or not to return the data to NDIS or not. This will be done via fields in the mbuf header used to map the data. When the mfree routine is called to free a chain of mbufs, the fields in the mbuf will be checked and, if required, the packet descriptor pointed to by the mbuf will be returned to NDIS.

#### 4.6.2.4 Mbuf ⇔ Packet mapping

As noted in the section on mbufs above, we will map incoming data to mbufs so that our FreeBSD port requires fewer modifications. Depending on the type of data received, this mapping will appear differently. Here are some examples:



In Example A, we show incoming data for a TCP fast-path connection. In this example, the TCP data is fully contained in the header buffer. The header buffer is mapped by the mbuf and sent upstream for fast-path TCP processing. In this case it is required that the header buffer be mapped and sent upstream because the fast-path TCP code will need information contained in the header buffer in order to perform the processing. When the mbuf in this example is freed, the mfree routine will determine that the mbuf maps a packet that is owned by NDIS and will then free the mbuf header only and call NdisReturnPackets to free the data.

In Example B, we show incoming data for a TCP slow-path connection. In this example the mbuf points to the start of the TCP data directly instead of the header buffer. Since this buffer will be sent up for slow-path FreeBSD processing, we can not have the mbuf pointing to a header buffer (FreeBSD would get awfully confused). Again, when mfree

is called to free the mbuf, it will discover the mapped packet, free the mbuf header, and call NDIS to free the packet and return the underlying buffers. Note that even though we do not directly map the header buffer with the mbuf we do not lose it because of the link from the packet descriptor. Note also that we could alternatively have the INIC miniport driver only pass us the TCP data buffer when it receives a slow-path receive. This would work fine except that we have determined that even in the case of slow-path connections we are going to attempt to offer some assistance to the host TCP driver (most likely by checksum processing only). In this case there may be some special fields that we need to pass up to the ATCP driver from the INIC driver. Leaving the header buffer connected seems the most logical way to do this.

Finally, in Example C, we show a received ARP frame. Recall that for incoming ARP and ICMP frames we are going to copy the incoming data out of the packet and return it directly to NDIS. In this case the mbuf simply points to our data, with no corresponding packet descriptor. When we free this mbuf, mfree will discover this and free not only the mbuf header, but the data as well.

#### 4.6.2.5 Other receive packets

We use this receive mechanism for other purposes besides the reception of network data. It is also used as a method of communication between the ATCP driver and the INIC. One such example is a TCP context flush from the INIC. When the INIC determines, for whatever reason, that it can no longer manage a TCP connection, it must flush that connection to the ATCP driver. It will do this by filling in a header buffer with appropriate status and delivering it to the INIC driver. The INIC driver will in turn deliver it to the protocol driver which will treat it essentially like a fast-path TCP connection by mapping the header buffer with an mbuf header and delivering it to TCP for fast-path processing. There are two advantages to communicating in this manner. First, it is already an established path, so no extra coding or testing is required. Second, since a context flush comes in, in the same manner as received frames, it will prevent us from getting a slow-path frame before the context has been flushed.

#### 4.6.2.6 Summary

Having covered all of the various types of receive data, following are the steps that are taken by the ATKProtocolReceivePacket routine.

1. Map incoming data to an ethernet frame and check the type field.
2. If the type field contains our custom INIC type then it should be TCP
3. If the header buffer specifies a fast-path connection, allocate one or more mbufs headers to map the header and possibly data buffers. Set the packet descriptor field of the mbuf to point to the packet descriptor, set the mbuf flags appropriately, queue the mbuf, and return 1.
4. If the header buffer specifies a slow-path connection, allocate a single mbuf header to map the network data, set the mbuf fields to map the packet, queue the mbuf and return 1. Note that we design the INIC such that we will never get a TCP segment split across more than one buffer.

5. If the type field of the frame indicates ARP or ICMP
6. Allocate a mbuf with a data buffer. Copy the contents of the packet into the mbuf. Queue the mbuf, and return 0 (not accepted).
7. If the type field is not either the INIC type, ARP or ICMP, we don't want it. Return 0.

The receive processing will continue when the mbufs are dequeued. At the moment this is done by a routine called ATKProtocolReceiveDPC. It will do the following:

1. Dequeue a mbuf from the queue.
2. Inspect the mbuf flags. If the mbuf is meant for fast-path TCP, it will call the fast-path routine directly. Otherwise it will call the ethernet input routine for slow-path processing.

#### 4.6.3 Transmit

In this section we discuss the ATCP transmit path.

##### 4.6.3.1 NDIS 4 send operation

The NDIS 4 send operation works as follows. When a transport/protocol driver wishes to send one or more packets down to an NDIS 4 miniport driver, it calls NdisSendPackets with an array of packet descriptors to send. As soon as this routine is called, the transport/protocol driver relinquishes ownership of the packets until they are returned, one by one in any order, via a NDIS call to the ProtocolSendComplete routine. Since this routine is called asynchronously, our ATCP driver must save any required context into the packet descriptor header so that the appropriate resources can be freed. This is discussed further in the following sections.

##### 4.6.3.2 Types of "sends"

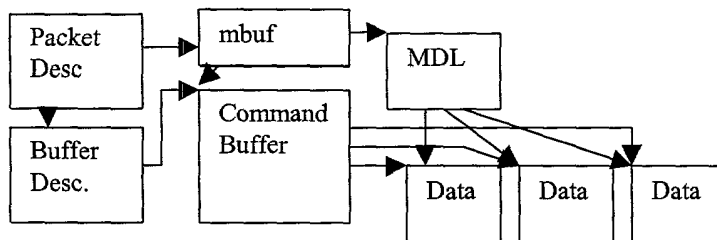
Like the Receive path described above, the transmit path is used not only to send network data, but is also used as a communication mechanism between the host and the INIC. Here are some examples of the types of sends performed by the ATCP driver.

##### 4.6.3.2.1 Fast-path TCP send

When the ATCP driver receives a transmit request with an associated MDL, it will package up the MDL physical addresses into a command buffer, map the command buffer with a buffer and packet descriptor, and call NdisSendPackets with the corresponding packet. The underlying INIC driver will issue the command buffer to the INIC. When the corresponding response buffer is given back to the host, the INIC miniport will call NdisMSendComplete which will result in a call to the ATCP ProtocolSendComplete (ATKSendComplete) routine, at which point the resources associated with the send can be freed. We will allocate and use a mbuf to hold the command buffer. By doing this we can store the context necessary in order to clean up after the send completes. This context includes a pointer to the MDL and presumably some other connection context as well. The other advantage to using a mbuf to hold the command buffer is that it eliminates having another special set of code to allocate and return command buffer. We will store a pointer to the mbuf in the reserved section of the

"46hTOf" B0BT5009

packet descriptor so we can locate it when the send is complete. The following diagram illustrates the relationship between the client's MDL, the command buffer, and the buffer and packet descriptors.

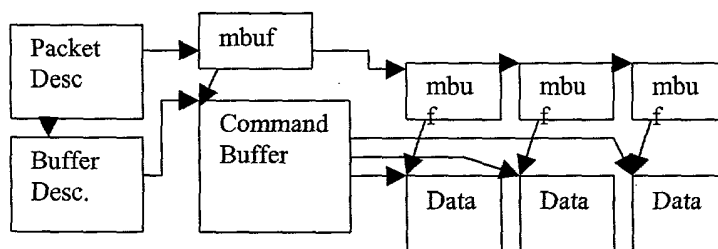


#### 4.6.3.2.2 Fast-path TCP Receive

As described in section 4.3.1 above, the receive process typically occurs in two phases. First the INIC fills in a host receive buffer with a relatively small amount of data, but notifies the host of a large amount of pending data (either through a large amount of buffered data on the card, or through a large amount of expected NetBios data). This small amount of data is delivered to the client through the TDI interface. The client will then respond with a MDL in which the data should be placed. Like the Fast-path TCP send process, the receive portion of the ATPC driver will then fill in a command buffer with the MDL information from the client, map the buffer with packet and buffer descriptors and send it to the INIC via a call to NdisSendPackets. Again, when the response buffer is returned to the INIC miniport, the ATKSendComplete routine will be called and the receive will complete. This relationship between the MDL, command buffer and buffer and packet descriptors are the same as shown in the Fast-path send section above.

#### 4.6.3.2.3 Slow-path (FreeBSD)

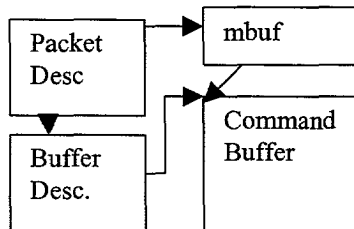
Slow-path sends pass through the FreeBSD stack until the ethernet header is prepended in ether\_output and the packet is ready to be sent. At this point a command buffer will be filled with pointers to the ethernet frame, the command buffer will be mapped with a packet and buffer descriptor and NdisSendPackets will be called to hand the packet off to the miniport. In the illustration below we show the relationship between the mbufs, command buffer, and buffer and packet descriptors. Since we will use a mbuf to map the command buffer, we can simply link the data mbufs directly off of the command buffer mbuf. This will make the freeing of resources much simpler.





#### 4.6.3.2.4 Non-data command buffer

The transmit path is also used to send non-data commands to the card. For example, the ATCP driver gives a context to the INIC by filling in a command buffer, mapping it with a packet and buffer descriptor, and calling NdisSendPackets.



#### 4.6.3.3 ATKProtocolSendComplete

Given the above different types of sends, the ATKProtocolSendComplete routine will perform various types of actions when it is called from NDIS. First it must examine the reserved area of the packet descriptor to determine what type of request has completed. In the case of a slow-path completion, it can simply free the mbufs, command buffer, and descriptors and return. In the case of a fast-path completion, it will need to notify the TCP fast path routines of the completion so TCP can in turn complete the client's IRP. Similarly, when a non-data command buffer completes, TCP will again be notified that the command sent to the INIC has completed.

### 4.7 TDI Filter Driver

In a first embodiment of the product, the INIC handles only simple-case data transfer operations on a TCP connection. (These of course constitute the large majority of CPU cycles consumed by TCP processing in a conventional driver.)

There are many other complexities of the TCP protocol which must still be handled by host driver software: connection setup and breakdown, out-of-order data, nonstandard flags, etc.

The NT OS contains a fully functional TCP/IP driver, and one solution would be to enhance this so that it is able to detect our INIC and take advantage of it by "handing off" data-path processing where appropriate.

Unfortunately, we do not have access to NT source, let alone permission to modify NT. Thus the solution above, while a goal, cannot be done immediately. We instead provide our own custom driver software on the host for those parts of TCP processing which are not handled by the INIC.

This presents a challenge. The NT network driver framework does make provision for multiple types of protocol driver: but it does not easily allow for multiple instances of drivers handling the SAME protocol.

“SUBJECT”

For example, there are no "hooks" into the Microsoft TCP/IP driver which would allow for routing of IP packets between our driver (handling our INICs) and the Microsoft driver (handling other NICs).

Our approach to this is to retain the Microsoft driver for all non-TCP network processing (even for traffic on our INICs), but to invisibly "steal" TCP traffic on our connections and handle it via our own (BSD-derived) driver. The Microsoft TCP/IP driver is unaware of TCP connections on interfaces we handle.

The network "bottom end" of this artifice is described earlier in the document. In this section we will discuss the "top end": the TDI interface to higher-level NT network client software.

We make use of an NT facility called a filter driver. NT allows a special type of driver ("filter driver") to attach itself "on top" of another driver in the system. The NT I/O manager then arranges that all requests directed to the attached driver are sent first to the filter driver; this arrangement is invisible to the rest of the system.

The filter driver may then either handle these requests itself, or pass them down to the underlying driver it is attached to. Provided the filter driver completely replicates the (externally visible) behavior of the underlying driver when it handles requests itself, the existence of the filter driver is invisible to higher-level software.

The filter driver attaches itself on top of the Microsoft TCP/IP driver; this gives us the basic mechanism whereby we can intercept requests for TCP operations and handle them in our driver instead of the Microsoft driver.

However, while the filter driver concept gives us a framework for what we want to achieve, there are some significant technical problems to be solved. The basic issue is that setting up a TCP connection involves a sequence of several requests from higher-level software, and it is not always possible to tell, for requests early in this sequence, whether the connection should be handled by our driver or by the Microsoft driver.

Thus for many requests, we store information about the request in case we need it later, but also allow the request to be passed down to the Microsoft TCP/IP driver in case the connection ultimately turns out to be one which that driver should handle.

Let us look at this in more detail, which will involve some examination of the TDI interface: the NT interface into the top end of NT network protocol drivers. Higher-level TDI client software which requires services from a protocol driver proceeds by creating various types of NT FILE\_OBJECTs, and then making various DEVICE\_IO\_CONTROL requests on these FILE\_OBJECTs.

There are two types of FILE\_OBJECT of interest here. Local IP addresses that are represented by ADDRESS objects, and TCP connections that are represented by CONNECTION objects. The steps involved in setting up a TCP connection (from the "active", client, side) are:

(for a CONNECTION object)

- 1) Create an ADDRESS object.
- 2) Create a CONNECTION object.
- 3) Issue a TDI\_ASSOCIATE\_ADDRESS io-control to associate the CONNECTION object with the ADDRESS object.
- 4) Issue a TDI\_CONNECT io-control on the CONNECTION object, specifying the remote address and port for the connection.

Initial thoughts were that handling this would be straightforward: we would tell, on the basis of the address given when creating the ADDRESS object, whether the connection is for one of our interfaces or not. After which, it would be easy to arrange for handling entirely by our code, or entirely by the Microsoft code: we would simply examine the ADDRESS object to see if it was "one of ours" or not.

There are two main difficulties, however.

First, when the CONNECTION object is created, no address is specified: it acquires a local address only later when the TDI\_ASSOCIATE\_ADDRESS is done. Also, when a CONNECTION object is created, the caller supplies an opaque "context cookie" which will be needed for later communications with that caller. Storage of this cookie is the responsibility of the protocol driver: it is not directly derivable just by examination of the CONNECTION object itself. If we simply passed the "create" call down to the Microsoft TCP/IP driver, we would have no way of obtaining this cookie later if it turns out that we need to handle the connection.

Therefore, for every CONNECTION object which is created we allocate a structure to keep track of information about it, and store this structure in a hash table keyed by the address of the CONNECTION object itself, so that we can locate it if we later need to process requests on this object. We refer to this as a "shadow" object: it replicates information about the object stored in the Microsoft driver. (We must, of course, also pass the create request down to the Microsoft driver too, to allow it to set up its own administrative information about the object.)

A second major difficulty arises with ADDRESS objects. These are often created with the TCP/IP "wildcard" address (all zeros); the actual local address is assigned only later during connection setup (by the protocol driver itself.) Of course, a "wildcard" address does not allow us to determine whether connections that will be associated with this ADDRESS object should be handled by our driver or by the Microsoft one. Also, as with CONNECTION objects, there is "opaque" data associated with ADDRESS objects that cannot be derived just from examination of the object itself. (In this case addresses of callback functions set on the object by TDI\_SET\_EVENT io-controls.)

Thus, as in the CONNECTION object case, we create a "shadow" object for each ADDRESS object which is created with a wildcard address. In this we store information (principally addresses of callback functions) which we will need if we are handling connections on CONNECTION objects associated with this ADDRESS object. We store similar information, of course, for any ADDRESS object which is explicitly for one of

our interface addresses; in this case we don't need to also pass the create request down to the Microsoft driver.

With this concept of "shadow" objects in place, let us revisit the steps involved in setting up a connection, and look at the processing required in our driver.

First, the TDI client makes a call to create the ADDRESS object. Assuming that this is a "wildcard" address, we create a "shadow" object before passing the call down to the Microsoft driver.

The next step (omitted in the earlier list for brevity) is normally that the client makes a number of TDI\_SET\_EVENT io-control calls to associate various callback functions with the ADDRESS object. These are functions that should be called to notify the TDI client when certain events (such arrival of data or disconnection requests etc) occur. We store these callback function pointers in our "shadow" address object, before passing the call down to the Microsoft driver.

Next, the TDI client makes a call to create a CONNECTION object. Again, we create our "shadow" of this object.

Next, the client issues the TDI\_ASSOCIATE\_ADDRESS io-control to bind the CONNECTION object to the ADDRESS object. We note the association in our "shadow" objects, and also pass the call down to the Microsoft driver.

Finally the TDI client issues a TDI\_CONNECT io-control on the CONNECTION object, specifying the remote IP address (and port) for the desired connection. At this point, we examine our routing tables (see section XXX for details of routing) to determine if this connection should be handled by one of our interfaces, or by some other NIC. If it is ours, we mark the CONNECTION object as "one of ours" for future reference (using an opaque field which NT FILE\_OBJECTS provide for driver use.) We then proceed with connection setup and handling in our driver, using information stored in our "shadow" objects. The Microsoft driver does not see the connection request or any subsequent traffic on the connection.

If the connection request is NOT for one of our interfaces, we pass it down to the Microsoft driver. Note carefully, however, that we can not simply discard our "shadow" objects at this point. The TDI interface allows re-use of CONNECTION objects: on termination of a connection, it is legal for the TDI client to dissociate the CONNECTION object from its current . Thus our "shadow" objects must be retained for the lifetime ADDRESS object, re-associate it with another, and use it for another connection of the NT FILE\_OBJECTS: the subsequent connection could turn out to be via one of our interfaces!

254707" 60819009

## 4.7.1 Timers

### 4.7.1.1 Keepalive Timer

We don't want to implement keepalive timers on the INIC. It would in any case be a very poor use of resources to have an INIC context sitting idle for two hours.

### 4.7.1.2 Idle Timer

We will keep an idle timer in the ATCP driver for connections that are managed by the INIC (resetting it whenever we see activity on the connection), and cause a flush of context back to the host if this timer expires. We may want to make the threshold substantially lower than 2 hours, to reclaim INIC context slots for useful work sooner. May also want to make that dependent on the number of contexts which have actually been handed out: don't need to reclaim them if we haven't handed out the max.

## 5 Receive & Transmit Microcode Design

This section provides a general description of the design of the microcode that will execute on two of the sequencers of the Protocol Processor on the INIC. The overall philosophy of the INIC is discussed in other sections. This section will discuss the INIC microcode in detail.

### 5.1 Design Overview

As specified in other sections, the INIC supplies a set of 3 custom processors that will provide considerable hardware-assist to the microcode running thereon. The following lists the main hardware-assist features:

- header processing with specialized DMA engines to validate an input header and generate a context hash, move the header into fast memory and do header comparisons on a DRAM-based TCP control block.
- DRAM fifos for free buffer queues (large & small), receive-frame queues, event queues etc.
- header compare logic
- checksum generation
- multiple register contexts with register access controlled by simply setting a context register . The Protocol Processor will provide 512 SRAM-based registers to be shared among the 3 sequencers.
- automatic movement of input frames into DRAM buffers from the MAC Fifos.
- run receive processing on one sequencer and transmit processing on the other. This was chosen as opposed to letting both sequencers run receive and transmit. One of the main reasons for this is that the header-processing hardware can not be shared and interlocks would be needed to do this. Another reason is that interlocks would be needed on the resources used exclusively by receive and by transmit.
- The INIC will support up to 256 TCP connections (TCB's). A TCB is associated with an input frame when the frame's source and destination IP addresses and source and destination ports match that of the TCB. For speed of access, the TCB's will be

20190404 09:44:42

maintained in a hash table in NIC DRAM to save sequential searching. There will however, be an index in hash order in SRAM. Once a hash has been generated, the TCB will be cached in SRAM. There will be up to 8 cached TCBs in SRAM. These cache locations can be shared between both sequencers so that the sequencer with the heavier load will be able to use more cache buffers. There will also be 8 header buffers to be shared between the sequencers. Note that each header buffer is not statically linked to a specific TCB buffer. In fact the link is dynamic on a per-frame basis. The need for this dynamic linking will be explained in later sections. Suffice to say here that if there is a free header buffer, then somewhere there is also a free TCB SRAM buffer.

- There were 2 basic implementation options considered here. The first was single-stack and the second was a process model. The process model was chosen here because the custom processor design is providing zero-cost overhead for context switching through the use of a context base register, and because there will be more than enough process slots (or contexts) available for the peak load. It is also expected that all "local" variables will be held permanently in registers whilst an event is being processed.
- The features that provide this are:

256 of the 512 SRAM-based registers will be used for the register contexts. This can be divided up into 16 contexts (or processes) of 16 registers each. Then 8 of these will be reserved for receive and 8 for transmit. A Little's Law analysis has shown that in order to support 512 byte frames at maximum arrival rate of  $4 * 100$  Mbits, requires more than 8 jobs to be in process in the NIC. However each job requires an SRAM buffer for a TCB context and at present, there are only 8 of these currently specified due to SRAM space limits. So more contexts (e.g.  $32 * 8$  regs each) do not seem worthwhile. Refer to Appendix A for more details of this analysis.

A context switch simply involves reloading the context base register based on the context to be restarted, and jumping to the appropriate address for resumption.

- To better support the process model chosen, the code will lock an active TCB into an SRAM buffer while either sequencer is operating on it. This implies there will be no swapping to and from DRAM of a TCB once it is in SRAM and an operation is started on it. More specifically, the TCB will not be swapped after requesting that a DMA be performed for it. Instead, the system will switch to another active "process". Then it will resume the former process at the point directly after where the DMA was requested. This constitutes a zero-cost switch as mentioned above.
- individual TCB state machines will be run from within a "process". There will be a state machine for the receive side and one for the transmit side. The current TCB states will be stored in the SRAM TCB index table entry.
- The INIC will have 16 MB of DRAM. The current specification calls for dividing a large portion of this into 2K buffers and control allocation / deallocation of these buffers through one of the DRAM fifos mentioned above. These fifos will also be used to control small host buffers, large host buffers, command buffers and command response buffers.
- For events from one sequencer to the other (i.e. RCV  $\leftrightarrow$  XMT), the current specification calls for using simple SRAM CIO buffers, one for each direction.
- Each sequencer handles its own timers independently of the others.
- Contexts will be passed to the INIC through the Transmit command and response buffers. INIC-initiated TCB releases will be handled through the Receive small

“COPY” BUFFERS

buffers. Host-initiated releases will use the Command buffers. There needs to be strict handling of the acquisition and release of contexts to avoid windows where for example, a frame is received on a context just after the context was passed to the INIC, but before the INIC has “accepted” it.

- T/TCP (Transaction TCP): the initial INIC will not handle T/TCP connections. This is because they are typically used for the HTTP protocol and the client for that protocol typically connects, sends a request and disconnects in one segment. The server sends the connect confirm, reply and disconnect in his first segment. Then the client confirms the disconnect. This is a total of 3 segments for the life of a context. Typical data lengths are on the order of 300 bytes from the client and 3K from the server. The INIC will provide as good an assist as seems necessary here by checksumming the frame and splitting headers and data. The latter is only likely when data is forwarded with a request such as when a filled-in form is sent by the client.

### 5.1.1 SRAM Requirements

The following are SRAM requirements for the Receive and Transmit engines:

|                  |                |                           |
|------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| TCB buffers      | 256 bytes * 16 | 4096                      |
| Header buffers   | 128 bytes * 16 | 2048                      |
| TCB hash index   | 16 bytes * 256 | 4096                      |
| Timers           |                | 128                       |
| DRAM Fifo queues | 128 bytes * 16 | <u>2048</u><br>~12K bytes |

Depending upon the available space, the number of TCB buffers may be increased to 16.

### 5.1.2 General Philosophy

The basic plan is to have the host determine when a TCP connection is able to be handed to the INIC, setup the TCB and pass it to the card via a command in the Transmit queue. TCBs that the INIC owns can be handed back to the host via a request from the Receive or Transmit sequencers or from the host itself at any time.

When the INIC receives a frame, one of its immediate tasks is to determine if the frame is for a TCB that it controls. If not, the frame is passed to the host on a generic interface TCB. On transmit, the transmit request will specify a TCB hash number if the request is on a INIC-controlled TCB. Thus the initial state for the INIC will be transparent mode in which all received frames are directly passed through and all transmit requests will be simply thrown on the appropriate wire. This state is maintained until the host passes TCBs to the INIC to control. Note that frames received for which the INIC has no TCB (or it is with the host) will still have the TCP checksum verified if TCP/IP, and may split the TCPIP header off into a separate buffer.

### 5.1.3 Register Usage

There will be 512 registers available. The first 256 will be used for process contexts. The remaining 256 will be split between the 3 sequencers as follows:

257 – 320: 64 for RCV general processing / main loop.

321 - 384: 64 for XMT general processing / main loop.

385 – 512: 128 for 3<sup>rd</sup> sequencer use.

## 5.2 Receive Processing

### 5.2.1 Main Loop

The following is a summary of the main loop of Receive:

```
forever {
    while there are any Receive events {
        if (a new event) {
            if (no new context available)
                ignore the event;
        }
        call appropriate event handler to service the event;
        this may make a waiting process runnable or set up
        a new process to be run (get free context, hhdr buffer,
        TCB buffer, set the context up).
    }
    while any process contexts are runnable {
        run them by jumping to the start/resume address;
        if (process complete)
            free the context;
    }
}
```

### 5.2.2 Receive Events

The events that will be processed on a given context are:

- accept a context
- release a context command (from the host via Transmit)
- release a context request (from Transmit)
- receive a valid frame; this will actually become 2 events based on the received frame
  - receive an ACK, receive a segment
- receive an “invalid” frame i.e. one that causes the TCB to be flushed to the host
- a valid ACK needs to be sent (delayed ACK timer expiry).
- There are expected to be the following sources of events:
  1. Receive input queue: it is expected that hardware will automatically DMA arriving frames into frame buffers and queue an event into a RCV-event queue.
  2. Timer event queue: expiration of a timer will queue an event into this queue.
  3. Transmit sequencer queue: for requests from the transmit processor.



For the sake of brevity the following only discusses receive-frame processing .

### 5.2.3 Receive Details – Valid Context

The base for the receive processing done by the INIC on an existing context is the fast-path or “header prediction” code in the FreeBSD release. Thus the processing is divided into 3 parts: header validation and checksumming, TCP processing and subsequent SMB processing.

#### 5.2.3.1 Header Validation

There is considerable hardware assist here. The first step in receive processing is to dma the frame header into an SRAM header buffer. It is useful for header validation to be implemented in conjunction with this dma by scanning the data as it flies by. The following tests need to be “passed”:

- MAC header: destination address is our MAC address (not MC or BC too), the Ethertype is IP.
- IP header: header checksum is valid, header length = 5, IP length > header length, protocol = TCP, no fragmentation, destination IP is our IP address.
- TCP header: checksum is valid (incl. pseudo-header), header length = 5 or 8 (timestamp option), length is valid, dest port = SMB or FTP data, no FIN/SYN/URG/PSH/RST bits set, timestamp option is valid if present, segment is in sequence, the window size did not change, this is not a retransmission, it is a pure ACK or a pure receive segment, and most important, a valid context exists. The valid-context test is non-trivial in the amount of work involved to determine it. Also note that for pure ACKs, the window-size test will be relaxed. This is because initially the output PERSIST state is to be handled on the INIC.

Many but perhaps not all of these tests will be performed in hardware – depending upon the embodiment

#### 5.2.3.2 TCP Processing

Once a frame has passed the header validation tests, processing splits based on whether the frame is a pure ACK or a pure received segment.

##### 5.2.3.2.1 Pure RCV Packet

The design is to split off headers into a small header buffer and pass the aligned data in separate large buffers. Since a frame has been received, eventually some receiver process on the host will need to be informed. In the case of FTP, the frame is pure data and it is passed to the host immediately. This involves getting large buffers and dmaing the data into them, then setting the appropriate details in a small buffer that is used to notify the host. However for SMB, the INIC is performing reassembly of data when the frame consists of headers and data. So there may not yet be a complete SMB to pass to the host. In this case, a small buffer will be acquired and the header moved into it. If the received segment completes an SMB, then the procedures are pretty much as for FTP. If it does not, then the scheme is to at least move the received data (not the headers) to the host to free the INIC buffers and to save latency. The list of in-progress host buffers is maintained in the TCB and moved to the header buffer when the SMB is complete.

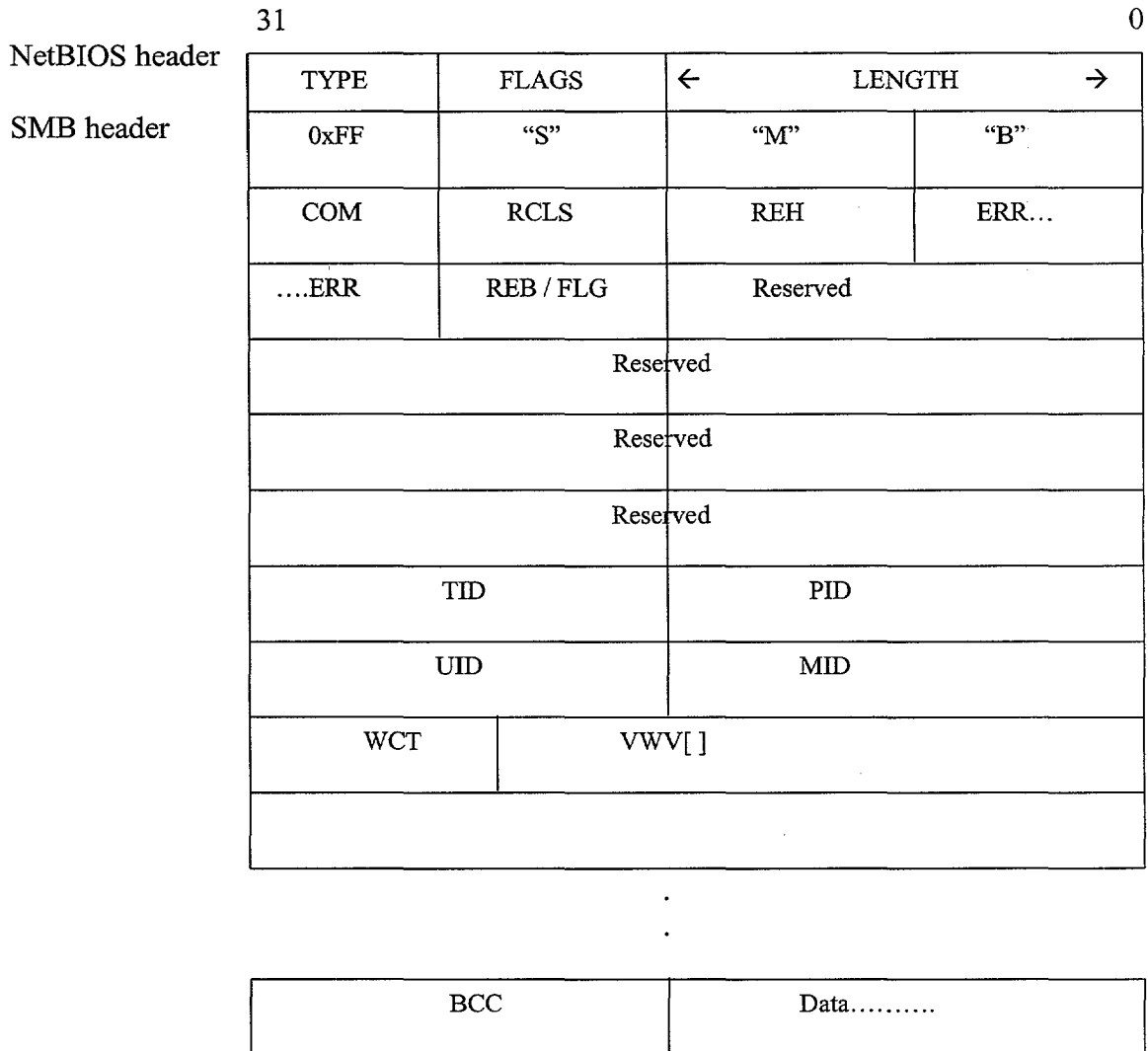
The final part of pure-receive processing is to fire off the delayed ACK timer for this segment.

### 5.2.3.2.2 Pure ACK

Pure ACK processing implies this TCB is the sender, so there may be transmit buffers that can be returned to the host. If so, send an event to the Transmit processor (or do the processing here). If there is more output available, send an event to the transmit processor. Then appropriate actions need to be taken with the retransmission timer.

### 5.2.3.3 SMB Processing

The following is the format of the SMB header of an SMB frame:



Notes (interesting fields):

- LENGTH 17 bit Length of SMB message (0 – 128K)
- COM SMB command
- WCT Count (16 bit) of parameter words in VWV[]
- VWV Variable number of parameter words
- BCC Bytes of data following

"508F5009"

The LENGTH field of the NetBIOS header will be used to determine when a complete SMB has been received and the header buffer with appropriate details can be posted to the host.

The interesting commands are the write commands: SMBwrite (0xB), SMBwriteBraw (0x1D), SMBwriteBmpx (0x1E), SMBwriteBs (0x1F), SMBwriteclose (0x2C), SMBwriteX (0x2F), SMBwriteunlock (0x14). These are interesting because they will have data to be aligned in host memory. The point to note about these commands is that they each have a different WCT field, so that the start offset of the data depends on the command type. SMB processing will thus need to be cognizant of these types.

#### 5.2.4 Receive Details – No Valid Context

The design here is to provide as much assist as possible. Frames will be checksummed and the TCPIP headers may be split off.

#### 5.2.5 Receive Notes

1. PRU\_RCVD or the equivalent in Microsoft language: the host application has to tell the INIC when he has accepted the received data that has been queued. This is so that the INIC can update the receive window. It is an advantage for this mechanism to be efficient. This may be accomplished by piggybacking these on transmit requests (not necessarily for the same TCB).
2. Keepalive Timer: for a INIC-controlled TCB, the INIC will not maintain this timer. This leaves the host with the job of determining that the TCB is still active.
3. Timestamp option: it is useful to support this option in the fast path because the BSD implementation does. Also, it can be very helpful in getting a much better estimate of the round-trip time (RTT) which TCP needs to use.
4. Idle timer: the INIC will not maintain this timer (see Note 2 above).
5. Frame with no valid context: The INIC may split TCP/IP headers into a separate header buffer.

## 5.3 Transmit Processing

### 5.3.1 Main Loop.

The following is a summary of the main loop of Transmit:

```
forever {
    while there are any Transmit events {
        if (a new event) {
            if (no new context available)
                ignore the event;
        }
        call appropriate event handler to service the event;
        this may make a waiting process runnable or set up
        a new process to be run (get free context, hddr buffer,
        TCB buffer, set the context up).
    }
    while any process contexts are runnable {
        run them by jumping to the start/resume address;
        if (process complete)
            free the context;
    }
}
```

### 5.3.2 Transmit Events

The events that will be processed on a given context and their sources are:

- accept a context (from the Host).
- release a context command (from the Host).
- release a context command (from Receive).
- valid send request and window > 0 (from host or RCV sequencer).
- valid send request and window = 0 (from host or RCV sequencer).
- send a window update (host has accepted data).
- persist timer expiration (persist timer).
- context-release event e.g. window shrank (XMT processing or retransmission timer).
- receive-release request ACK( from RCV sequencer).

### 5.3.3 Transmit Details – Valid Context

The following is an overview of the transmit flow:

The host posts a transmit request to the INIC by filling in a command buffer with appropriate data pointers etc and posting it to the INIC via the Command Buffer Address register. Note that there is one host command buffer queue, but there are 4 physical transmit lines. So each request needs to include an interface number as well as the context number. The INIC microcode will dma the command in and place it in 1 of 4 internal command queues which the transmit sequencer will work on. This is so that transmit processing can round-robin service these 4 queues to keep all 4 interfaces busy, and not

let a highly-active interface lock out the others (which would happen with a single queue).

The transmit request may be a segment that is less than the MSS, or it may be as much as a full 64K SMB READ. Obviously the former request will go out as one segment, the latter as a number of MSS-sized segments. The transmitting TCB must hold on to the request until all data in it has been transmitted and acked. Appropriate pointers to do this will be kept in the TCB. A large buffer is acquired from the free buffer fifo, and the MAC and TCP/IP headers are created in it. It may be quicker/simpler to keep a basic frame header set up in the TCB and either dma directly this into the frame each time. Then data is dmad from host memory into the frame to create an MSS-sized segment. This dma also checksums the data. Then the checksum is adjusted for the pseudo-header and placed into the TCP header, and the frame is queued to the MAC transmit interface which may be controlled by the third sequencer. The final step is to update various window fields etc in the TCB. Eventually either the entire request will have been sent and acked, or a retransmission timer will expire in which case the context is flushed to the host. In either case, the INIC will place a command response in the Response queue containing the command buffer handle from the original transmit command and appropriate status. The above discussion has dealt how an actual transmit occurs. However the real challenge in the transmit processor is to determine whether it is appropriate to transmit at the time a transmit request arrives. There are many reasons not to transmit: the receiver's window size is  $\leq 0$ , the Persist timer has expired, the amount to send is less than a full segment and an ACK is expected / outstanding, the receiver's window is not half-open etc. Much of the transmit processing will be in determining these conditions.

#### 5.3.4 Transmit Details – No Valid Context

The main difference between this and a context-based transmit is that the queued request here will already have the appropriate MAC and TCP/IP (or whatever) headers in the frame to be output. Also the request is guaranteed not to be greater than MSS-sized in length. So the processing is fairly simple. A large buffer is acquired and the frame is dmad into it, at which time the checksum is also calculated. If the frame is TCP/IP, the checksum will be appropriately adjusted if necessary (pseudo-header etc) and placed in the TCP header. The frame is then queued to the appropriate MAC transmit interface. Then the command is immediately responded to with appropriate status through the Response queue.

#### 5.3.5 Transmit Notes

1. Slow-start: the INIC will handle the slow-start algorithm that is now a part of the TCP standard. This obviates waiting until the connection is sending a full-rate before passing it to the INIC.
2. Window Probe vs Window Update: an explanation for posterity....

A Window Probe is sent from the sending TCB to the receiving TCB, and it means the sender has the receiver in PERSIST state. Persist state is entered when the receiver advertises a zero window. It is thus the state of the transmitting TCB. In this state, he sends periodic window probes to the receiver in case an ACK from the receiver has been lost. The receiver will return his latest window size in the ACK.

264707 "60819009

A Window Update is sent from the receiving TCB to the sending TCB, usually to tell him that the receiving window has altered. It is mostly triggered by the upper layer when it accepts some data. This probably means the sending TCB is viewing the receiving TCB as being in PERSIST state.

3. Persist state: it is designed to handle Persist state on the INIC. It seems unreasonable to throw a TCB back to the host just because its receiver advertised a zero window. This would normally be a transient situation, and would tend to happen mostly with clients that do not support slow-start. Alternatively, the code can easily be changed to throw the TCB back to the host as soon as a receiver advertises a zero window.
4. MSS-sized frames: the INIC code will expect all transmit requests for which it has no TCB to not be greater than the MSS. If any request is, it will be dropped and an appropriate response status posted.
5. Silly Window avoidance: as a receiver, the INIC will do the right thing here and not advertise small windows – this is easy. However it is necessary to also do things to avoid this as a sender, for the cases where a stupid client does advertise small windows. Without getting into too much detail here, the mechanism requires the INIC code to calculate the largest window advertisement ever advertised by the other end. It is an attempt to guess the size of the other end’s receive buffer and assumes the other end never reduces the size of its receive buffer. See Stevens Vol. 1 pp. 325-326.

## 6 The Utility Processor

### 6.1 Summary

The following is a summary of the main functions of the utility sequencer of the microprocessor:

- look at the event queues: Event13Type & Event23Type (we assume there will be an event status bit for this - USE\_EV13 and USE\_EV23) in the events register; these are events from sequencers 1 and 2; they will mainly be XMIT requests from the XMT sequencer. Dequeue request and place the frame on the appropriate interface.
- RCV-frame support: in the model, RCV is done through VnicReceive() which is registered by the lower-edge driver, and is called at dispatch-level. This routine calls VnicTransferDataComplete() to check if the xfer (possibly DMA) of the frame into host buffers is complete. The latter rtne is also called at dispatch level on a DMA-completion interrupt. It queues complete buffers to the RCV sequencer via the normal queue mechanism.
- Other processes may also be employed here for supporting the RCV sequencer.
- service the following registers: (this will probably involve micro-interrupts)
  - Header Buffer Address register:
    - buffers are 256 bytes long on 256-byte boundaries.
    - 31-8 - physical addr in host of a set of contiguous hhdr buffers
    - 7-0 - number of hhdr buffers passed.
    - Use contents to add to SmallHType queue

Data Buffer Handle & Data Buffer Address registers:  
buffers are 4K long aligned on 4K boundaries...  
Use contents to add to the FreeType queue.

Command Buffer Address register:  
buffers are multiple of 32 bytes up to 1K long ( $2^{**5} * 32$ )  
31-5 - physical addr in host of cmd buffer  
4-0 - length of cmd in bytes/32  
(i.e. multiples of 32 bytes)  
Points to host cmd; get FreeSType buffer and move  
command into it; queue to Xmit0-Xmit3Type queues.

Response Buffer Address register:  
buffers are 32 bytes long on 32-byte boundaries  
31-8 - physical addr in host of a set of  
contiguous resp buffers  
7-0 - number of resp buffers passed.  
Use contents to add to the ResponseType queue.

- low buffer threshold support: set approp bits in the ISR when the available-buffers count in the various queues filled by the host falls below a threshold.

## 6.2 Further Operations of the Utility Processor

The utility processor of the microprocessor housed on the INIC is responsible for setting up and implementing all configuration space and memory mapped operations, and also as described below, for managing the debug interface.

All data transfers, and other INIC initiated transfers will be done via DMA. Configuration space for both the network processor function and the utility processor function will define a single memory space for each. This memory space will define the basic communication structure for the host. In general, writing to one of these memory locations will perform a request for service from the INIC. This is detailed in the memory description for each function. This section defines much of the operation of the Host interface, but should be read in conjunction with the Host Interface Strategy for the Alacritech INIC to fully define the Host/INIC interface.

Two registers, DMA hardware and an interrupt function comprise the INIC interface to the Host through PCI. The interrupt function is implemented via a four bit register (PCI\_INT) tied to the PCI interrupt lines. This register is directly accessed by the microprocessor.

THE MICROPROCESSOR uses two registers, the PCI\_Data\_Reg and the PCI\_Address\_Reg, to enable the Host to access Configuration Space and the memory space allocated to the INIC. These registers are not available to the Host, but are used by THE MICROPROCESSOR to enable Host reads and writes. The function of these two registers is as follows.

## PCI\_Data\_Reg

This register can be both read and written by THE MICROPROCESSOR. On write operations from the host, this register contains the data being sent from the host. On read operations, this register contains the data to be sent to the host.

## PCI\_Address\_Reg

This is the control register for memory reads and writes from the host. The structure of the register is as follows:

|             |                 |        |  |
|-------------|-----------------|--------|--|
| Bit 31 – 24 | Byte enable     | 7 – 0. | Only the low order four bits are valid for 32 bit addressing mode. |
| Bit 23 – 0  | Memory access   |        |  |
|             |                 | 1      | Configuration access   |
| Bit 22 – 0  | Read (to Host)  |        |  |
|             |                 | 1      | Write (from Host)  |
| 1           | <b>Bit 21 –</b> | 1      | <b>Data Valid</b>  |
| Bit 20 – 16 | Reserved        |        |  |
| Bit 15 – 0  | Address         |        |  |

During a write operation from the Host the PCI\_Data\_Reg contains valid data after Data Valid is set in the PCI\_Address\_Reg. Both registers are locked until THE MICROPROCESSOR writes the PCI\_Data\_Reg, which resets Data Valid.

All read operations will be direct from SRAM. Memory space based reads will return 00. Configuration space reads will be mapped as follows:

| <u>Configuration Space 1</u> | <u>SRAM Address Offset</u> |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 00                           | 00                         |
| 04                           | 04                         |
| 08                           | 08                         |
| 0C                           | 0C                         |
| 10                           | 10                         |
| 3C                           | 14                         |

| <u>Configuration Space 2</u> |    |
|------------------------------|----|
| 00                           | 00 |
| 04                           | 18 |
| 08                           | 08 |
| 0C                           | 1C |
| 10                           | 20 |
| 3C                           | 24 |

All other reads to configuration space will return 00.



## 6.2.1 CONFIGURATION SPACE

The INIC is implemented as a multi-function device. The first device is the network controller, and the second device is the debug interface. An alternative production embodiment may implement only the network controller function. Both configuration space headers will be the same, except for the differences noted in the following description.

**Vendor ID** – This field will contain the Alacritech Vendor ID. One field will be used for both functions. The Alacritech Vendor ID is hex 139A.

**Device ID** – Chosen at Alacritech on a device specific basis. One field will be used for both functions.

**Command** – Initialized to 00. All bits defined below as not enabled (0) will remain 0. Those that are enabled will be set to 0 or 1 depending on the state of the system. Each function (network and debug) will have its own command field.

- Bit 0 – 0 I/O accesses are not enabled
- Bit 1 – 1 Memory accesses are enabled
- Bit 2 – 1 Bus master is enabled
- Bit 3 – 0 Special Cycle is not enabled
- Bit 4 – 1 Memory Write and Invalidate is enabled
- Bit 5 – 0 VGA palette snooping is not enabled
- Bit 6 – 1 Parity checking is enabled
- Bit 7 – 0 Address data stepping is not enabled
- Bit 8 – SERR# is enabled
- Bit 9 – 0 Fast back to back is not enabled

**Status** – This is not initialized to zero. Each function will have its own field. The configuration is as follows:

- Bit 5 – 1 66 MHz capable is enabled. This bit will be set if the INIC Detects the system running at 66 MHz on reset
- Bit 6 – 0 User Definable Features is not enabled
- Bit 7 – 1 Fast Back-to-Back slave transfers enabled
- Bit 8 – 1 Parity Error enabled – This bit is initialized to 0
- Bit 9,10 – 00 – Fast device select will be set if we are at 33 MHz  
01 – Medium device select will be set if we are at 66 MHz
- Bit 11 – 1 Target Abort is implemented. Initialized to 0.
- Bit 12 – 1 Target Abort is implemented. Initialized to 0.
- Bit 13 – 1 Master Abort is implemented. Initialized to 0.
- Bit 14 – 1 SERR# is implemented. Initialized to 0.
- Bit 15 – 1 Parity error is implemented. Initialized to 0.

**Revision ID** – The revision field will be shared by both functions.

**Class Code** – This is 02 00 00 for the network controller, and for the debug interface. The field will be shared.

Cache Line Size – This is initialized to zero. Supported sizes are 16, 32, 64 and 128 bytes. This hardware register is replicated in SRAM and supported separately for each function, but THE MICROPROCESSOR will implement the value set in Configuration Space 1 (the network processor).

Latency Timer – This is initialized to zero. The function is supported. This hardware register is replicated in SRAM. Each function is supported separately, but THE MICROPROCESSOR will implement the value set in Configuration Space 1 (the network processor).

Header Type – This is set to 80 for both functions, but will be supported separately.

BIST – Is implemented. In addition to responding to a request to run self test, if test after reset fails, a code will be set in the BIST register. This will be implemented separately for each function.

Base Address Register – A single base address register is implemented for each function. It is 64 bits in length, and the bottom four bits are configured as follows:

- Bit 0 – 0 Indicates memory base address
- Bit 1,2 – 00 Locate base address anywhere in 32 bit memory space
- Bit 3 – 1 Memory is prefetchable

CardBus CIS Pointer – Not implemented—initialized to 0.

Subsystem Vendor ID – Not implemented—initialized to 0.

Subsystem ID – Not implemented—initialized to 0.

Expansion ROM Base Address – Not implemented—initialized to 0.

Interrupt Line – Implemented—initialized to 0. This is implemented separately for each function.

Interrupt Pin – This is set to 01, corresponding to INTA# for the network controller, and 02, corresponding to INTB# for the debug interface. This is implemented separately for each function.

Min\_Gnt – This can be set at a value in the range of 10, to allow reasonably long bursts on the bus. This is implemented separately for each function.

Max\_Lat – This can be set to 0 to indicate no particular requirement for frequency of access to PCI. This is implemented separately for each function.

## 6.2.2 MEMORY SPACE

Because each of the following functions may or may not reside in a single location, and may or may not need to be in SRAM at all, the address for each is really only used as an identifier (label). There is, therefore, no control block anywhere in memory that represents this memory space. When the host writes one of these registers, the utility

processor will construct the data required and transfer it. Reads to this memory will generate 00 for data.

#### 6.2.2.1 Network Processor

The following four byte registers, beginning at location h00 of the network processor's allocated memory, are defined.

- 00 – Interrupt Status Pointer -- Initialized by the host to point to a four byte area where status is stored
- 04 – Interrupt Status – Returned status from host. Sent after one or more status conditions have been reset. Also an interlock for storing any new status. Once status has been stored at the Interrupt Status Pointer location, no new status will be stored until the host writes the Interrupt Status Register. New status will be ored with any remaining uncleared status (as defined by the contents of the returned status) and stored again at the Interrupt Status Pointer location. Bits are as follows:
  - Bit 31 – ERR -- Error bits are set
  - Bit 30 – RCV – Receive has occurred
  - Bit 29 – XMT – Transmit command complete
  - Bit 25 – RMISS – Receive drop occurred due to no buffers
- 08 – Interrupt Mask – Written by the host. Interrupts are masked for each of the bits in the interrupt status when the same bit in the mask register is set. When the Interrupt Mask register is written and as a result a status bit is unmasked, an interrupt is generated. Also, when the Interrupt Status Register is written, enabling new status to be stored, when it is stored if a bit is stored that is not masked by the Interrupt Mask, an interrupt is generated.
- 0C – Header Buffer Address – Written by host to pass a set of header buffers to the INIC.
- 10 – Data Buffer Handle – First register to be written by the Host to transfer a receive data buffer to the INIC. This data is Host reference data. It is not used by the INIC, it is returned with the data buffer. However, to insure integrity of the buffer, this register must be interlocked with the Data Buffer Address register. Once the Data Buffer Address register has been written, neither register can be written until after the Data Buffer Handle register has been read by THE MICROPROCESSOR.
- 14 – Data Buffer Address – Pointer to the data buffer being sent to the INIC by the Host. Must be interlocked with the Data Buffer Handle register.
- 18 – Command Buffer Address XMT0 – Pointer to a set of command buffers sent by the Host. THE MICROPROCESSOR will DMA the buffers to local DRAM found on the FreeSType queue and queue the Command

Buffer Address XMT0 with the local address replacing the host Address.

- 1C – Command Buffer Address SMT1
- 20 – Command Buffer Address SMT2
- 24 – Command Buffer Address SMT3
- 28 – Response Buffer Address -- Pointer to a set of response buffers sent by the Host. These will be treated in the same fashion as the Command Buffer Address registers.

#### 6.2.2.2 Utility Processor

Ending status will be handled by the utility processor in the same fashion as it is handled by the network processor. At present two ending status conditions are defined B31 – command complete, and B30 – error. When end status is stored an interrupt is generated.

Two additional registers are defined, Command Pointer and Data Pointer. The Host is responsible for insuring that the Data Pointer is valid and points to sufficient memory before storing a command pointer. Storing a command pointer initiates command decode and execution by the debug processor. The Host must not modify either command or Data Pointer until ending status has been received, at which point a new command may be initiated. Memory space is write only by the Host, reads will receive 00. The format is as follows:

- 00 – Interrupt Status Pointer -- Initialized by the host to point to a four byte area where status is stored
- 04 – Interrupt Status – Returned status from host. Sent after one or more status conditions have been reset. Also an interlock for storing any new status. Once status has been stored at the Interrupt Status Pointer location, no new status will be stored until the host writes the Interrupt Status Register. New status will be ored with any remaining uncleared status (as defined by the contents of the returned status) and stored again at the Interrupt Status Pointer location. Bits are as follows:
  - Bit 31 – CC – Command Complete
  - Bit 30 – ERR -- Error
  - Bit29 – Transmit Processor Halted
  - Bit28 – Receive Processor Halted
  - Bit27 – Utility Processor Halted
- 08 – Interrupt Mask – Written by the host. Interrupts are masked for each of the bits in the interrupt status when the same bit in the mask register is set. When the Interrupt Mask register is written and as a result a status bit is unmasked, an interrupt is generated. Also,

20190409 14:44:00

when the Interrupt Status Register is written, enabling new status to be stored, when it is stored if a bit is stored that is not masked by the Interrupt Mask, an interrupt is generated.

- 0C – Command Pointer – Points to command to be executed. Storing this pointer initiates command decode and execution.
- 10 – Data Pointer – Points to the data buffer. This is used for both read and write data, determined by the command function.

## 7 Debug Interface

In order to provide a mechanism to debug the microcode running on the microprocessor sequencers, a debug process has been defined which will run on the utility sequencer. This processor will interface with a control program on the host processor over PCI.

### 7.1 PCI Interface

This interface is defined in the combination of the Utility Processor and the Host Interface Strategy sections, above.

### 7.2 Command Format

The first byte of the command, the command byte, defines the structure of the remainder of the command. The first five bits of the command byte are the command itself. The next bit is used to specify an alternate processor, and the last two bits specify which processors are intended for the command.

#### 7.2.1 Command Byte

|         |            |           |
|---------|------------|-----------|
| 7 – 3   | 2          | 1 – 0     |
| Command | Alt. Proc. | Processor |

#### 7.2.2 Processor Bits

- 00 – Any Processor
- 01 – Transmit Processor
- 10 – Receive Processor
- 11 – Utility Processor

64707" 60875003

### 7.2.3 Alternate Processor

This bit defines which processor should handle debug processing if the utility processor is defined as the processor in debug.

- 0 – Transmit Processor
- 1 – Receive Processor

### 7.2.4 Single Byte Commands

- 00 – Halt

This command asynchronously halts the processor.

- 08 – Run

This command starts the processor.

- 10 – Step

This command steps the processor.

### 7.2.5 Eight Byte Commands

- 18 – Break

|         |          |       |         |
|---------|----------|-------|---------|
| 0       | 1        | 2 - 3 | 4 - 7   |
| Command | Reserved | Count | Address |

This command sets a stop at the specified address. A count of 1 causes the specified processor to halt the first time it executes the instruction. A count of 2 or more causes the processor to halt after that number of executions. The processor is halted just before executing the instruction. A count of 0 does not halt the processor, but causes a sync signal to be generated. If a second processor is set to the same break address, the count data from the first break request is used, and each time either processor executes the instruction the count is decremented.

- 20 – Reset Break

|         |          |         |
|---------|----------|---------|
| 0       | 1 - 3    | 4 - 7   |
| Command | Reserved | Address |

This command resets a previously set break point at the specified address. Reset break fully resets that address. If multiple processors were set to that break point, all will be reset.

#### 28 – Dump

|         |            |       |         |
|---------|------------|-------|---------|
| 0       | 1          | 2 - 3 | 4 - 7   |
| Command | Descriptor | Count | Address |

This command transfers to the host the contents of the descriptor. For descriptors larger than four bytes, a count, in four byte increments is specified. For descriptors utilizing an address the address field is specified.

### 7.2.6 Descriptor

#### 00 – Register

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Both fields are four byte based (a count of 1 transfers four bytes).

#### 01 – Sram

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address.

#### 02 – Dram

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address

#### 03 – Cstore

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address

Stand-alone descriptors:

The following descriptors do not use either the count or address fields. They transfer the contents of the referenced register.

#### 04 – CPU\_STATUS

#### 05 – PC

20190715 15:28:00

- 06 – ADDR\_REGA
- 07 – ADDR\_REGB
- 08 – RAM\_BASE
- 09 – FILE\_BASE
- 0A – INSTR\_REG\_L
- 0B – INSTR\_REG\_H
- 0C – MAC\_DATA
- 0D – DMA\_EVENT
- 0E – MISC\_EVENT
- 0F – Q\_IN\_RDY
- 10 – Q\_OUT\_RDY
- 11 – LOCK STATUS
- 12 – STACK - This returns 12 bytes
- 13 – Sense \_ Reg

This register contains four bytes of data. If error status is posted for a command, if the next command that is issued reads this register, a code describing the error in more detail may be obtained. If any command other than a dump of this register is issued after error status, sense information will be reset.

30 – Load

|         |            |       |         |
|---------|------------|-------|---------|
| 0       | 1          | 2 - 3 | 4 - 7   |
| Command | Descriptor | Count | Address |

This command transfers from the host the contents of the descriptor. For descriptors larger than four bytes, a count, in four byte increments is specified. For descriptors utilizing an address the address field is specified.

7.2.7 Descriptor

00 – Register

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Both fields are four byte based.

ALACRITECH.COM



## 01 – Sram

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address.

## 02 – Dram

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address

## 03 – Cstore

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address. This applies to WCS only.

Stand-alone descriptors:

The following descriptors do not use either the count or address fields. They transfer the contents of the referenced register.

04 – ADDR\_REGA

05 – ADDR\_REGB

06 – RAM\_BASE

07 – FILE\_BASE

08 – MAC\_DATA

09 – Q\_IN\_RDY

0A – Q\_OUT\_RDY

0B – DBG\_ADDR

38 – Map

This command allows an instruction in ROM to be replaced by an instruction in WCS. The new instruction will be located in the Host buffer. It will be stored in the first eight bytes of the buffer, with the high bits unused. To reset a mapped out instruction, map it to location 00.

0  
Command

1 – 3  
Address to  
Map To

4 – 7  
Address to  
Map Out

## 8 HARDWARE SPECIFICATION

### FEATURES

#### • Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI) Interface

- Universal PCI interface supports both 5.0V and 3.3V signaling environments.
- Supports both 32-bit and 64 bit PCI interface.
- Supports PCI clock frequencies from 15MHz to 66MHz
- High performance bus mastering architecture.
- Host memory based communications reduce register accesses.
- Host memory based interrupt status word reduces register reads.
- Plug and Play compatible.
- PCI specification revision 2.1 compliant.
- PCI bursts up to 512 bytes.
- Supports cache line operations up to 128 bytes.
- Both big-endian and little-endian byte alignments supported.
- Supports Expansion ROM.

#### • Network Interface

- Four internal 802.3 and ethernet compliant Macs.
- Media Independent Interface (MII) supports external PHYs.
- 10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX/FX and 100BASE-T4 supported.
- Full and half-duplex modes supported.
- Automatic PHY status polling notifies system of status change.
- Provides SNMP statistics counters.
- Supports broadcast and multicast packets.
- Provides promiscuous mode for network monitoring or multiple unicast address detection.
- Supports "huge packets" up to 32KB.
- Mac-layer loop-back test mode.
- Supports auto-negotiating Phys.

- **Memory Interface**

- External Dram buffering of transmit and receive packets.
- Buffering configurable as 4MB, 8MB, 16MB or 32MB.
- 32-bit interface supports throughput of 224MB/s
- Supports external FLASH ROM up to 4 MB, for diskless boot applications.
- Supports external serial EEPROM for custom configuration and Mac addresses.

- **Protocol Processor**

- High speed, custom, 32-bit processor executes 66 million instructions per second.
- Processes IP, TCP and NETBIOS protocols.
- Supports up to 256 resident TCP/IP contexts.
- Writable control store (WCS) allows field updates for feature enhancements.

- **Power**

- 3.3V chip operation.
- PCI controlled 5.0V/3.3V I/O cell operation.

- **Packaging**

- 272-pin plastic ball grid array.
- 91 PCI signals.
- 68 MII signals.
- 58 external memory signals.
- 1 clock signal.
- 54 signals split between power and ground.
- 272 total pins.

## GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The microprocessor is a 32-bit, full-duplex, four channel, 10/100-Megabit per second (Mbps), Intelligent Network Interface Controller, designed to provide high-speed protocol processing for server applications. It combines the functions of a standard network interface controller and a protocol processor within a single chip. Although designed specifically for server applications, The microprocessor can be used by PCs, workstations and routers or anywhere that TCP/IP protocols are being utilized.

When combined with four 802.3/MII compliant Phys and Synchronous Dram (SDram), the INIC comprises four complete ethernet nodes. It contains four 802.3/ethernet compliant Macs, a PCI Bus Interface Unit (BIU), a memory controller, transmit fifos, receive fifos and a custom TCP/IP/NETBIOS protocol processor. The INIC supports 10Base-T , 100Base-TX, 100Base-FX and 100Base-T4 via the MII interface attachment of appropriate Phys.

The INIC Macs provide statistical information that may be used for SNMP. The Macs operate in promiscuous mode allowing the INIC to function as a network monitor, receive broadcast and multicast packets and implement multiple Mac addresses for each node.

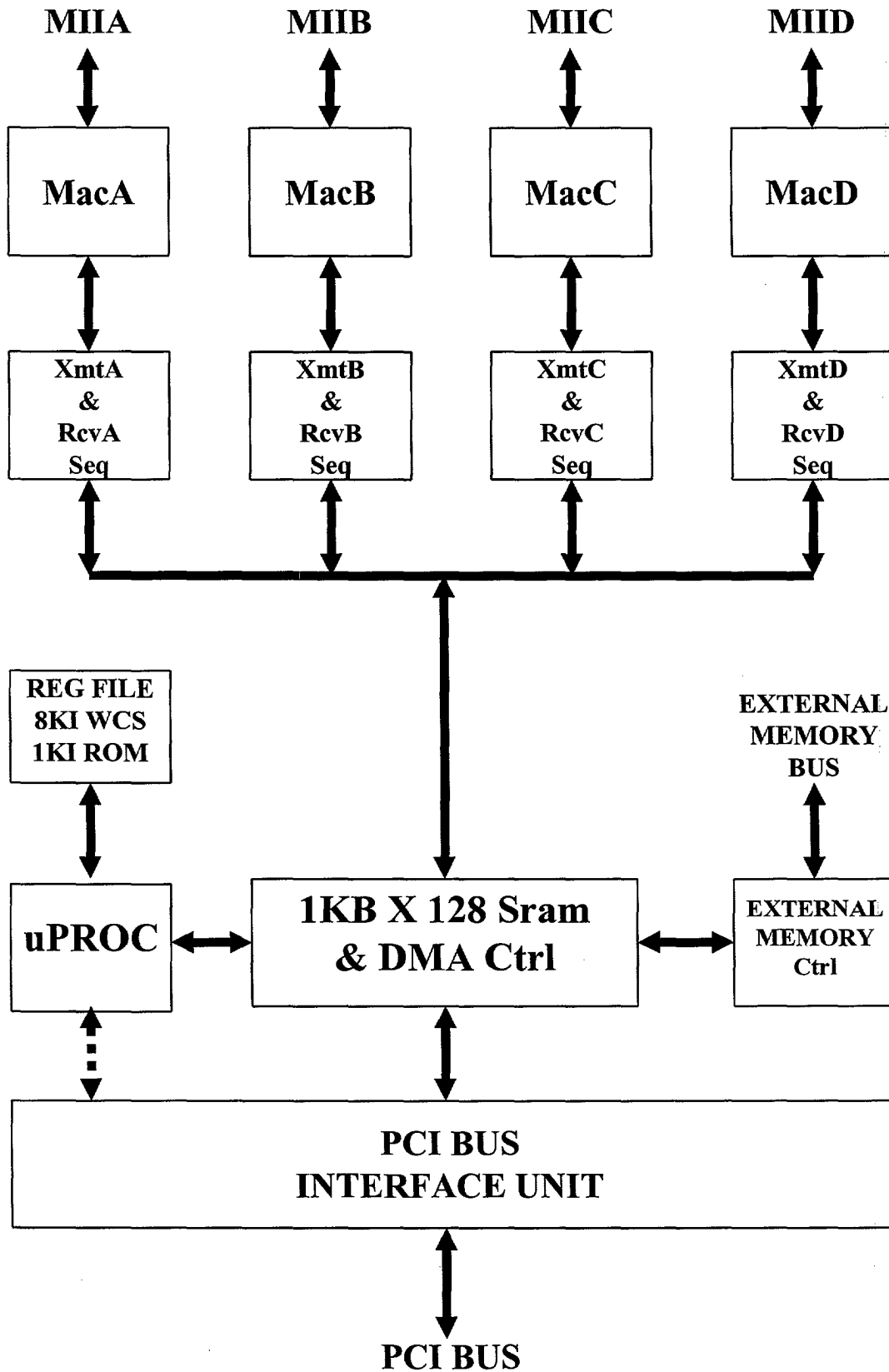
Any 802.3/MII compliant PHY can be utilized, allowing the INIC to support 10BASE-T, 10BASE-T2, 100BASE-TX, 100Base-FX and 100BASE-T4 as well as future interface standards. PHY identification and initialization is accomplished through host driver initialization routines. PHY status registers can be polled continuously by the INIC and detected PHY status changes reported to the host driver. The Mac can be configured to support a maximum frame size of 1518 bytes or 32768 bytes.

The 64-bit, multiplexed BIU provides a direct interface to the PCI bus for both slave and master functions. The INIC is capable of operating in either a 64-bit or 32-bit PCI environment, while supporting 64-bit addressing in either configuration. PCI bus frequencies up to 66MHz are supported yielding instantaneous bus transfer rates of 533MB/s. Both 5.0V and 3.3V signaling environments can be utilized by the INIC. Configurable cache-line size up to 256B will accommodate future architectures, and Expansion ROM/Flash support allows for diskless system booting. Non-PC applications are supported via programmable big and little endian modes. Host based communication has been utilized to provide the best system performance possible.

The INIC supports Plug-N-Play auto-configuration through the PCI configuration space. External pull-up and pull-down resistors, on the memory I/O pins, allow selection of various features during chip reset. Support of an external eeprom allows for local storage of configuration information such as Mac addresses.

External SDram provides frame buffering, which is configurable as 4MB, 8MB, 16MB or 32MB using the appropriate SIMMs. Use of -10 speed grades yields an external buffer bandwidth of 224MB/s. The buffer provides temporary storage of both incoming and outgoing frames. The protocol processor accesses the frames within the buffer in order to implement TCP/IP and NETBIOS. Incoming frames are processed, assembled then transferred to host memory under the control of the protocol processor. For transmit, data is moved from host memory to buffers where various headers are created before being transmitted out via the Mac.

**BLOCK DIAGRAM**



COPYRIGHT © 2005

## OUTLINE

### • Cores/Cells

LSI Logic Ethernet-110 Core, 100Base & 10Base Mac with MII interface.

LSI Logic single port Sram, triple port Sram and ROM available.

LSI Logic PCI 66MHz, 5V compatible I/O cell.

LSI Logic PLL

### • Die Size / Pin Count

LSI Logic G10 process.

| <u>MODULE</u>            | <u>DESCR</u>                                      | <u>SPEED</u>  | <u>AREA</u>                 |
|--------------------------|---|---------------|-----------------------------|
| Scratch RAM,             | 1Kx128 sport,                                     | 4.37 ns nom., | 06.77 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| WCS,                     | 8Kx49 sport,                                      | 6.40 ns nom., | 18.29 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| MAP,                     | 128x7 sport,                                      | 3.50 ns nom., | 00.24 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| ROM,                     | 1Kx49 32col,                                      | 5.00 ns nom., | 00.45 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| REGs,                    | 512x32 tport,                                     | 6.10 ns nom., | 03.49 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| Macs,                    | .75 mm <sup>2</sup> x 4 =                         |               | 03.30 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| PLL,                     | .5 mm <sup>2</sup> =                              |               | 00.55 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| MISC LOGIC,              | 117,260 gates / (5035 gates / mm <sup>2</sup> ) = |               | 23.29 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| <b>TOTAL CORE</b>        |   |               | <b>56.22 mm<sup>2</sup></b> |
| (Core side) <sup>2</sup> |   | =             | 56.22 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| Core side                |   | =             | 07.50 mm                    |
| Die side                 | = core side + 1.0 mm (I/O cells)                  | =             | 08.50 mm                    |
| Die area                 | = 8.5 mm x 8.5 mm                                 | =             | <b>72.25 mm<sup>2</sup></b> |
| Pads needed              | = 220 signals x 1.25 (vss, vdd)                   | =             | <b>275 pins</b>             |
| LSI PBGA                 |   | =             | <b>272 pins</b>             |

• **Datapath Bandwidth**

|   |   |                    |
|---|---|--------------------|
| (10MB/s/100Base) x 2 (full duplex) x 4 connections  | = | 80 MB/s            |
| Average frame size  | = | 512 B              |
| Frame rate = 80MB/s / 512B  | = | 156,250 frames / s |
| Cpu overhead / frame = (256 B context read) + (64B header read) + (128B context write) + (128B misc.) | = | 512B / frame       |
| Total bandwidth = (512B in) + (512B out) + (512B Cpu)   | = | 1536B / frame      |
| <b>Dram Bandwidth required = (1536B/frame) x (156,250 frames/s)</b>                                   | = | <b>240MB/s</b>     |
| <b>Dram Bandwidth @ 60MHz = (32 bytes / 167ns)</b>  | = | <b>202MB/s</b>     |
| <b>Dram Bandwidth @ 66MHz = (32 bytes / 150ns)</b>  | = | <b>224MB/s</b>     |
| <b>PCI Bandwidth required</b>   | = | <b>80MB/s</b>      |
| <b>PCI Bandwidth available @ 30 MHz, 32b, average</b>   | = | <b>46MB/s</b>      |
| <b>PCI Bandwidth available @ 33 MHz, 32b, average</b>   | = | <b>50MB/s</b>      |
| <b>PCI Bandwidth available @ 60 MHz, 32b, average</b>   | = | <b>92MB/s</b>      |
| <b>PCI Bandwidth available @ 66 MHz, 32b, average</b>   | = | <b>100MB/s</b>     |
| <b>PCI Bandwidth available @ 30 MHz, 64b, average</b>   | = | <b>92MB/s</b>      |
| <b>PCI Bandwidth available @ 33 MHz, 64b, average</b>   | = | <b>100MB/s</b>     |
| <b>PCI Bandwidth available @ 60 MHz, 64b, average</b>   | = | <b>184MB/s</b>     |
| <b>PCI Bandwidth available @ 66 MHz, 64b, average</b>   | = | <b>200MB/s</b>     |

• **Cpu Bandwidth**

|   |   |                               |
|---|---|-------------------------------|
| Receive frame interval = 512B / 40MB/s                                    | = | 12.8us                        |
| <b>Instructions / frame @ 60MHz = (12.8us/frame) / (50ns/instruction)</b> | = | <b>256</b>                    |
| <b>instructions/frame</b>   |   |                               |
| <b>Instructions / frame @ 66MHz = (12.8us/frame) / (45ns/instruction)</b> | = | <b>284</b>                    |
| <b>instructions/frame</b>   |   |                               |
| <b>Required instructions / frame (per Clive)</b>                          | = | <b>250 instructions/frame</b> |

"60375000"

## • Performance Features

- 512 registers improve performance through reduced scratch ram accesses and reduced instructions.
- Register windowing eliminates context-switching overhead.
- Separate instruction and data paths eliminate memory contention.
- Totally resident control store eliminates stalling during instruction fetch.
- Multiple logical processors eliminate context switching and improve real-time response.
- Pipelined architecture increases operating frequency.
- Shared register and scratch ram improve inter-processor communication.
- Fly-by state-Machine assists address compare and checksum calculation.
- TCP/IP-context caching reduces latency.
- Hardware implemented queues reduce Cpu overhead and latency.
- Horizontal microcode greatly improves instruction efficiency.
- Automatic frame DMA and status between Mac and dram buffer.
- Deterministic architecture coupled with context switching eliminates processor stalls.



## PROCESSOR

The processor is a convenient means to provide a programmable state-machine which is capable of processing incoming frames, processing host commands, directing network traffic and directing PCI bus traffic. Three processors are implemented using shared hardware in a three-level pipelined architecture which launches and completes a single instruction for every clock cycle. The instructions are executed in three distinct phases corresponding to each of the pipeline stages where each phase is responsible for a different function.

The first instruction phase writes the instruction results of the last instruction to the destination operand, modifies the program counter (Pc), selects the address source for the instruction to fetch, then fetches the instruction from the control store. The fetched instruction is then stored in the instruction register at the end of the clock cycle.

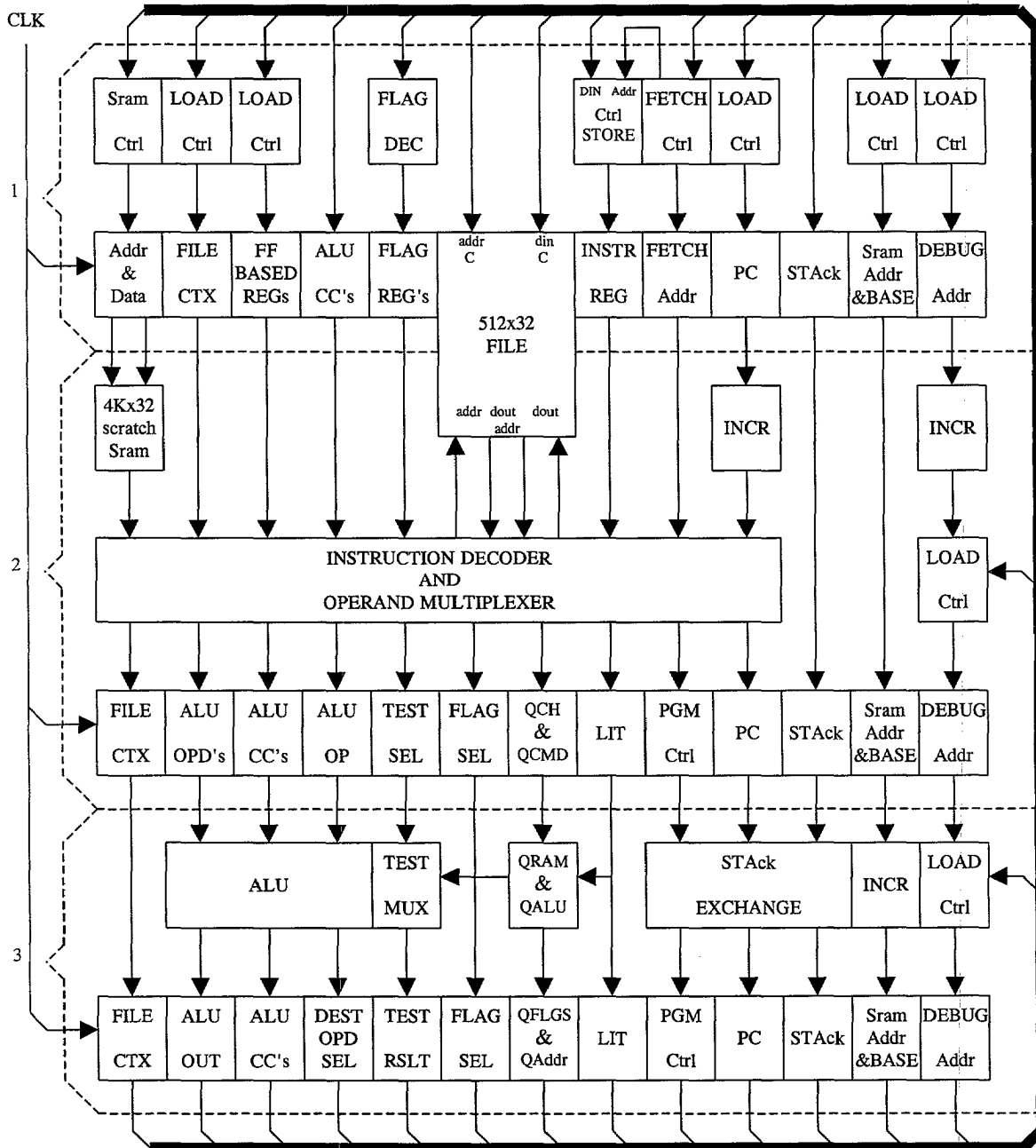
The processor instructions reside in the on-chip control-store, which is implemented as a mixture of ROM and Sram. The ROM contains 1K instructions starting at address 0x0000 and aliases each 0x0400 locations throughout the first 0x8000 of instruction space. The Sram (WCS) will hold up to 0x2000 instructions starting at address 0x8000 and aliasing each 0x2000 locations throughout the last 0x8000 of instruction space. The ROM and Sram are both 49-bits wide accounting for bits [48:0] of the instruction microword. A separate mapping ram provides bits [55:49] of the microword (**MapAddr**) to allow replacement of faulty ROM based instructions. The mapping ram has a configuration of 128x7 which is insufficient to allow a separate map address for each of the 1K ROM locations. To allow re-mapping of the entire 1K ROM space, the map ram address lines are connected to the address bits **Fetch[9:3]**. The result is that the ROM is re-mapped in blocks of 8 contiguous locations.

The second instruction phase decodes the instruction which was stored in the instruction register. It is at this point that the map address is checked for a non-zero value which will cause the decoder to force a **Jump** instruction to the map address. If a non-zero value is detected then the decoder selects the source operands for the Alu operation based on the values of the **OpdASel**, **OpdBSel** and **AluOp** fields. These operands are then stored in the decode register at the end of the clock cycle. Operands may originate from **File**, **Sram**, or flip-flop based registers. The second instruction phase is also where the results of the previous instruction are written to the **Sram**.

The third instruction phase is when the actual Alu operation is performed, the test condition is selected and the Stack push and pop are implemented. Results of the Alu operation are stored in the results register at the end of the clock cycle.

Following is a block diagram which shows the hardware functions associated with each of the instruction phases. Note that various functions have been distributed across the three phases of the instruction execution in order to minimize the combinatorial delays within any given phase.

# Cpu BLOCK-DIAGRAM



## INSTRUCTION SET

The micro-instructions are divided into six types according to the program control directive. The micro-instruction is further divided into sub-fields for which the definitions are dependent upon the instruction type. The six instruction types are listed below.

### INSTRUCTION-WORD FORMAT

| <u>TYPE</u> | <u>[55:49]</u> | <u>[48:47]</u> | <u>[46:42]</u> | <u>[41:33]</u> | <u>[32:24]</u> | <u>[23:16]</u> | <u>[15:00]</u> |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Jcc         | 0b0000000      | 0b00,          | AluOp,         | OpdASel,       | OpdBSEL,       | TstSel,        | Literal        |
| Jmp         | 0b0000000      | 0b01,          | AluOp,         | OpdASel,       | OpdBSEL,       | FlgSel,        | Literal        |
| Jsr         | 0b0000000      | 0b10,          | AluOp,         | OpdASel,       | OpdBSEL,       | FlgSel,        | Literal        |
| Rts         | 0b0000000      | 0b11,          | AluOp,         | OpdASel,       | OpdBSEL,       | 0hff,          | Literal        |
| Nxt         | 0b0000000      | 0b11,          | AluOp,         | OpdASel,       | OpdBSEL,       | FlgSel,        | Literal        |
| Map         | MapAddr        | 0bXX,          | 0bXXXXXX,      | 0bXXXXXXXXXX,  | 0bXXXXXXXXXX,  | 0hXX,          | 0hXXXX         |

All instructions include the Alu operation (**AluOp**), operand "A" select (**OpdASel**), operand "B" select (**OpdBSEL**) and **Literal** fields. Other field usage depends upon the instruction type.

The "jump condition code" (**Jcc**) instruction causes the program counter to be altered if the condition selected by the "test select" (**TstSel**) field is asserted. The new program counter (**Pc**) value is loaded from either the **Literal** field or the **AluOut** as described in the following section and the **Literal** field may be used as a source for the Alu or the ram address if the new **Pc** value is sourced by the Alu.

The "jump" (**Jmp**) instruction causes the program counter to be altered unconditionally. The new program counter (**Pc**) value is loaded from either the **Literal** field or the **AluOut** as described in the following section. The format allows instruction bits 23:16 to be used to perform a flag operation and the **Literal** field may be used as a source for the Alu or the ram address if the new **Pc** value is sourced by the Alu.

The "jump subroutine" (**Jsr**) instruction causes the program counter to be altered unconditionally. The new program counter (**Pc**) value is loaded from either the **Literal** field or the **AluOut** as described in the following section. The old program counter value is stored on the top location of the **Pc-Stack** which is implemented as a LIFO memory. The format allows instruction bits 23:16 to be used to perform a flag operation and the **Literal** field may be used as a source for the Alu or the ram address if the new **Pc** value is sourced by the Alu.

The "Nxt" (**Nxt**) instruction causes the program counter to increment. The format allows instruction bits 23:16 to be used to perform a flag operation and the **Literal** field may be used as a source for the Alu or the ram address.

The "return from subroutine" (**Rts**) instruction is a special form of the **Nxt** instruction in which the "flag operation" (**FlgSel**) field is set to a value of 0hff. The current **Pc** value is replaced with the last value stored in the stack. The **Literal** field may be used as a source for the Alu or the ram address.

The **Map** instruction is provided to allow replacement of instructions which have been stored in **ROM** and is implemented any time the "map enable" (**MapEn**) bit has been set and the content of the "map address" (**MapAddr**) field is non-zero. The instruction decoder forces a jump instruction with the **Alu** operation and destination fields set to pass the **MapAddr** field to the program control block.

The program control is determined by a combination of **PgmCtrl**, **DstOpd**, **FlgSel** and **TstSel**. The behavior of the program control is defined with the following "C-like" description.

## SEQUENCER BEHAVIOR

```
if (MapEn & (MapAddr != 0b0000000)) { //re-map instr
    Stackc = Stackc;
    StackB = StackB;
    StackA = StackA;
    InstrAddr = 0h8000 | Pc[2:0] | (MapAddr << 3);
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd);
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd);}

else if (PgmCtrl == Jcc) { //conditional jump
    Stackc = Stackc;
    StackB = StackB;
    StackA = StackA;
    InstrAddr = ~Tst@TstSel ? Pc:(AluDst==Pc) ? AluOut:Literal;
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd)
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd);}

else if (PgmCtrl == Jmp) { //jump
    Stackc = Stackc;
    StackB = StackB;
    StackA = StackA;
    InstrAddr = (AluDst == Pc) ? AluOut:Literal;
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd)
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd);}

else if (PgmCtrl == Jsrl) { //jump subroutine
    Stackc = StackB;
    StackB = StackA;
    StackA = Pc;
    InstrAddr = (AluDst == Pc) ? AluOut:Literal;
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd)
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd);}

else if (FlgSel == Rts) { //return subroutine
    InstrAddr = StackA;
    StackA = StackB;
    StackB = Stackc;
    Stackc = ErrVec;
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd)
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd);}

else { //continue
    InstrAddr = Pc;
    StackA = StackA;
    StackB = StackB;
    Stackc = Stackc;
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd)
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd);}
```

## ALU OPERATIONS

| AluOp   | OPERATION   |                   |
|---------|---|-------------------|
| 0b00000 | A = (A & ~(1 << B));<br>C = 0; V = (B >= 32) ? 1:0;                   | //bit clear       |
| 0b00001 | A = (A & B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;   | //logical and     |
| 0b00010 | A = (Literal & B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                   | //logical and     |
| 0b00011 | A = (~Literal & B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                  | //logical and not |
| 0b00100 | A = (A   (1 << B));<br>C = 0; V = (B >= 32) ? 1:0;                    | //bit set         |
| 0b00101 | A = (A   B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;   | //logical or      |
| 0b00110 | A = (Literal   B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                   | //logical or      |
| 0b00111 | A = (~Literal   B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                  | //logical or not  |
| 0b01000 | for (i=31; i>=0; i--) if B[i] continue; A=i;<br>C = 0; V = (B) ? 0:1; | //priority enc    |
| 0b01001 | A = (A ^ B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;   | //logical xor     |
| 0b01010 | A = ({Literal} ^ B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                 | //logical xor     |
| 0b01011 | A = ({~Literal} ^ B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                | //logical xor not |
| 0b01100 | A = B;<br>C = 0; V = 0;   | //move            |
| 0b01101 | A = B[31:24] ^ B[23:16] ^ B[15:08] ^ B[07:00];<br>C = 0; V = 0;       | //hash            |
| 0b01110 | A = {B[23:16], B[31:24], B[07:00], B[15:08]};<br>C = 0; V = 0;        | //swap bytes      |
| 0b01111 | A = {B[15:00], B[31:16]};<br>C = 0; V = 0;                            | //swap doublets   |

454707-6087902

| <u>AluOp</u> | <u>FUNCTION</u>  |                 |
|--------------|--|-----------------|
| 0b10000      | A = (A + B);<br>C = (A + B)[32]; V = 0;                      | //add B         |
| 0b10001      | A = (A + B + C);<br>C = (A + B + C)[32]; V = 0;              | //add B, carry  |
| 0b10010      | A = (Literal + B);<br>C = (Literal + B)[32]; V = 0;          | //add constant  |
| 0b10011      | A = (-Literal + B);<br>C = (-Literal + B)[32]; V = 0;        | //sub constant  |
| 0b10100      | A = (A - B);<br>C = (A - B)[32]; V = 0;                      | //sub B         |
| 0b10101      | A = (A - B - ~C);<br>C = (A - B - ~C)[32]; V = 0;            | //sub B, borrow |
| 0b10110      | A = (-A + B);<br>C = (-A + B)[32]; V = 0;                    | //sub A         |
| 0b10111      | A = (-A + B - ~C);<br>C = (-A + B - ~C)[32]; V = 0;          | //sub A, borrow |
| 0b11000      | A = (A << B);<br>C = A[31]; V = (B >= 32) ? 0:1;             | //shift left A  |
| 0b11001      | A = (B << Literal);<br>C = B[31]; V = (Literal >= 32) ? 0:1; | //shift left B  |
| 0b11010      | A = (B << 1);<br>C = B[31]; V = 0;                           | //shift left B  |
| 0b11011      | n = (A - B);<br>C = (A - B)[32]; V = 0;                      | //compare       |
| 0b11100      | A = (A >> B);<br>C = A[0]; V = (B >= 32) ? 1:0;              | //shift right A |
| 0b11101      | A = (B >> Literal);<br>C = A[0]; V = (Literal >= 32) ? 1:0;  | //shift right B |
| 0b11110      | A = (B >> 1);<br>C = A[0]; V = 0;                            | //shift right B |
| 0b11111      | n = (B - A);<br>C = (B - A)[32]; V = 0;                      | //compare       |

"644" FOR "608509"

OpdSel      SELECTED OPERANDs

|             |  |  |
|-------------|--|--|
| 0b0000aaaaa | <b>File</b>  | <b>File@</b> (OpdSel[4:0]   <b>FileBase</b> );<br>Allows paged access to any part of the register file.  |
| 0b0001aaaaa | <b>CpuReg</b>  | <b>File@</b> {2'b11, <b>CpuId</b> , OpdSel[4:0]};<br>Allows direct access to Cpu specific registers.   |
| 0b001XXXXXX | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future expansion.   |
| 0b0100000XX | <b>CpuStatus</b>   | 0b00000000000000BHD00000000000000CC<br>This is a read-only register providing information about the Cpu executing (OpdSel[1:0]) cycles after the current cycle. "CC" represents a value indicating the Cpu. Currently, only <b>CpuId</b> values of 0, 1 and 2 are returned. "H" represents the current state of <b>Hlt</b> , "D" indicates <b>DbgMd</b> and "B" indicates <b>BigMd</b> . Writing this register has no effect.  |
| 0b0100001XX | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future expansion.   |
| 0b0100010XX | <b>Pc</b>  | 0x0000AAAA<br>Writing to this address causes the program control logic to use <b>AluOut</b> as the new <b>Pc</b> value in the event of a <b>Jmp</b> , <b>Jcc</b> or <b>Jsr</b> instruction for the Cpu executing during the current cycle. If the current instruction is <b>Nxt</b> , <b>Map</b> , or <b>Rts</b> , the register write has no effect. Reading this register returns the value in <b>Pc</b> for the Cpu executing (OpdSel[1:0]) cycles after the current cycle.  |
| 0b0100011XX | <b>DbgAddr</b>   | 0xD000AAAA<br>Writing to this register alters the contents of the debug address register ( <b>DbgAddr</b> ) for the Cpu executing (OpdSel[1:0]) cycles after the current cycle. <b>DbgAddr</b> provides the fetch address for the control-store when <b>DbgMd</b> has been selected and the Cpu is executing. <b>DbgAddr</b> is also used as the control-store address when performing a <b>WrWcs@DbgAddr</b> or <b>RdWcs@DbgAddr</b> operation. "D" represents bit 31 of the register. It is a general purpose flag that is used for event indication during simulation. Reading this register returns a value of 0x00000000. |
| 0b01001XXXX | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future expansion.   |
| 0b010100000 | <b>RamAddr</b> {0b1CCC, 0x000, 0b1, AAAA}<br><b>RamAddr</b> = AluOut[15] ? AluOut : (AluOut   <b>RamBase</b> );<br><b>PrevCC</b> = AluOut[31] ? CCC : AluCC; |  |

A read/write register. When reading this register, the Alu condition codes from the previous instruction are returned together with **RamAddr**.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>    | <u>description</u>                  |
|------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 31         |                | Always 1.                           |
| 30         | <b>PrevC</b>   | Previous Alu Carry.                 |
| 29         | <b>PrevV</b>   | Previous Alu Overflow.              |
| 28         | <b>PrevZ</b>   | Previous Alu Zero.                  |
| 27:16      |                | Always 0.                           |
| 15         |                | Always 1.                           |
| 14:0       | <b>RamAddr</b> | Contents of last Sram address used. |

When writing this register, if alu\_out[31] is set, the previous condition codes will be overwritten with bits 30:28 of **AluOut**. If **AluOut**[15] is set, bits 14:0 will be written to the **RamAddr**. If **AluOut** [15] is not set, bits 14:0 will be ored with the contents of the **RamBase** and written to the **RamAddr**.

OpdSel      SELECTED OPERANDs

0b010100001    **AddrRegA**      0x0000AAAA  
**AddrRegA = AluOut;**

A read/write operand which loads **AddrRegA** used to provide the address for read and write operations.  
When **AddrRegA[15]** is set, the contents will be presented directly to the ram. When **AddrRegA[15]** is reset, the contents will first be ored with the contents of the **RamBase** register before presentation to the ram. Writing to this register takes priority over Literal loads using **FlgOp**. Reading this register returns the current value of the register.

0b010100010    **AddrRegB**      0x0000AAAA  
**AddrRegB = AluOut;**

A read/write operand which loads **AddrRegB** used to provide the address for read and write operations.  
When **AddrRegB[15]** is set, the contents will be presented directly to the ram. When **AddrRegB[15]** is reset, the contents will first be ored with the contents of the **RamBase** register before presentation to the ram. Writing to this register takes priority over Literal loads using **FlgOp**. Reading this register returns the current value of the register.

0b010100011    **AddrRegAb**      0x0000AAAA  
**AddrRegA = AluOut; AddrRegB = AluOut;**

A destination only operand which loads **AddrRegB** and **AddrRegA** used to provide the address for read and write operations Writing to this register takes priority over Literal loads using **FlgOp**. Reading this register returns the value 0x00000000.

0b010100100    **RamBase**        0x0000AAAA  
**RamBase = AluOut;**

A read/write register which provides the base address for ram read and write cycles. When **RamAddr[15]** is set, the contents will not be used. When **RamAddr[15]** is reset, the contents will first be ored with the contents of the **RamBase** register before presentation to the ram. Reading this register returns the value for the current Cpu.

0b010100101    **FileBase**        0b00000000000000000000000000000000AAAAA  
**FileBase = AluOut;**  
**FileAddr = OpdSel[8] ? OpdSel:(OpdSel + FileBase);**

A read/write register which provides the base address for file read and write cycles. When **OpdSel[8]** is set, the contents will not be used and **OpdSel** will be presented directly to the address lines of the file. When **OpdSel[8]** is reset, the contents will first be ored with the contents of the **FileBase** register before presentation to the file. Reading this register returns the value for the current Cpu.

0b010100110    **InstrRegL**       0xIIIIIIII

This is a read-only register which returns the contents of **InstrReg[31:0]**. Writing to this register has no effect.

0b010100111    **InstrRegH**       0x00IIIIII

This is a read-only register which returns the contents of **InstrReg[55:32]**. Writing to this register has no effect.

20190910 10:45:00



**OpdSel**      **SELECTED OPERANDs**

|             |   |  |
|-------------|---|--|
| 0b010101000 | <b>Minus1</b>   | 0xffffffff<br>This is a read-only register which supplies a value 0xffffffff. Writing to this register has no effect.              |
| 0b010101001 | <b>FreeTime</b>   | A free-running timer with a resolution of 1.00 microseconds and a maximum count of 71 minutes. This timer is cleared during reset. |
| 0b010101010 | <b>LiteralL</b>   | <b>Instr[15:0]</b><br>A read-only register. Writing to this register has no effect   |
| 0b010101011 | <b>LiteralH</b>   | <b>Instr[15:0] &lt;&lt; 16;</b><br>A read-only register. Writing to this register has no effect                                    |
| 0b010101100 | <b>MacData</b> - Writing to this address loads the <b>AluOut</b> data into the <b>MacData</b> register for use during Mac operations. The Mac operation, resulting from writing to the <b>MacOp</b> register, determines the definition of the <b>MacData</b> register contents as follows. |  |

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>MacOp</b>  | <b>MacData definition</b>   |
| <b>Mstop</b>  | 0bXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX<br>MacData is not used for the StopM operation.  |
| <b>WrMcfg</b> | <b>hrstl, rsvd, rsvd, crcen, fulld, hrstl, hugen, nopre, paden, prtyl, xdl10, ipgr1[6:0], ipgr2[6:0], ipgt[6:0].</b><br>Loads the MacCfg register with the contents of the MacData register. Refer to LSI Logic's <i>Ethernet-110 Core Technical Manual</i> for detailed definitions of these bits. |
| <b>WrMrng</b> | 0bXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXSSSSSSSSSS<br>Loads seed[10:0] into the Mac's random number generator.  |
| <b>RdPhy</b>  | 0bXXXXXXXXRRRXXXXPPPPXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX<br>Reads register[R] of phy[P].   |
| <b>WrPhy</b>  | 0bXXXXXXXXRRRXXXXPPPPDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD<br>Writes register[R] of phy[P] with MacData[15:0].   |

Reading this register returns **prsd[15:0]** of **Mac0** which contains phy status data returned to the Mac at the completion of a **RdPhy** command. This data is invalid while **MacBsy** is asserted as a result of a **RdPhy** command. Refer to the appropriate phy technical manual for a definition of the phy register contents.

**OpdSel**      **SELECTED OPERANDS**

0b010101101      **MacOp** - A write only register. Writing to this address loads the **MacSel** register and starts execution of the specified operation as follows.

| <u>AluOut</u> | <u>description</u>   |
|---------------|--|
| 0xXXXXXX0XM   | <b>Mstop</b> - Halts execution of a <b>MacOp</b> for <b>Mac[M]</b> . The user must wait for <b>MacBsy</b> to be deasserted before issuing another command or changing the contents of <b>MacData</b> .   |
| 0xXXXXXX1XM   | <b>WrMcfg</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData</b> to the <b>MacCfg</b> register of <b>Mac[M]</b> . The user must wait for <b>MacBsy</b> to be deasserted before issuing another command or changing the contents of <b>MacData</b> .                           |
| 0xXXXXXX2XM   | <b>WrMrng</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData</b> to the <b>seed</b> register of <b>Mac[M]</b> . The user must wait for <b>MacBsy</b> to be deasserted before issuing another command or changing the contents of <b>MacData</b> .                             |
| 0xXXXXXX3XM   | <b>RdPhy</b> - Reads the contents of reg[R] for phy[P] on the MII management bus of <b>Mac[M]</b> . The contents may be read from <b>MacData</b> after <b>MacBsy</b> has been de-asserted.   |
| 0xXXXXXX4XM   | <b>WrPhy</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData</b> [15:0] to the reg[R] of phy[P] on the MII management bus of <b>Mac[M]</b> . The user must wait for <b>MacBsy</b> to be deasserted before issuing another command or changing the contents of <b>MacData</b> . |
| 0xXXXXXX8XM   | <b>WrAddrAL</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData</b> [15:0] to <b>MacAddrA</b> [15:0] for <b>Mac[M]</b> .   |
| 0xXXXXXX9XM   | <b>WrAddrAH</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData</b> [11:0] to <b>MacAddrA</b> [47:16] for <b>Mac[M]</b> .  |
| 0xXXXXXXaXM   | <b>WrAddrBL</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData</b> [15:0] to <b>MacAddrB</b> [15:0] for <b>Mac[M]</b> .   |
| 0xXXXXXXbXM   | <b>WrAddrBH</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData</b> [11:0] to <b>MacAddrB</b> [47:16] for <b>Mac[M]</b> .  |

0b010101110      **ChCmd**      A write-only register.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>    | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|----------------|---|
| 31:11      | reserved       | Data written to these bits is ignored.  |
| 10:8       | <b>command</b> | 0 - Stops execution of the current operation and clears the corresponding event flag.<br><br>1 - Transfer data from ExtMem to ExtMem.<br>2 - Transfer data from Pci to ExtMem.<br>3 - Transfer data from ExtMem to Pci.<br>4 - Transfer data from Sram to ExtMem.<br>5 - Transfer data from ExtMem to Sram.<br>6 - Transfer data from Pci to Sram.<br>7 - Transfer data from Sram to Pci. |
| 07:05      | reserved       | Data written to these bits is ignored.  |
| 04:00      | <b>ChId</b>    | Provides the channel number for the channel command.  |

0b010101110      **ChEvtnt**      A read-only register.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-------------|---|
| 31:00      | <b>ChDn</b> | Each bit represents the done flag for the respective dma channel. These bits are set by a dma sequencer upon completion of the channel command. Cleared when the processor writes 0 to the corresponding <b>ChCmd</b> register. |

0b010101111      **GenEvtnt**      A read-only register.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>       | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|-------------------|--|
| 31         | <b>PciRdEvtnt</b> | Indicates that a PCI initiator is attempting to read a $\mu$ proc. register. |
| 30         | <b>PciWrEvtnt</b> | Indicates that a PCI initiator has posted a write to a $\mu$ proc. register. |
| 29         | <b>TimeEvtnt</b>  | An event which occurs once every 2.00 milliseconds.                          |
| 28:00      | reserved          | Reserved for future use.   |

254707 60875009

0b010110000 **QCtrl** A write-only register used to select and manipulate a Q.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-------------|---|
| 31:11      | reserved    | Data written to these bits are ignored.   |
| 10:8       | <b>Qsz</b>  | Used only during <b>InitQ</b> operations to specify the size of the <b>QBdy</b> in Dram.<br>7 - Queue depth is 32K entries (128KB).<br>6 - Queue depth is 16K entries (64KB).<br>5 - Queue depth is 8K entries (32KB).<br>4 - Queue depth is 4K entries (16KB).<br>3 - Queue depth is 2K entries (8KB).<br>2 - Queue depth is 1K entries (4KB).<br>1 - Queue depth is 512 entries (2KB).<br>0 - Queue depth is 256 entries (1KB).   |
| 7:5        | <b>QOp</b>  | Specifies the queue operation to perform.<br>7 - <b>DbIQ</b> Disables all queues.<br>6 - <b>EnQ</b> Enables all queues.<br>5 - <b>RdBdy</b> Increments the <b>QBdyRdPtr</b> and increments the <b>QTIWrPtr</b> .<br>4 - <b>WrBdy</b> Decrements the <b>QBdyWrPtr</b> and increments the <b>QHdRdPtr</b> .<br>3 - <b>RdQ</b> Returns a queue entry in register <b>QData</b> .<br>2 - <b>rsvd</b> Reserved. Not to be used.<br>1 - <b>InitQ</b> Set the queue status to empty and initializes <b>Qsz</b> .<br>0 - <b>SelQ</b> Selects the <b>QId</b> to be utilized during writes to <b>QData</b> . |
| 4:0        | <b>QId</b>  | Specifies the queue on which to perform all operations except <b>DbIQ</b> or <b>EnQ</b> .   |

0b010110001 **QData** A read/write register. Writing this register will result in the data being pushed on to the selected queue. Reading this register fetches queue data popped off during the previous **RdQ** operation.

0b010110010 **reserved** Reserved for future expansion.

0b010110011 **XcvCtrl** A write-only register used to enable and disable Mac transmit and receive sub-channels.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>   | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|---------------|---|
| 31:09      | reserved      | Data written to these bits are ignored.   |
| 8          | <b>enable</b> | When set, indicates to the Mac transmit or receive sequencer that the subchannel contains a transmit or receive descriptor. |
| 07:05      | reserved      | Data written to these bits is ignored.  |
| 04         | <b>RcvCh</b>  | Selects a Mac receive subchannel when set. Selects a Mac transmit subchannel when cleared.                                  |
| 03         | reserved      | Data written to this bit are ignored.   |
| 02         | <b>SubCh</b>  | Selects subchannel B when set or A when reset.  |
| 01:00      | <b>MacId</b>  | Provides the Mac number for the subchannel enable bit.  |

0b010110100 **Lru** 0x0000000A

A read/write operand indicating which of the 16 entries is least recently used. When Reading This register the least recently used entry is returned, after which it is automatically made the most recently used entry. This register should only be read in conjunction with a 'Move' operation of the ALU, else the results are unpredictable. Writing to this register forces the addressed entry to become the least recently used entry.

0b010110101 **Mru** 0x0000000A

A write only operand forcing the addressed entry to become the most recently used entry.

"64T" 64T 9009

|             |                  |   |
|-------------|------------------|---|
| 0b010111000 | <b>QInRdy</b>    | A read-only register comprising <b>QHd</b> not full flags for each of the 32 queues.  |
| 0b010111001 | <b>QOutRdy</b>   | A read-only register comprising <b>QTl</b> not empty flags for each of the 32 queues. |
| 0b010111010 | <b>QEmpty</b>    | A read-only register comprising <b>QEmpty</b> flags for each of the 32 queues.        |
| 0b010111011 | <b>QFull</b>     | A read-only register comprising <b>QFull</b> flags for each of the 32 queues.         |
| 0b0101111XX | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future expansion.  |
| 0b0110XXXXX | <b>Constants</b> | {0b000, <b>OpdSel</b> [4:0]}  |
| 0b01110XXXX | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future expansion.  |

454107 60875009

OpdSel      SELECTED OPERANDs

0b01111XXXX Sram OPERATIONS

|                    |                                    |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| <u>OpdSel[3]</u>   | <u>PostAddrOp</u>                  |
| 0                  | nop                                |
| 1                  | RamAddr = RamAddr + (OpdSel[1:0]); |
| <u>OpdSel[2]</u>   | <u>transpose_Ctrl</u>              |
| 0                  | don't transpose                    |
| 1                  | transpose bytes                    |
| <u>OpdSel[1:0]</u> | <u>RamOpdSz</u>                    |
| 0                  | quadlet                            |
| 1                  | triplet                            |
| 2                  | doublet                            |
| 3                  | byte                               |

RAM READ ATTRIBUTES                      SOURCE OPERAND

| endian      | trans-      | byte        | Sram        |             |             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <u>mode</u> | <u>pose</u> | <u>offs</u> | <u>data</u> | <u>sz=Q</u> | <u>sz=T</u> | <u>sz=D</u> | <u>sz=B</u> |
| little      | 0           | 0           | abcd        | abcd        | 0bcd        | 00cd        | 000d        |
| little      | 0           | 1           | abcX        | trap        | 0abc        | 00bc        | 000c        |
| little      | 0           | 2           | abXX        | trap        | trap        | 00ab        | 000b        |
| little      | 0           | 3           | aXXX        | trap        | trap        | trap        | 000a        |
| little      | 1           | 0           | abcd        | dcba        | 0dcb        | 00dc        | 000d        |
| little      | 1           | 1           | abcX        | trap        | 0cba        | 00cb        | 000c        |
| little      | 1           | 2           | abXX        | trap        | trap        | 00ba        | 000b        |
| little      | 1           | 3           | aXXX        | trap        | trap        | trap        | 000a        |
| BIG         | 0           | 0           | abcd        | abcd        | 0abc        | 00ab        | 000a        |
| BIG         | 0           | 1           | Xbcd        | trap        | 0bcd        | 00bc        | 000b        |
| BIG         | 0           | 2           | XXcd        | trap        | trap        | 00cd        | 000c        |
| BIG         | 0           | 3           | XXXd        | trap        | trap        | trap        | 000d        |
| BIG         | 1           | 0           | abcd        | dcba        | 0cba        | 00ba        | 000a        |
| BIG         | 1           | 1           | Xbcd        | trap        | 0dcb        | 00cb        | 000b        |
| BIG         | 1           | 2           | XXcd        | trap        | trap        | 00dc        | 000c        |
| BIG         | 1           | 3           | XXXd        | trap        | trap        | trap        | 000d        |

RAM WRITE ATTRIBUTES                      SOURCE OPERAND

| endian      | trans-      | Opd         | Alu        |             |             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <u>mode</u> | <u>pose</u> | <u>size</u> | <u>out</u> | <u>OF=0</u> | <u>OF=1</u> | <u>OF=2</u> | <u>OF=3</u> |
| little      | 0           | Q           | abcd       | abcd        | trap        | trap        | trap        |
| little      | 0           | T           | Xbcd       | -bcd        | bcd-        | trap        | trap        |
| little      | 0           | D           | XXcd       | --cd        | -cd-        | cd--        | trap        |
| little      | 0           | B           | XXXd       | ---d        | --d-        | -d--        | d---        |
| little      | 1           | Q           | abcd       | dcba        | trap        | trap        | trap        |
| little      | 1           | T           | Xbcd       | -dcb        | dcb-        | trap        | trap        |
| little      | 1           | D           | XXcd       | --dc        | -dc-        | dc--        | trap        |
| little      | 1           | B           | XXXd       | ---d        | --d-        | -d--        | d---        |
| big         | 0           | Q           | abcd       | abcd        | trap        | trap        | trap        |
| big         | 0           | T           | Xbcd       | bcd-        | -bcd        | trap        | trap        |
| big         | 0           | D           | XXcd       | cd--        | -cd-        | --cd        | trap        |
| big         | 0           | B           | XXXd       | d---        | -d--        | --d-        | ---         |
| big         | 1           | Q           | abcd       | dcba        | trap        | trap        | trap        |
| big         | 1           | T           | Xbcd       | dcb-        | -dcb        | trap        | trap        |
| big         | 1           | D           | XXcd       | dc--        | -dc-        | --dc        | trap        |
| big         | 1           | B           | XXXd       | d---        | -d--        | --d-        | ---         |

0b1aaaaaaaa **File** **File@OpdSel[8:0];**  
 Allows direct, non-paged, access to the top half of the register file.

L64T4 "BOUTS

"4049" 6051509

| <u>TstSel</u> | <u>SELECTED TEST</u>  |   |
|---------------|---|---|
| 0bX00XXXXX    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ AluOut[TstSel[4:0]]                         | //Alu bit   |
| 0bX0100000    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ C   | //carry   |
| 0bX0100001    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ V   | //error   |
| 0bX0100010    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ Z   | //zero  |
| 0bX0100011    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ (Z   ~C)                                    | //less or equal   |
| 0bX0100100    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ PrevC                                       | //previous carry  |
| 0bX0100101    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ PrevV                                       | //previous error  |
| 0bX0100110    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ PrevZ                                       | //previous zero   |
| 0bX0100111    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ (PrevZ & Z)                                 | //64b zero  |
| 0bX0101000    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ QOpDn                                       | //queue op okay   |
| 0bX0101001    | Tst = reserved  |   |
| 0bX010101X    | Tst = reserved  |   |
| 0bX01011XX    | Tst = reserved  |   |
| 0bX0110XXX    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ Lock[TstSel[2:0]]<br>Lock(TstSel[2:0]) = 1; | //tests the current value of<br>//the Lock then set it.                               |
| 0bX0111XXX    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ Lock[TstSel[2:0]]                           | //tests the value of Lock.  |
| 0bX01XXXXX    | Tst = reserved  |   |
| 0bX1XXXXXX    | Tst = reserved  |   |
| <u>FlgSel</u> | <u>FLAG OPERATION</u>   |   |
| 0b00000000    | No operation.   |   |
| 0b00000001    | <b>SelfRst</b>  | Forces a self reset for the entire chip excluding the PCI configuration registers     |
| 0b00000010    | <b>SelBigEnd</b>  | Selects big-endian mode for ram accesses for the current Cpu.                         |
| 0b00000011    | <b>SelLitEnd</b>  | Selects little-endian mode for ram accesses for the current Cpu.                      |
| 0b00000100    | <b>DblMap</b>   | Disable instruction re-mapping for the current Cpu.                                   |
| 0b00000101    | <b>EnbMap</b>   | Enable instruction re-mapping for the current Cpu.                                    |
| 0b0000011X    | reserved  |   |
| 0b00001XXX    | reserved  |   |
| 0b00010XXX    | <b>ClrLck</b>   | Lock[FlgSel[2:0]] = 0;<br>Clears the semaphore register bit for the current Cpu only. |
| 0b00011XXX    | reserved  |   |

FlgSelFLAG OPERATION

0b0010XXXX

**AddrOp**FlgSel[3:2]AddrSelect

|   |                        |            |                         |
|---|------------------------|------------|-------------------------|
| 0 | RamAddr = Literal[15]  | ? Literal  | : (Literal   RamBase);  |
| 1 | RamAddr = AddrRegA[15] | ? AddrRegA | : (AddrRegA   RamBase); |
| 2 | RamAddr = AddrRegB[15] | ? AddrRegB | : (AddrRegB   RamBase); |
| 3 | if (OpdA == RamAddr)   |            |                         |
|   | RamAddr = AluOut[15]   | ? AluOut   | : (AluOut   RamBase);   |
|   | else if (OpdA == ram)  |            |                         |
|   | RamAddr = AddrRegB[15] | ? AddrRegB | : (AddrRegB   RamBase); |
|   | else                   |            |                         |
|   | RamAddr = AddrRegA[15] | ? AddrRegA | : (AddrRegA   RamBase); |

FlgSel[1:0]addr reg load

|   |                     |                     |  |
|---|---------------------|---------------------|--|
| 0 | nop                 |                     |  |
| 1 | AddrRegA = Literal; |                     |  |
| 2 | AddrRegB = Literal; |                     |  |
| 3 | AddrRegA = Literal; | AddrRegB = Literal; |  |

**note:** When specifying the same register for both the load and select fields, the current value of the register, before it is loaded with the new value, will be used for the ram address.

0b0011XXXX

reserved

0b01000000

**WrWcsL@Dbg**Causes the bits [31:0] of the control-store at address **DbgAddr** to be written with the current **AluOut** data.

0b01000001

**WrWcsH@Dbg**Causes the bits [63:32] of the control-store at address **DbgAddr** to be written with the current **AluOut** data then increments **DbgAddr**.

0b01000010

**RdWcsL@Dbg**Causes the bits [31:0] of the control-store at address **DbgAddr** to be moved to file address 0x1ff.

0b01000011

**RdWcsH@Dbg**Causes the bits [63:32] of the control-store at address **DbgAddr** to be moved to file address 0x1ff then increments **DbgAddr**.

0b01000100

reserved

0b010001XX

**Step**Allows the Cpu (**FlgSel[1:0]**) cycles after the current cycle to execute a single instruction. There is no effect if the Cpu is not halted. An offset of 0 is not allowed.

0b010010XX

**PcMd**Selects the **Pc** as the address source for the control-store during instruction fetches for the Cpu (**FlgSel[1:0]**) cycles after the current cycle.

0b010011XX

**DbgMd**Selects the **DbgAddr** address register as the address source for the control-store during instruction fetches for the Cpu (**FlgSel[1:0]**) cycles after the current cycle.

0b010100XX

**Hlt**Halts the Cpu (**FlgSel[1:0]**) cycles after the current cycle.

0b010101XX

**Run**Clears Halt for the Cpu (**FlgSel[1:0]**) cycles after the current cycle.

0b01011XXX

reserved

0b011XXXXX

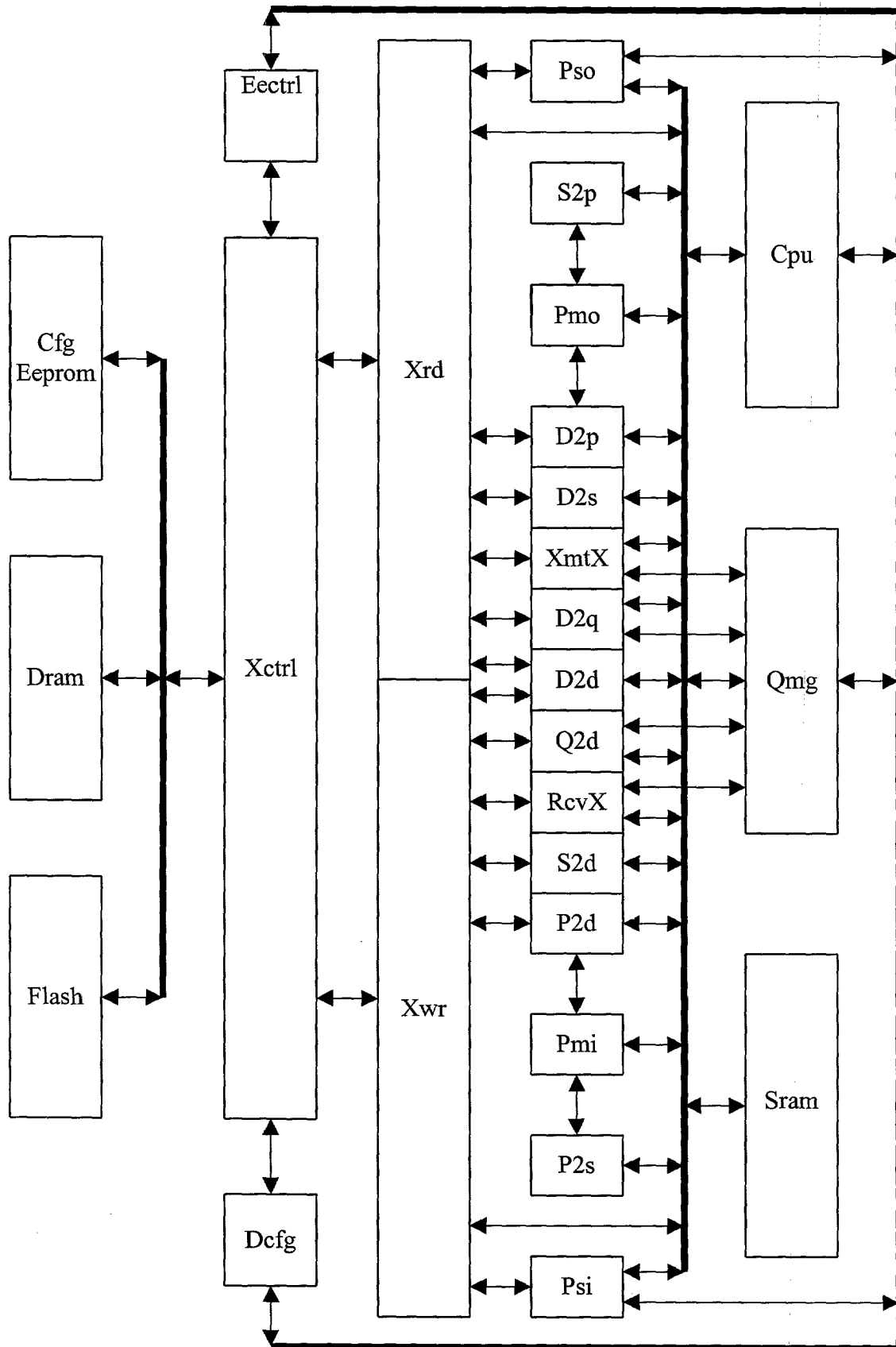
reserved

0b1XXXXXXX

reserved

464707-603T9009

DATA FLOW



464707-6081909

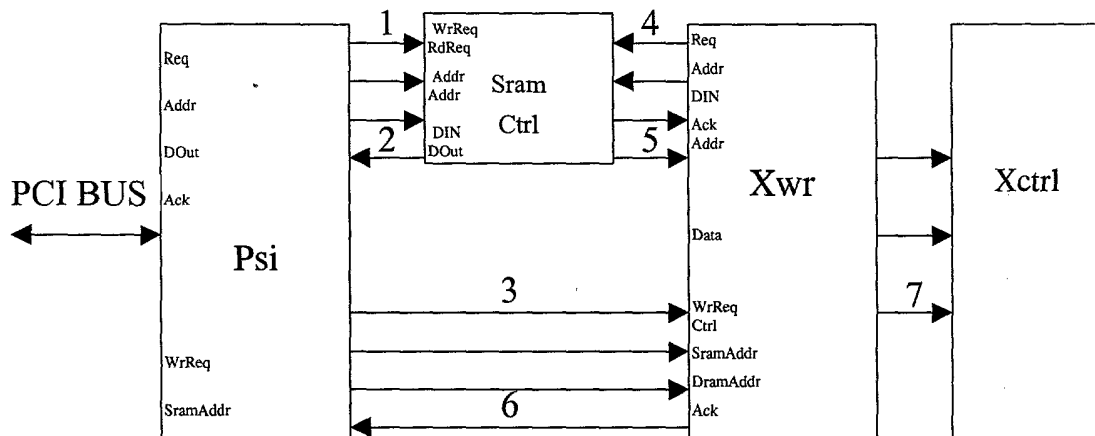


## SRAM CONTROL SEQUENCER (SramCtrl)

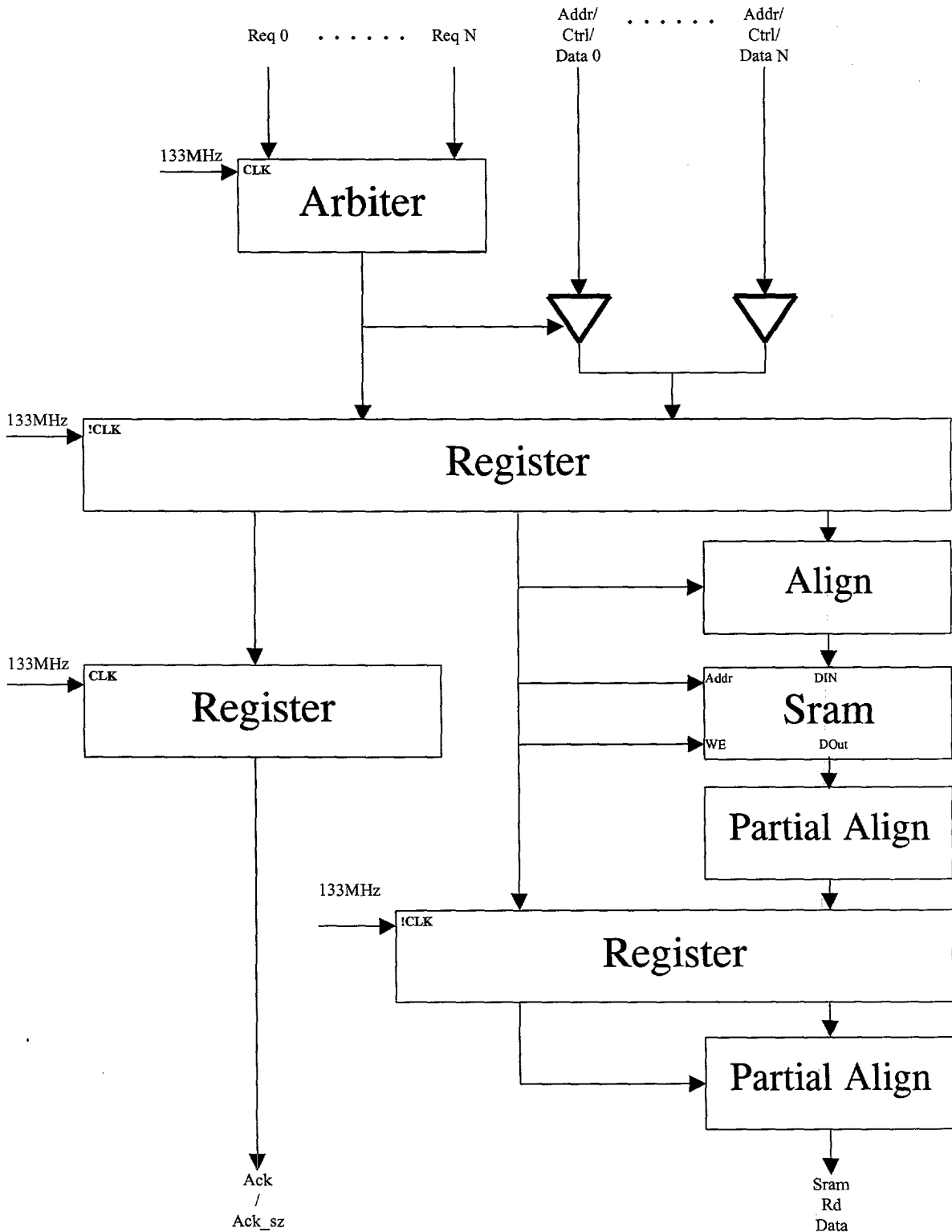
Sram is the nexus for data movement within the INIC. A hierarchy of sequencers, working in concert, accomplish the movement of data between dram, Sram, Cpu, ethernet and the Pci bus. Slave sequencers, provided with stimulus from master sequencers, request data movement operations by way of the Sram, Pci bus, Dram and Flash. The slave sequencers prioritize, service and acknowledge the requests

The preceding block diagram shows all of the master and slave sequencers of the INIC product. Request information such as r/w, address, size, endian and alignment are represented by each request line. Acknowledge information to master sequencers include only the size of the transfer being acknowledged.

The following block diagram illustrates how data movement is accomplished for a Pci slave write to Dram. Note that the **Psi** (Pci slave in) module functions as both a master sequencer. **Psi** sends a write request to the **SramCtrl** module. **Psi** requests **Xwr** to move data from Sram to dram. **Xwr** subsequently sends a read request to the **SramCtrl** module then writes the data to the dram via the **Xctrl** module. As each piece of data is moved from the Sram to **Xwr**, **Xwr** sends an acknowledge to the **Psi** module.



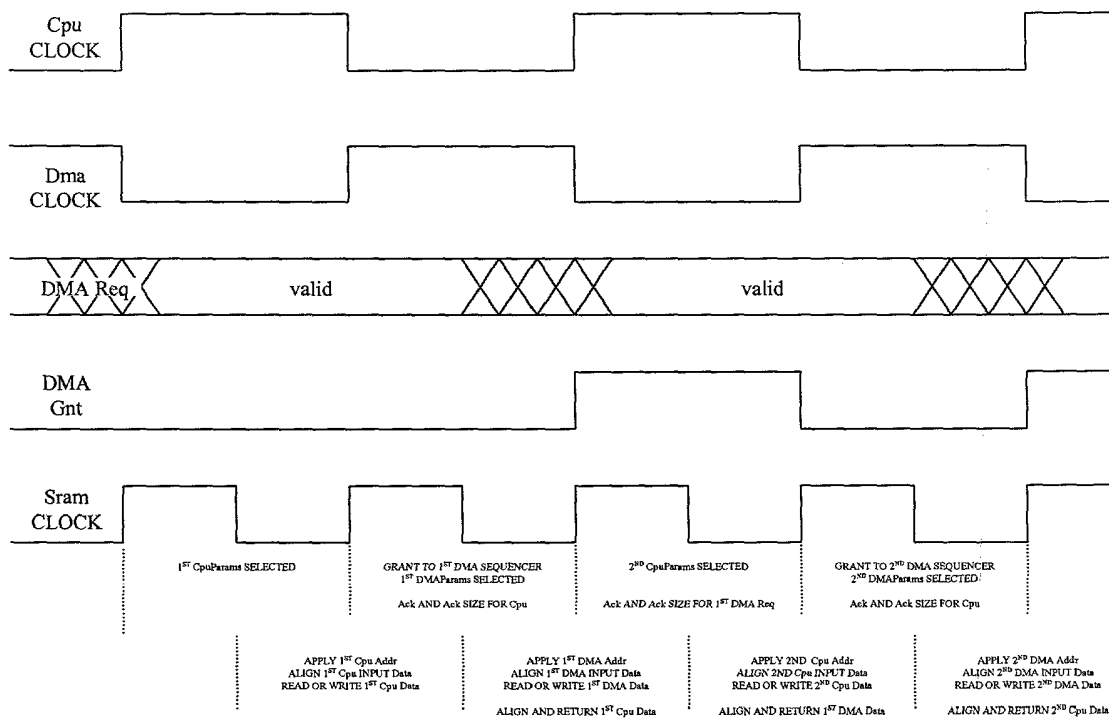
# SRAM CONTROL SEQUENCER (SramCtrl)



The Sram control sequencer services requests to store to, or retrieve data from an Sram organized as 1024 locations by 128 bits (16KB). The sequencer operates at a frequency of 133MHz, allowing both a Cpu access and a dma access to occur during a standard 66MHz Cpu cycle. One 133MHz cycle is reserved for Cpu accesses during each 66MHz cycle while the remaining 133MHz cycle is reserved for dma accesses on a prioritized basis.

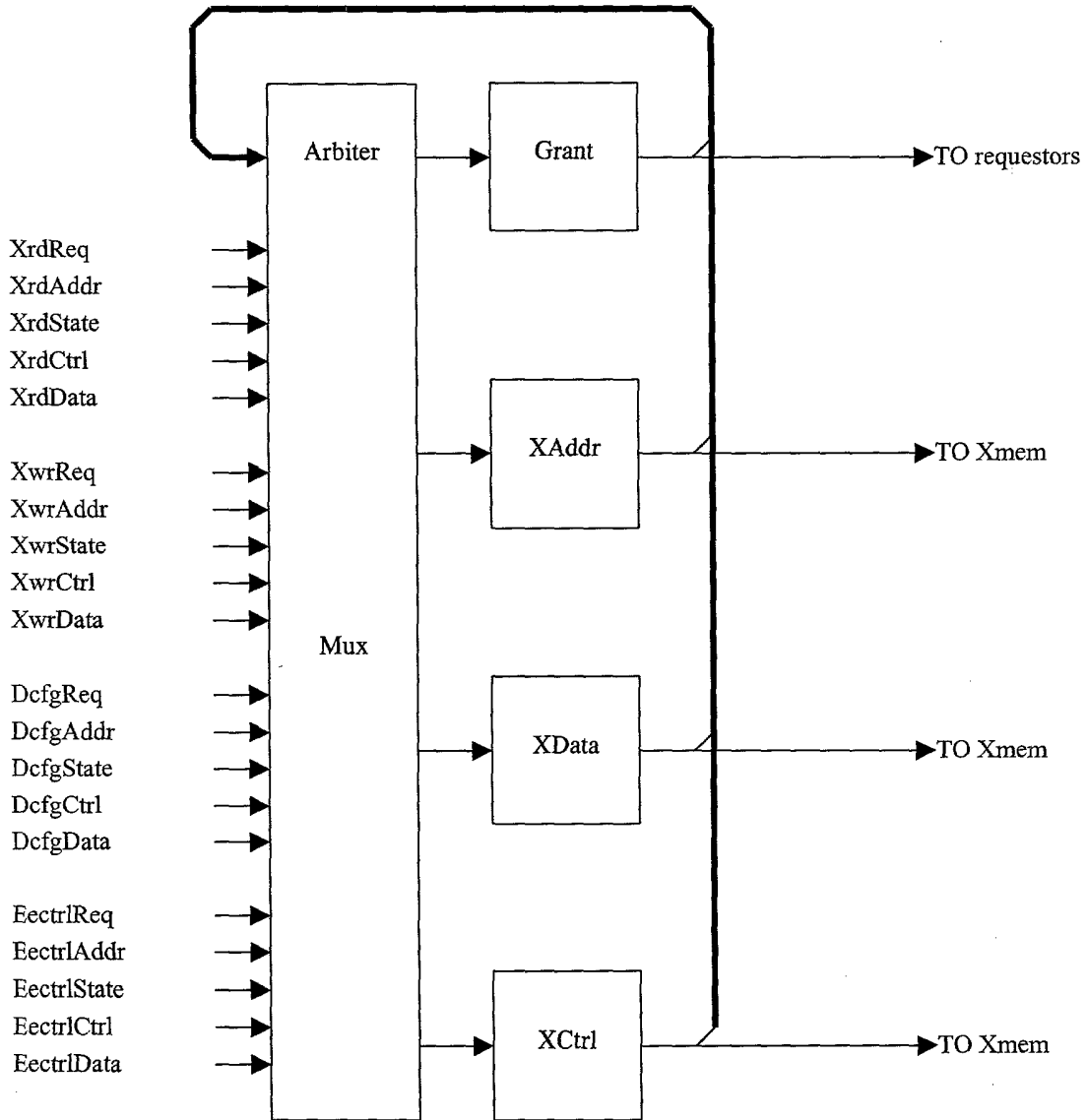
The preceding block diagram shows the major functions of the Sram control sequencer. A slave sequencer begins by asserting a request along with r/w, ram address, endian, data path size, data path alignment and request size. **SramCtrl** prioritizes the requests. The request parameters are then selected by a multiplexer which feeds the parameters to the Sram via a register. The requestor provides the Sram address which when coupled with the other parameters controls the input and output alignment. Sram outputs are fed to the output aligner via a register. Requests are acknowledged in parallel with the returned data.

Following is a timing diagram depicting two ram accesses during a single 66MHz clock cycle.



## EXTERNAL MEMORY CONTROL (Xctrl)

Xctrl provides the facility whereby Xwr, Xrd, Dcfg and Eectrl access external Flash and Dram. Xctrl includes an arbiter, i/o registers, data multiplexers, address multiplexers and control multiplexers. Ownership of the external memory interface is requested by each block and granted to each of the requesters by the arbiter function. Once ownership has been granted the multiplexers select the address, data and control signals from owner, allowing access to external memory.



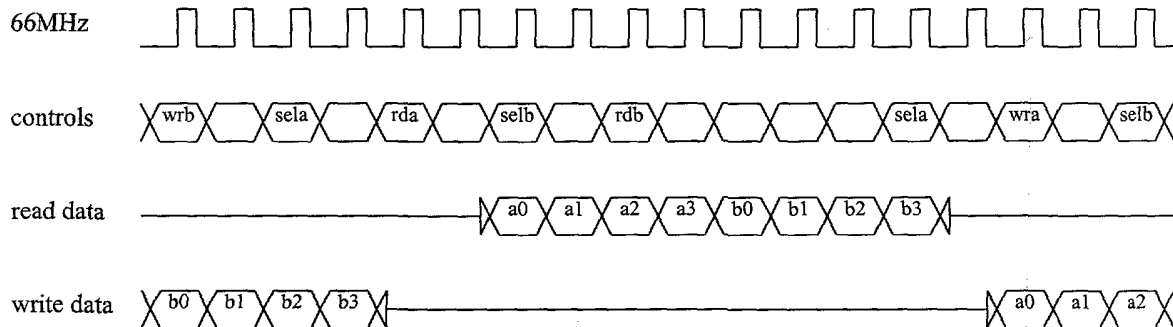
## EXTERNAL MEMORY READ SEQUENCER (Xrd)

The **Xrd** sequencer acts only as a slave sequencer. Servicing requests issued by master sequencers, the **Xrd** sequencer moves data from external sdram or flash to the **Sram**, via the **Xctrl** module, in blocks of 32 bytes or less. The nature of the sdram requires fixed burst sizes for each of its internal banks with ras precharge intervals between each access. By selecting a burst size of 32 bytes for sdram reads and interleaving bank accesses on a 16 byte boundary, we can ensure that the ras precharge interval for the first bank is satisfied before burst completion for the second bank, allowing us to re-instruct the first bank and continue with uninterrupted dram access. Sdrams require a consistent burst size be utilized each and every time the sdram is accessed. For this reason, if an sdram access does not begin or end on a 32 byte boundary, sdram bandwidth will be reduced due to less than 32 bytes of data being transferred during the burst cycle.

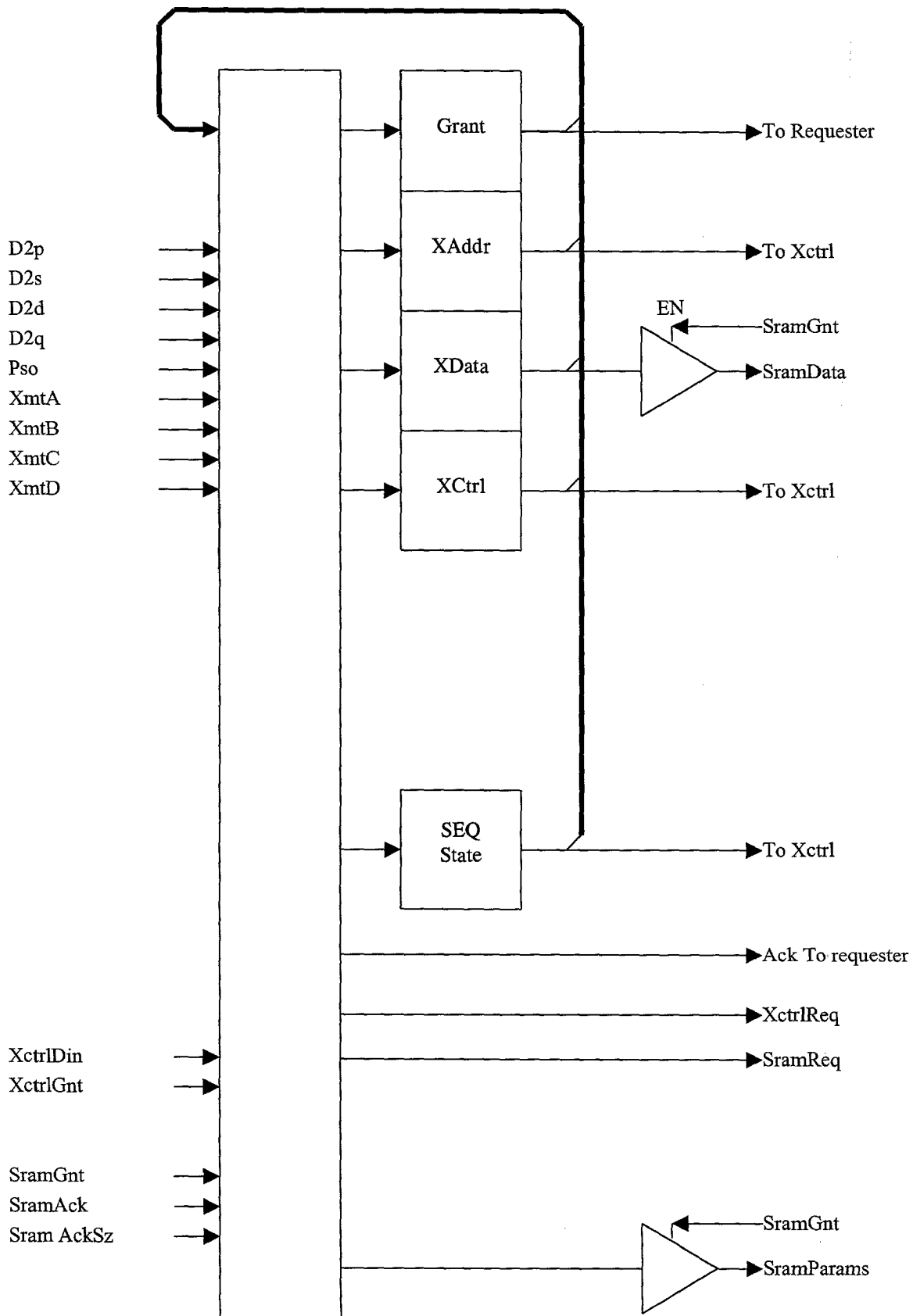
The following block diagram depicts the major functional blocks of the **Xrd** sequencer. The first step in servicing a request to move data from sdram to Sram is the prioritization of the master sequencer requests. Next the **Xrd** sequencer takes a snapshot of the dram read address and applies configuration information to determine the correct bank, row and column address to apply. Once sufficient data has been read, the **Xrd** sequencer issues a write request to the **SramCtrl** sequencer which in turn sends an acknowledge to the **Xrd** sequencer. The **Xrd** sequencer passes the acknowledge along to the level two master with a size code indicating how much data was written during the Sram cycle allowing the update of pointers and counters. The dram read and Sram write cycles repeat until the original burst request has been completed at which point the **Xrd** sequencer prioritizes any remaining requests in preparation for the next burst cycle.

Contiguous dram burst cycles are not guaranteed to the **Xrd** sequencer as an algorithm is implemented which ensures highest priority to refresh cycles followed by flash accesses, dram writes then dram reads.

Following is a timing diagram illustrating how data is read from sdram. The dram has been configured for a burst of four with a latency of two clock cycles. Bank A is first selected/activated followed by a read command two clock cycles later. The bank select/activate for bank B is next issued as read data begins returning two clocks after the read command was issued to bank A. Two clock cycles before we need to receive data from bank B we issue the read command. Once all 16 bytes have been received from bank A we begin receiving data from bank B.



# EXTERNAL MEMORY READ SEQUENCER (Xrd)



454707-6081909

60874707 60873009

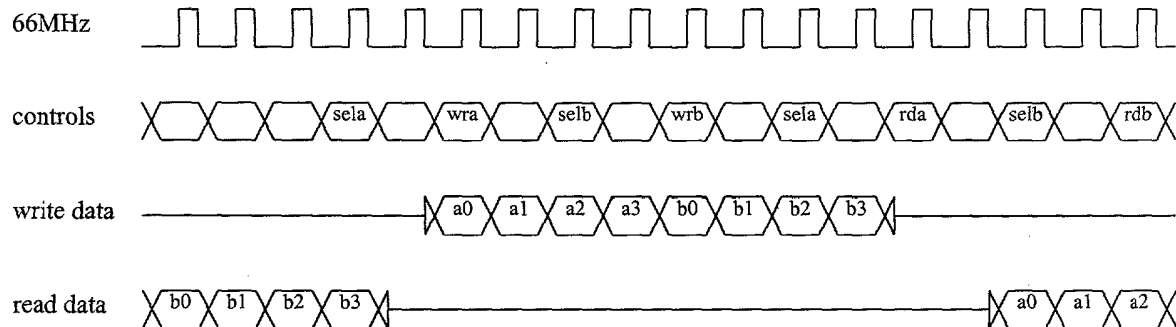
## EXTERNAL MEMORY WRITE SEQUENCER (Xwr)

The Xwr sequencer is a slave sequencer. Servicing requests issued by master sequencers, the Xwr sequencer moves data from Sram to the external sdram or flash, via the Xctrl module, in blocks of 32 bytes or less while accumulating a checksum of the data moved. The nature of the sdram requires fixed burst sizes for each of its internal banks with ras precharge intervals between each access. By selecting a burst size of 32 bytes for sdram writes and interleaving bank accesses on a 16 byte boundary, we can ensure that the ras precharge interval for the first bank is satisfied before burst completion for the second bank, allowing us to re-instruct the first bank and continue with uninterrupted dram access. Sdrams require a consistent burst size be utilized each and every time the sdram is accessed. For this reason, if an sdram access does not begin or end on a 32 byte boundary, sdram bandwidth will be reduced due to less than 32 bytes of data being transferred during the burst cycle.

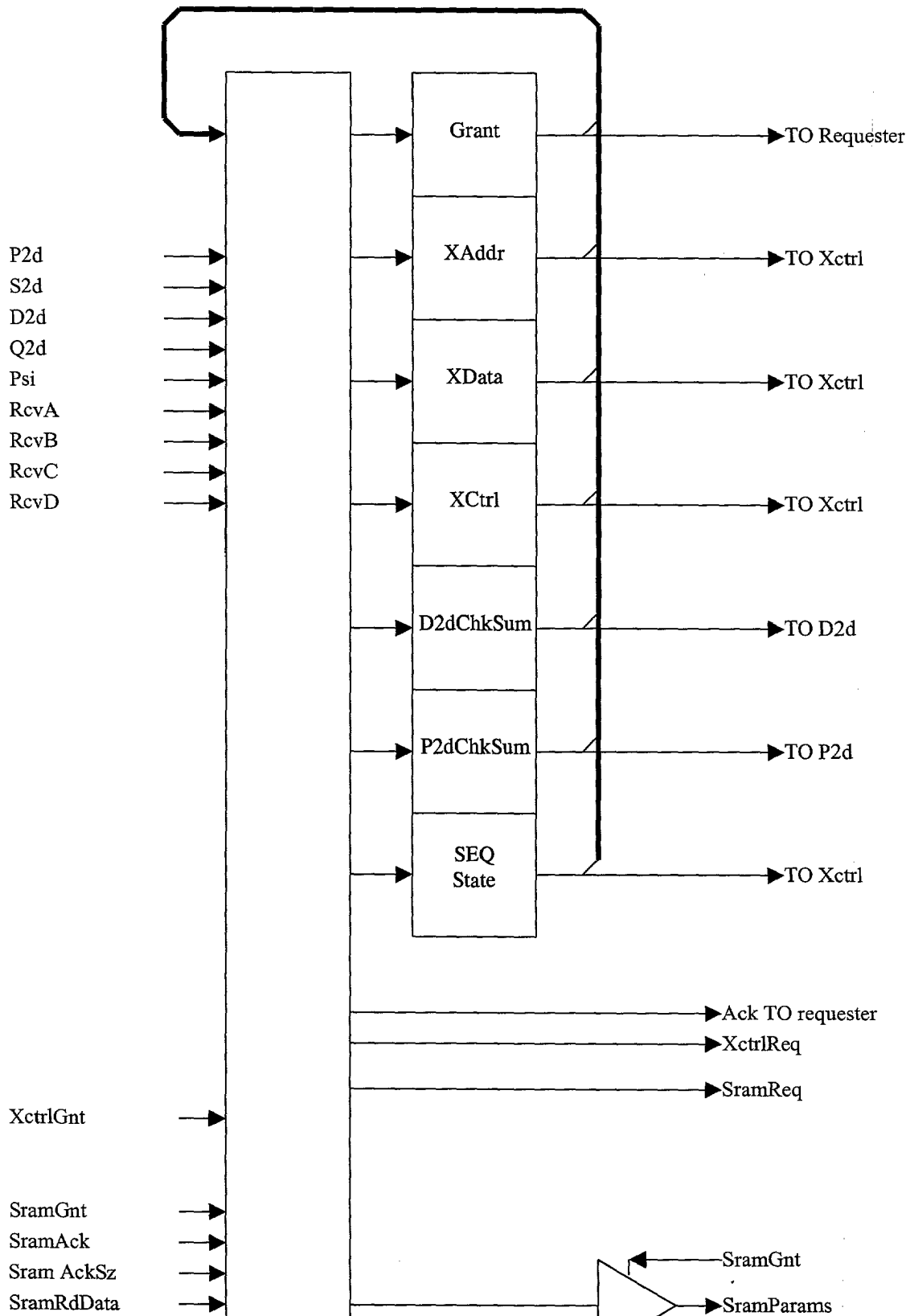
The following block diagram depicts the major functional blocks of the Xwr sequencer. The first step in servicing a request to move data from Sram to sdram is the prioritization of the level two master requests. Next the Xwr sequencer takes a Snapshot of the dram write address and applies configuration information to determine the correct dram, bank, row and column address to apply. The Xwr sequencer immediately issues a read command to the Sram to which the Sram responds with both data and an acknowledge. The Xwr sequencer passes the acknowledge to the level two master along with a size code indicating how much data was read during the Sram cycle allowing the update of pointers and counters. Once sufficient data has been read from Sram, the Xwr sequencer issues a write command to the dram starting the burst cycle and computing a checksum as the data flies by. The Sram read cycle repeats until the original burst request has been completed at which point the Xwr sequencer prioritizes any remaining requests in preparation for the next burst cycle.

Contiguous dram burst cycles are not guaranteed to the Xwr sequencer as an algorithm is implemented which ensures highest priority to refresh cycles followed by flash accesses then dram writes.

Following is a timing diagram illustrating how data is written to sdram. The dram has been configured for a burst of four with a latency of two clock cycles. Bank A is first selected/activated followed by a write command two clock cycles later. The bank select/activate for bank B is next issued in preparation for issuing the second write command. As soon as the first 16 byte burst to bank A completes we issue the write command for bank B and begin supplying data.



# EXTERNAL MEMORY WRITE SEQUENCER (Xwr)

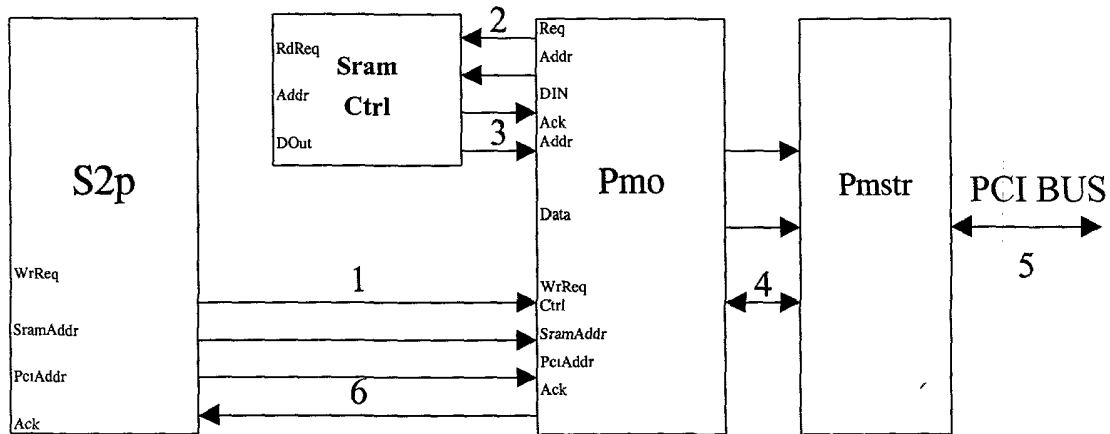




## PCI MASTER-OUT SEQUENCER (Pmo)

The **Pmo** sequencer acts only as a slave sequencer. Servicing requests issued by master sequencers, the **Pmo** sequencer moves data from an Sram based fifo to a Pci target, via the **PciMstrIO** module, in bursts of up to 256 bytes. The nature of the PCI bus dictates the use of the write line command to ensure optimal system performance. The write line command requires that the **Pmo** sequencer be capable of transferring a whole multiple (1X, 2X, 3X, ...) of cache lines of which the size is set through the Pci configuration registers. To accomplish this end, **Pmo** will automatically perform partial bursts until it has aligned the transfers on a cache line boundary at which time it will begin usage of the write line command. The Sram fifo depth, of 256 bytes, has been chosen in order to allow **Pmo** to accommodate cache line sizes up to 128 bytes. Provided the cache line size is less than 128 bytes, **Pmo** will perform multiple, contiguous cache line bursts until it has exhausted the supply of data.

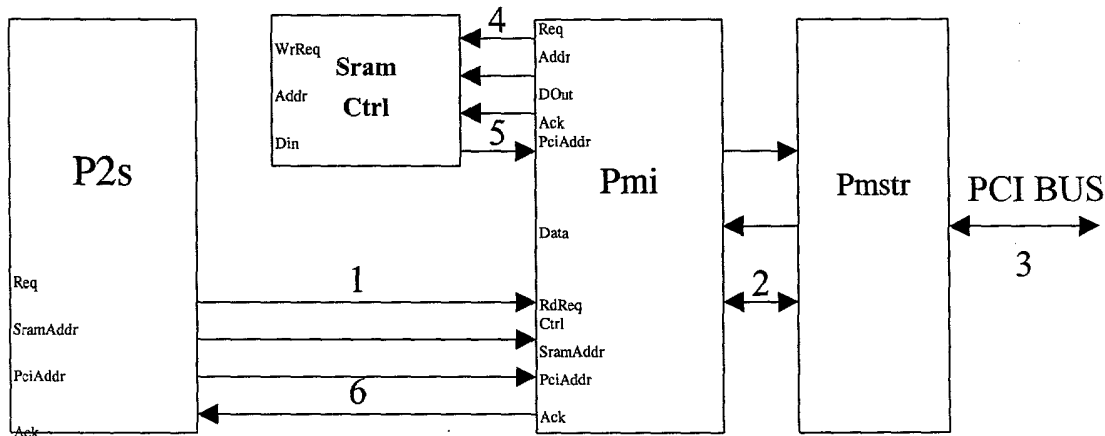
**Pmo** receives requests from two separate sources; the dram to Pci (**D2p**) module and the Sram to Pci (**S2p**) module. An operation first begins with prioritization of the requests where the **S2p** module is given highest priority. Next, the **Pmo** module takes a Snapshot of the Sram fifo address and uses this to generate read requests for the **SramCtrl** sequencer. The **Pmo** module then proceeds to arbitrate for ownership of the Pci bus via the **PciMstrIO** module. Once the **Pmo** holding registers have sufficient data and Pci bus mastership has been granted, the **Pmo** module begins transferring data to the Pci target. For each successful transfer, **Pmo** sends an acknowledge and encoded size to the master sequencer, allow it to update it's internal pointers, counters and status. Once the Pci burst transaction has terminated, **Pmo** parks on the Pci bus unless another initiator has requested ownership. **Pmo** again prioritizes the incoming requests and repeats the process.



## PCI MASTER-IN SEQUENCER (Pmi)

The **Pmi** sequencer acts only as a slave sequencer. Servicing requests issued by master sequencers, the **Pmi** sequencer moves data from a Pci target to an Sram based fifo, via the **PciMstrIO** module, in bursts of up to 256 bytes. The nature of the PCI bus dictates the use of the read multiple command to ensure optimal system performance. The read multiple command requires that the **Pmi** sequencer be capable of transferring a cache line or more of data. To accomplish this end, **Pmi** will automatically perform partial cache line bursts until it has aligned the transfers on a cache line boundary at which time it will begin usage of the read multiple command. The Sram fifo depth, of 256 bytes, has been chosen in order to allow **Pmi** to accommodate cache line sizes up to 128 bytes. Provided the cache line size is less than 128 bytes, **Pmi** will perform multiple, contiguous cache line bursts until it has filled the fifo.

**Pmi** receive requests from two separate sources; the Pci to dram (**P2d**) module and the Pci to Sram (**P2s**) module. An operation first begins with prioritization of the requests where the **P2s** module is given highest priority. The **Pmi** module then proceeds to arbitrate for ownership of the Pci bus via the **PciMstrIO** module. Once the Pci bus mastership has been granted and the **Pmi** holding registers have sufficient data, the **Pmi** module begins transferring data to the Sram fifo. For each successful transfer, **Pmi** sends an acknowledge and encoded size to the master sequencer, allowing it to update it's internal pointers, counters and status. Once the Pci burst transaction has terminated, **Pmi** parks on the Pci bus unless another initiator has requested ownership. **Pmi** again prioritizes the incoming requests and repeats the process.

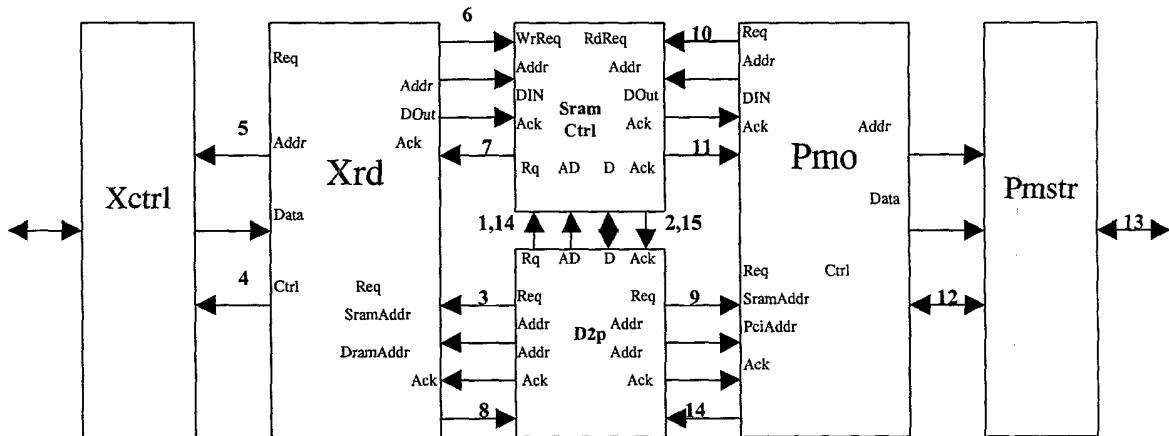


SOURCE: 40449

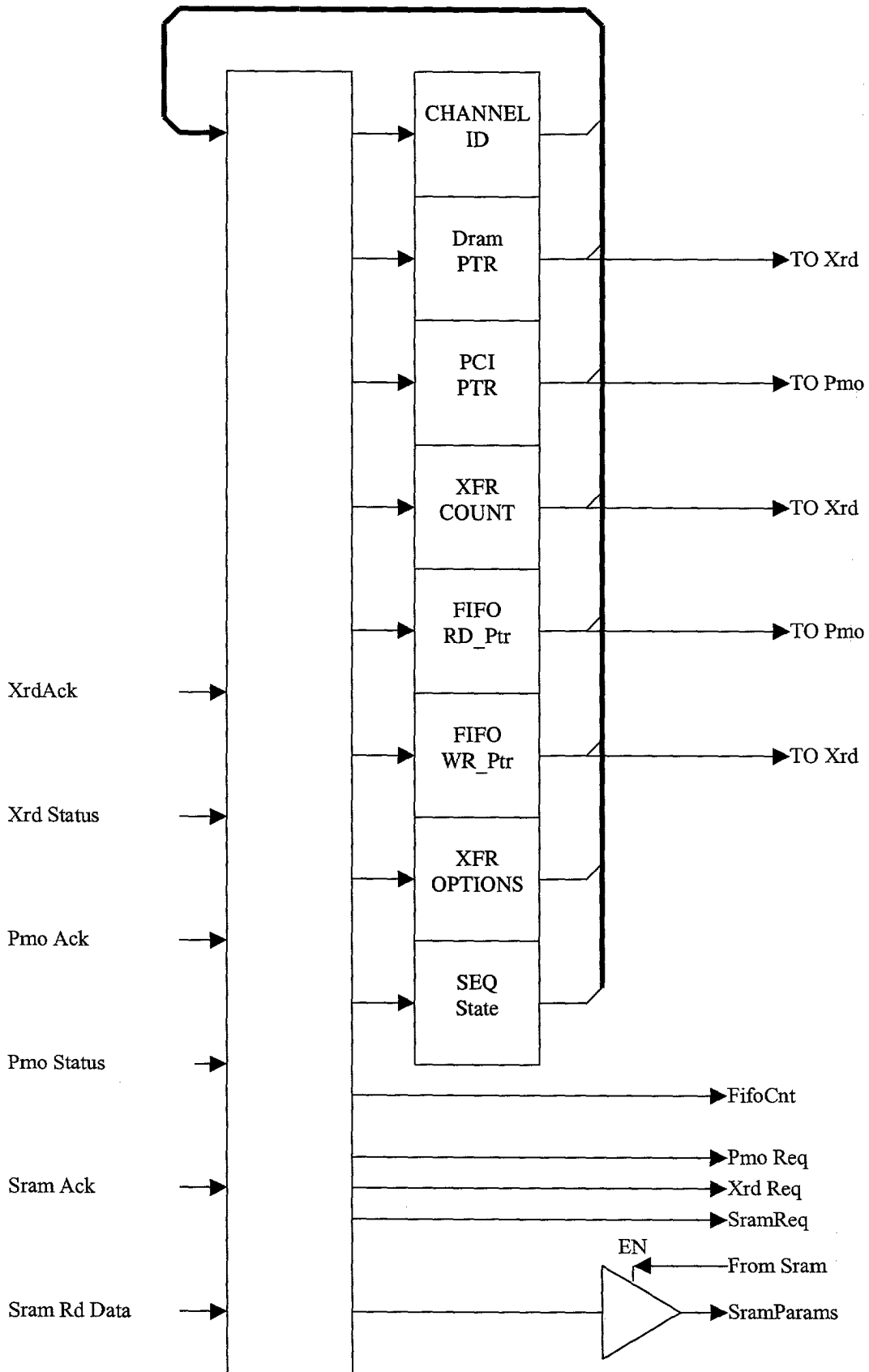
## Dram TO PCI SEQUENCER (D2p)

The **D2p** sequencer acts as a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the Cpu, the **D2p** sequencer manages movement of data from dram to the Pci bus by issuing requests to both the **Xrd** sequencer and the **Pmo** sequencer. Data transfer is accomplished using an Sram based fifo through which data is staged.

**D2p** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two dma channels. Once a command request has been detected, **D2p** fetches a dma descriptor from an Sram location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the dram address, Pci address, Pci endian and request size. **D2p** then issues a request to the **D2s** sequencer causing the Sram based fifo to fill with dram data. Once the fifo contains sufficient data for a Pci transaction, **D2s** issues a request to **Pmo** which in turn moves data from the fifo to a Pci target. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **D2p** writes ending status in to the Sram dma descriptor area and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **D2p** then monitors the dma channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from dram to Pci target.



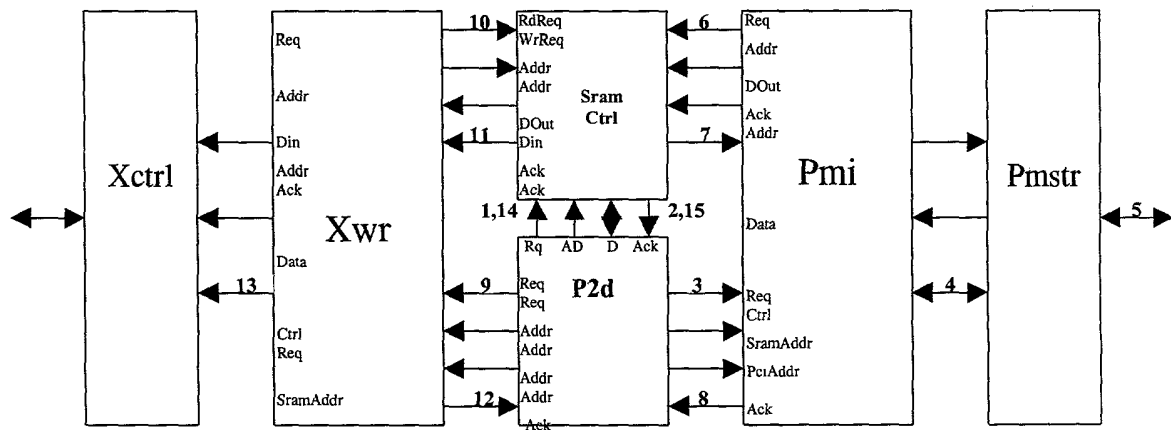
Dram TO PCI SEQUENCER (D2p)



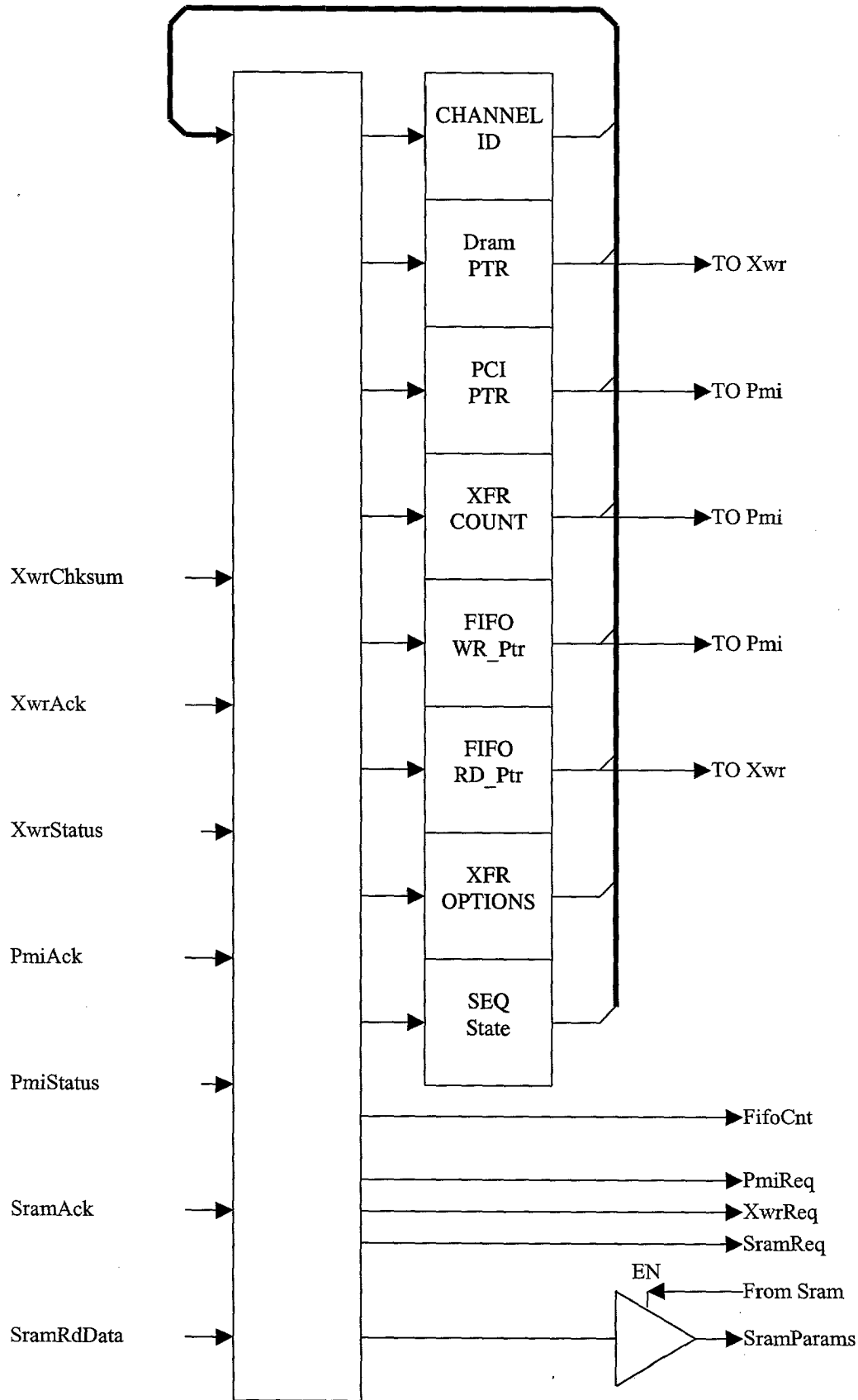
## PCI TO DRAM SEQUENCER (P2d)

The **P2d** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the Cpu, the **P2d** sequencer manages movement of data from Pci bus to dram by issuing requests to both the **Xwr** sequencer and the **Pmi** sequencer. Data transfer is accomplished using an Sram based fifo through which data is staged.

**P2d** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two dma channels. Once a command request has been detected, **P2d**, operating as a slave sequencer, fetches a dma descriptor from an Sram location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the dram address, Pci address, Pci endian and request size. **P2d** then issues a request to **Pmi** which in turn moves data from the Pci target to the Sram fifo. Next, **P2d** issues a request to the **Xwr** sequencer causing the Sram based fifo contents to be written to the dram. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **P2d** writes ending status in to the Sram dma descriptor area and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **P2d** then monitors the dma channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from a Pci target to dram.



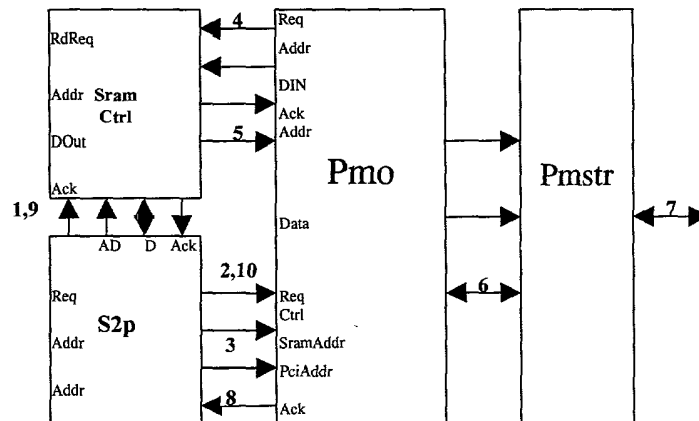
# PCI TO DRAM SEQUENCER (P2d)



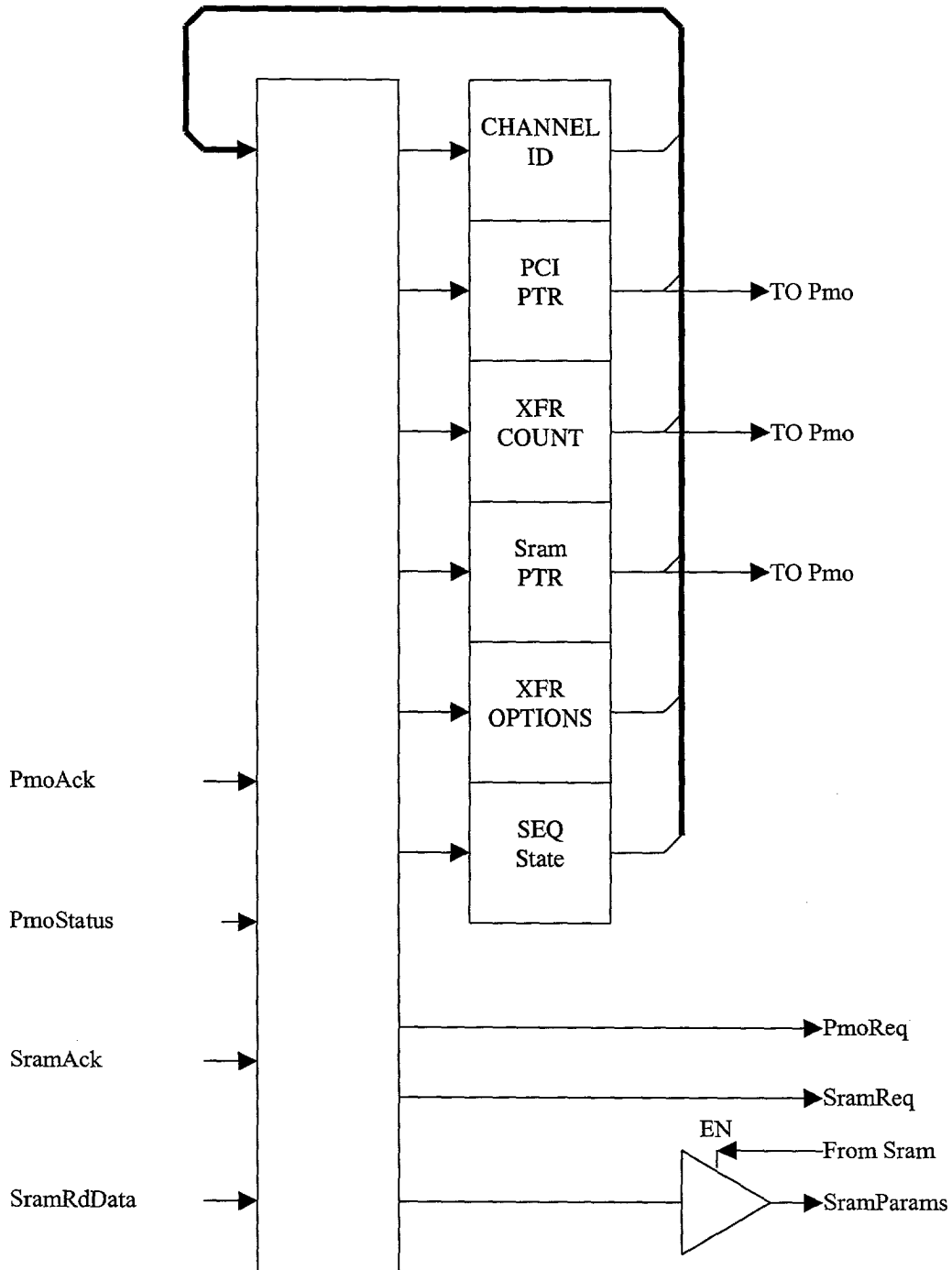
## SRAM TO PCI SEQUENCER (S2p)

The **S2p** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the Cpu, the **S2p** sequencer manages movement of data from Sram to the Pci bus by issuing requests to the **Pmo** sequencer

**S2p** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two dma channels. Once a command request has been detected, **S2p**, operating as a slave sequencer, fetches a dma descriptor from an Sram location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the Sram address, Pci address, Pci endian and request size. **S2p** then issues a request to **Pmo** which in turn moves data from the Sram to a Pci target. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **S2p** writes ending status in to the Sram dma descriptor area and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **S2p** then monitors the dma channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from Sram to Pci target.



# SRAM TO PCI SEQUENCER (S2p)

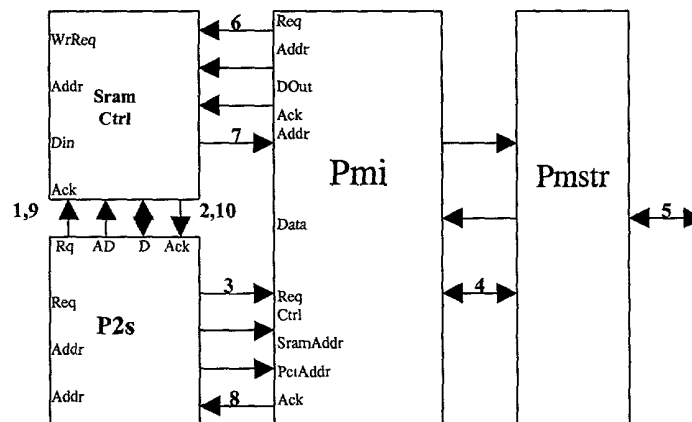




## PCI TO SRAM SEQUENCER (P2s)

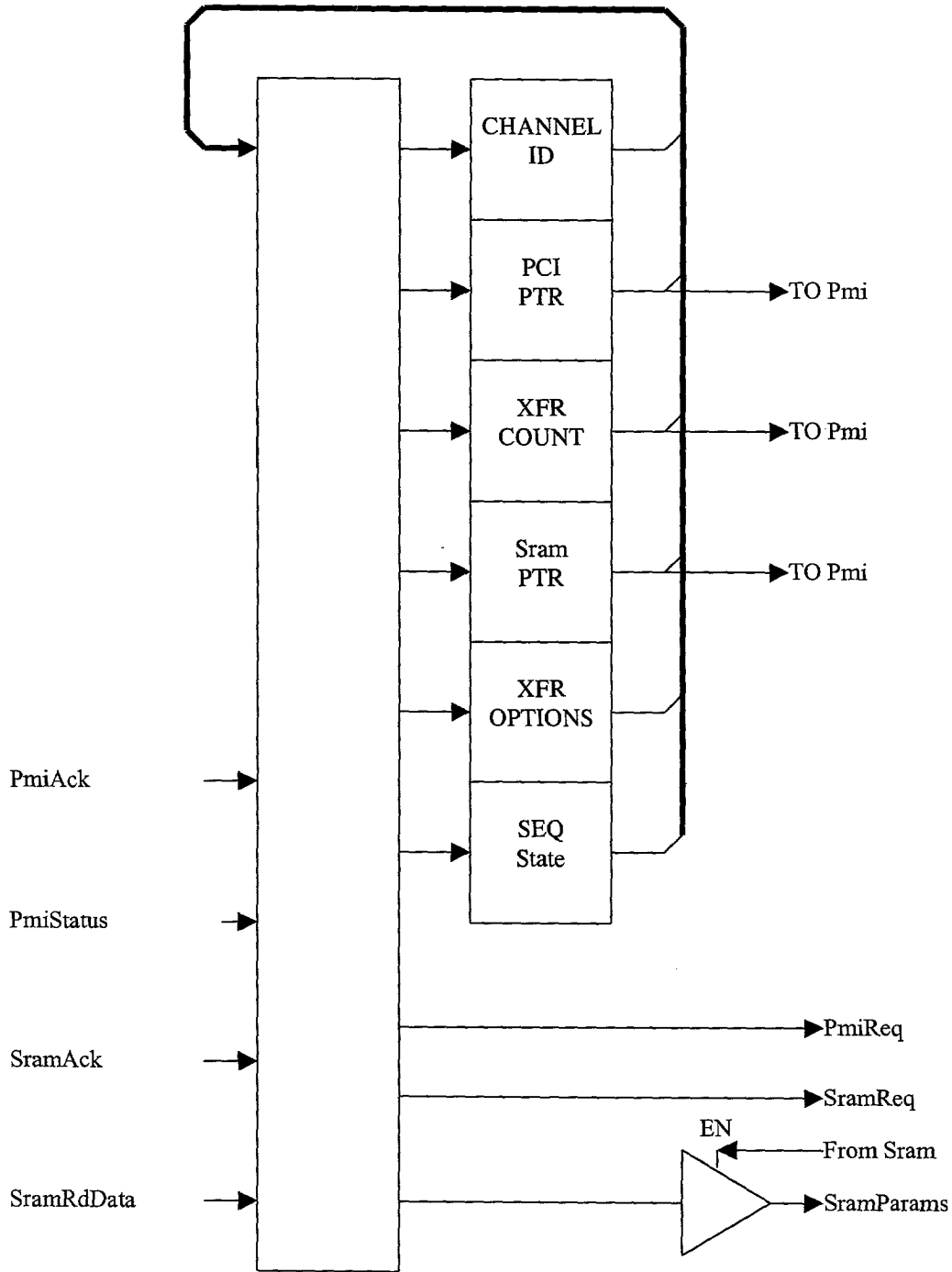
The **P2s** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the **Cpu**, the **P2s** sequencer manages movement of data from **Pci** bus to **Sram** by issuing requests to the **Pmi** sequencer.

**P2s** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two **dma** channels. Once a command request has been detected, **P2s**, operating as a slave sequencer, fetches a **dma** descriptor from an **Sram** location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the **Sram** address, **Pci** address, **Pci** endian and request size. **P2s** then issues a request to **Pmi** which in turn moves data from the **Pci** target to the **Sram**. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **P2s** writes ending status in to the **dma** descriptor area of **Sram** and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **P2s** then monitors the **dma** channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from a **Pci** target to **dram**.



PCI TO SRAM SEQUENCER (P2s)

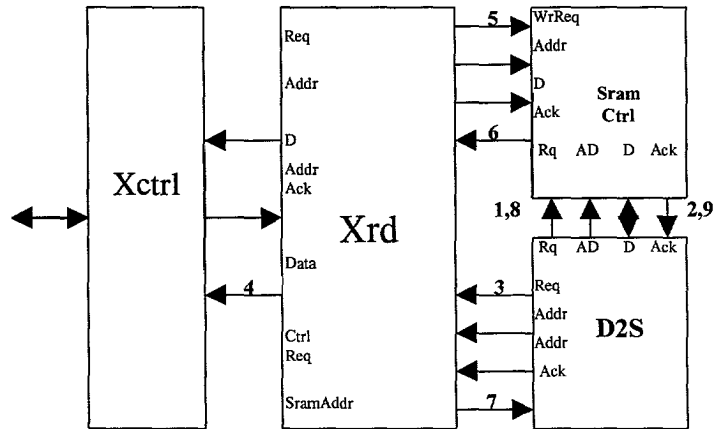
464707-607909



## DRAM TO SRAM SEQUENCER (D2s)

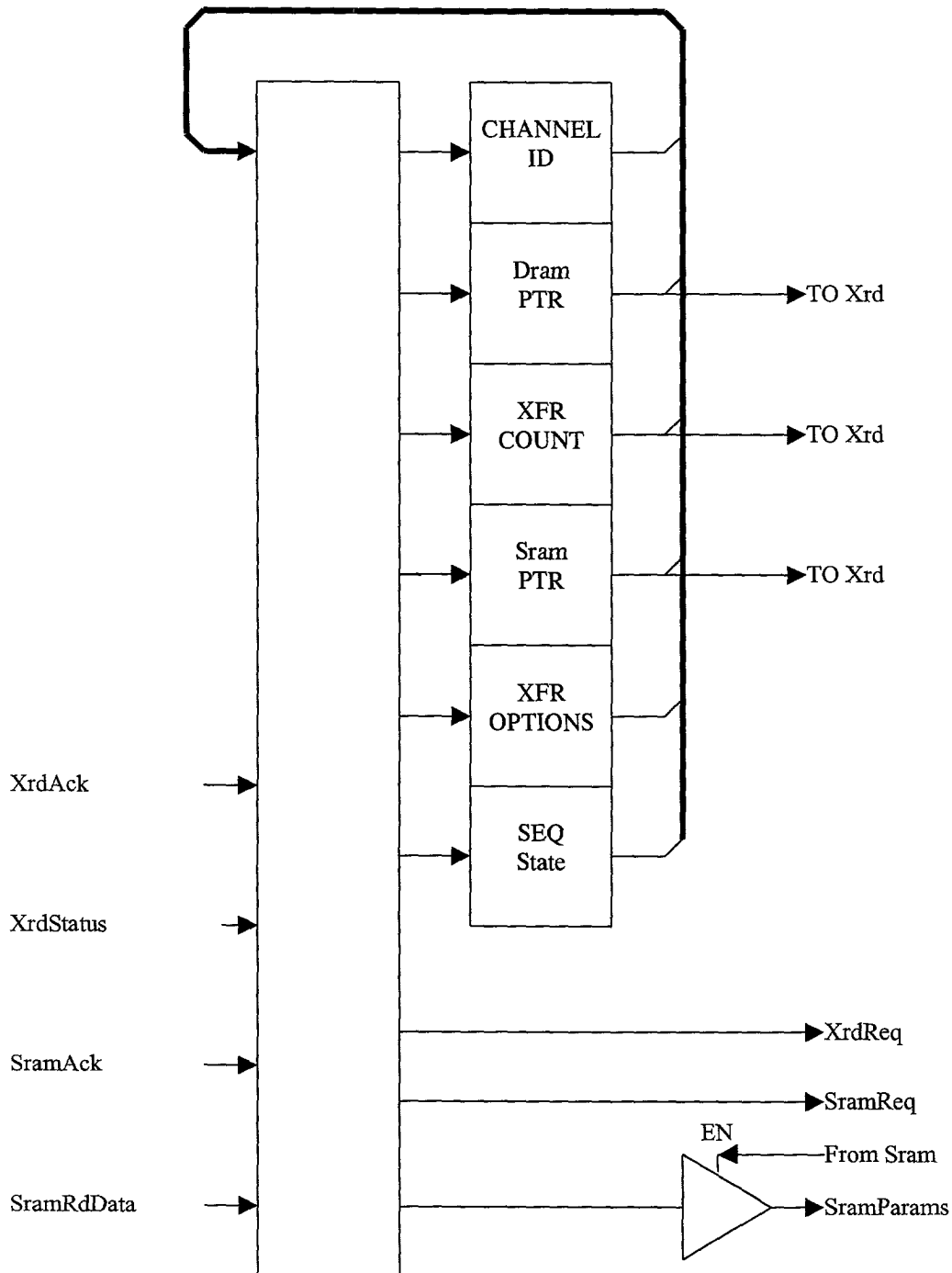
The **D2s** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the **Cpu**, the **D2s** sequencer manages movement of data from **dram** to **Sram** by issuing requests to the **Xrd** sequencer.

**D2s** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two **dma** channels. Once a command request has been detected, **D2s**, operating as a slave sequencer, fetches a **dma** descriptor from an **Sram** location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the **dram** address, **Sram** address and request size. **D2s** then issues a request to the **Xrd** sequencer causing the transfer of data to the **Sram**. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **D2s** writes ending status in to the **Sram** **dma** descriptor area and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **D2s** then monitors the **dma** channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from **dram** to **Sram**.



# DRAM TO SRAM SEQUENCER (D2s)

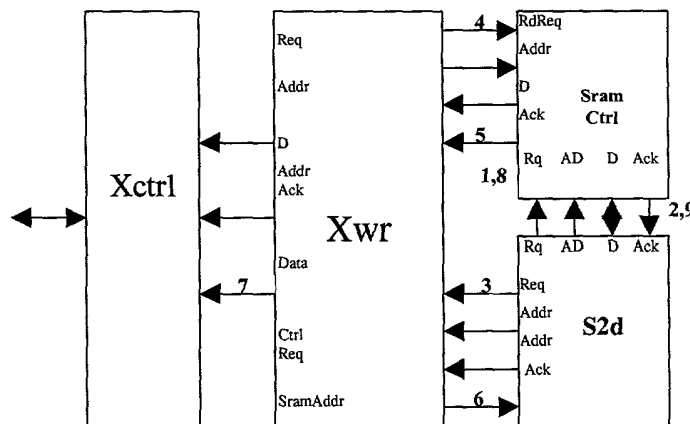
454707-5087909



## SRAM TO DRAM SEQUENCER (S2d)

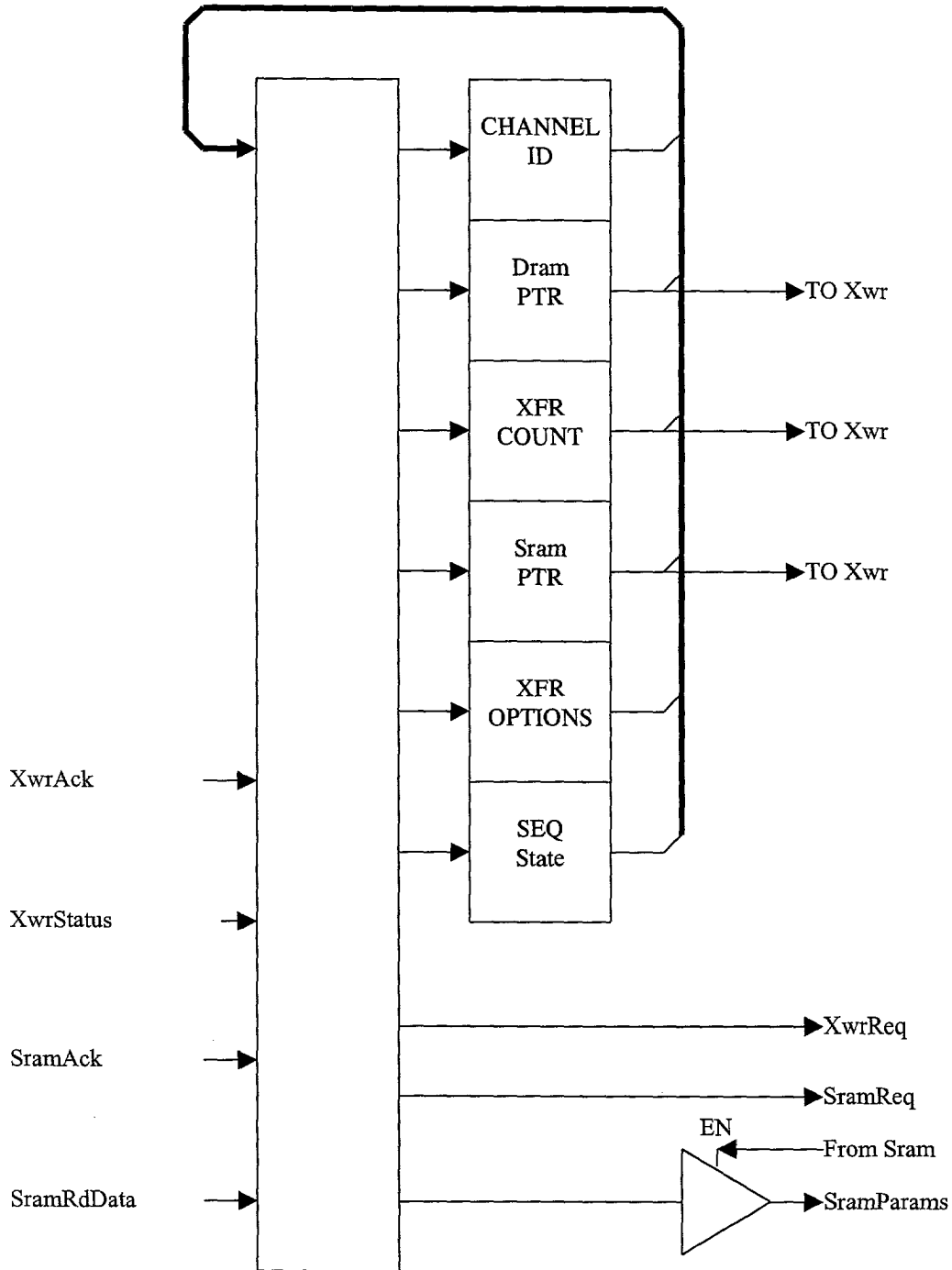
The **S2d** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the Cpu, the **S2d** sequencer manages movement of data from Sram to dram by issuing requests to the **Xwr** sequencer.

**S2d** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two dma channels. Once a command request has been detected, **S2d**, operating as a slave sequencer, fetches a dma descriptor from an Sram location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the dram address, Sram address, checksum reset and request size. **S2d** then issues a request to the **Xwr** sequencer causing the transfer of data to the dram. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **S2d** writes ending status in to the Sram dma descriptor area and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **S2d** then monitors the dma channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from Sram to dram.



SRAM TO DRAM SEQUENCER (S2d)

LAURENCE B. BOUCHER



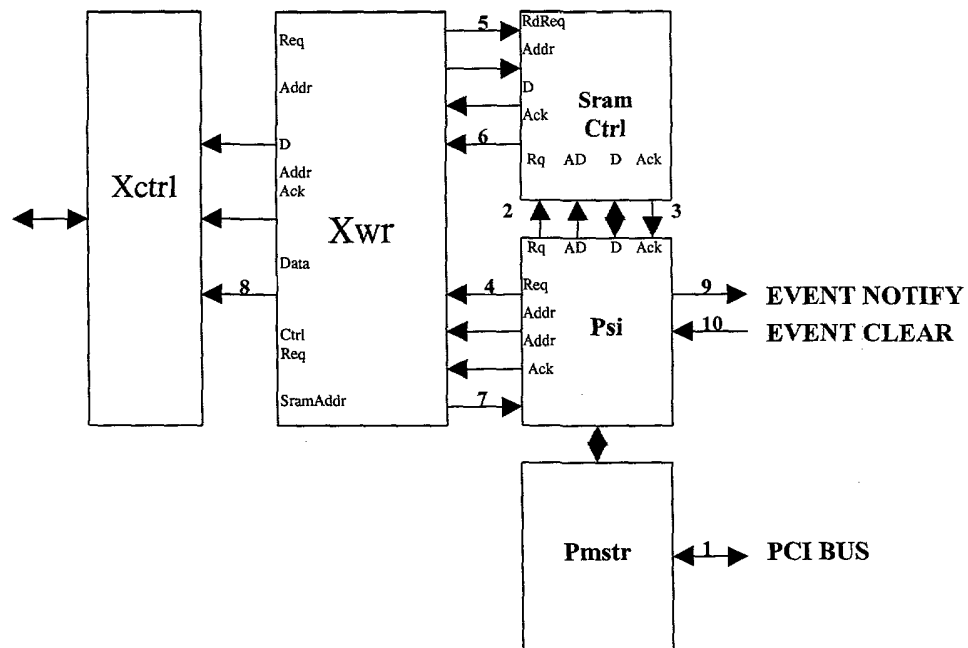
## PCI SLAVE INPUT SEQUENCER (Psi)

The **Psi** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing requests issued by a **Pci** master, the **Psi** sequencer manages movement of data from **Pci** bus to **Sram** and **Pci** bus to **dram** via **Sram** by issuing requests to the **SramCtrl** and **Xwr** sequencers.

**Psi** manages write requests to configuration space, expansion rom, **dram**, **Sram** and memory mapped registers. **Psi** separates these **Pci** bus operations in to two categories with different action taken for each. **Dram** accesses result in **Psi** generating write request to an **Sram** buffer followed with a write request to the **Xwr** sequencer. Subsequent write or read **dram** operations are retry terminated until the buffer has been emptied. An event notification is set for the processor allowing message passing to occur through **dram** space.

All other **Pci** write transactions result in **Psi** posting the write information including **Pci** address, **Pci** byte marks and **Pci** data to a reserved location in **Sram**, then setting an event flag which the event processor monitors. Subsequent writes or reads of configuration, expansion rom, **Sram** or registers are terminated with retry until the processor clears the event flag. This allows the **INIC** to keep pipelining levels to a minimum for the posted write and give the processor ample time to modify data for subsequent **Pci** read operations.

The following diagram depicts the sequence of events when **Psi** is the target of a **Pci** write operation. Note that events 4 through 7 occur only when the write operation targets the **dram**.



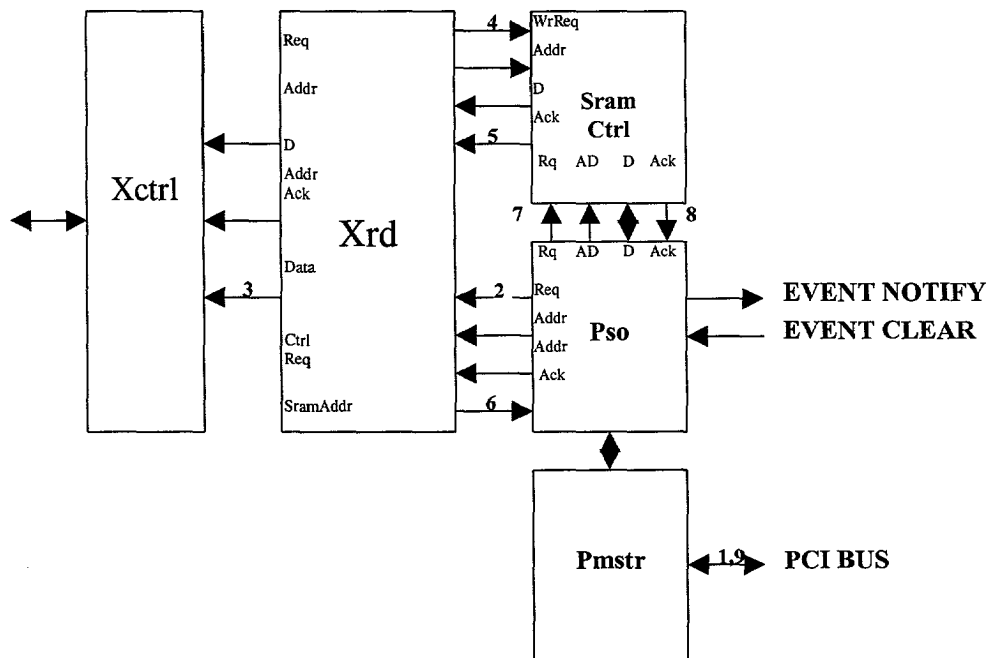
## PCI SLAVE OUTPUT SEQUENCER (Pso)

The **Pso** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing requests issued by a **Pci** master, the **Pso** sequencer manages movement of data to **Pci** bus form **Sram** and to **Pci** bus from **dram** via **Sram** by issuing requests to the **SramCtrl** and **Xrd** sequencers.

**Pso** manages read requests to configuration space, expansion rom, **dram**, **Sram** and memory mapped registers. **Pso** separates these **Pci** bus operations in to two categories with different action taken for each. **Dram** accesses result in **Pso** generating read request to the **Xrd** sequencer followed with a read request to **Sram** buffer. Subsequent write or read **dram** operations are retry terminated until the buffer has been emptied.

All other **Pci** read transactions result in **Pso** posting the read request information including **Pci** address and **Pci** byte marks to a reserved location in **Sram**, then setting an event flag which the event processor monitors. Subsequent writes or reads of configuration, expansion rom, **Sram** or registers are terminated with retry until the processor clears the event flag. This allows the **INIC** to use a microcoded response mechanism to return data for the request. The processor decodes the request information, formulates or fetches the requested data and stores it in **Sram** then clears the event flag allowing **Pso** to fetch the data and return it on the **Pci** bus.

The following diagram depicts the sequence of events when **Pso** is the target of a **Pci** read operation.

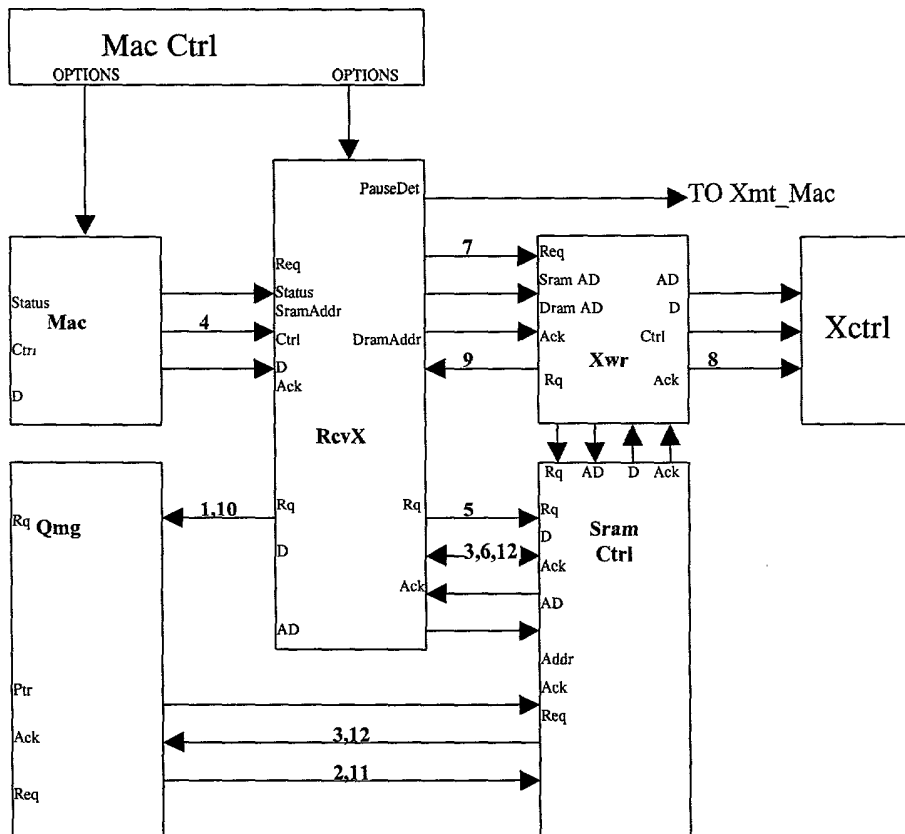




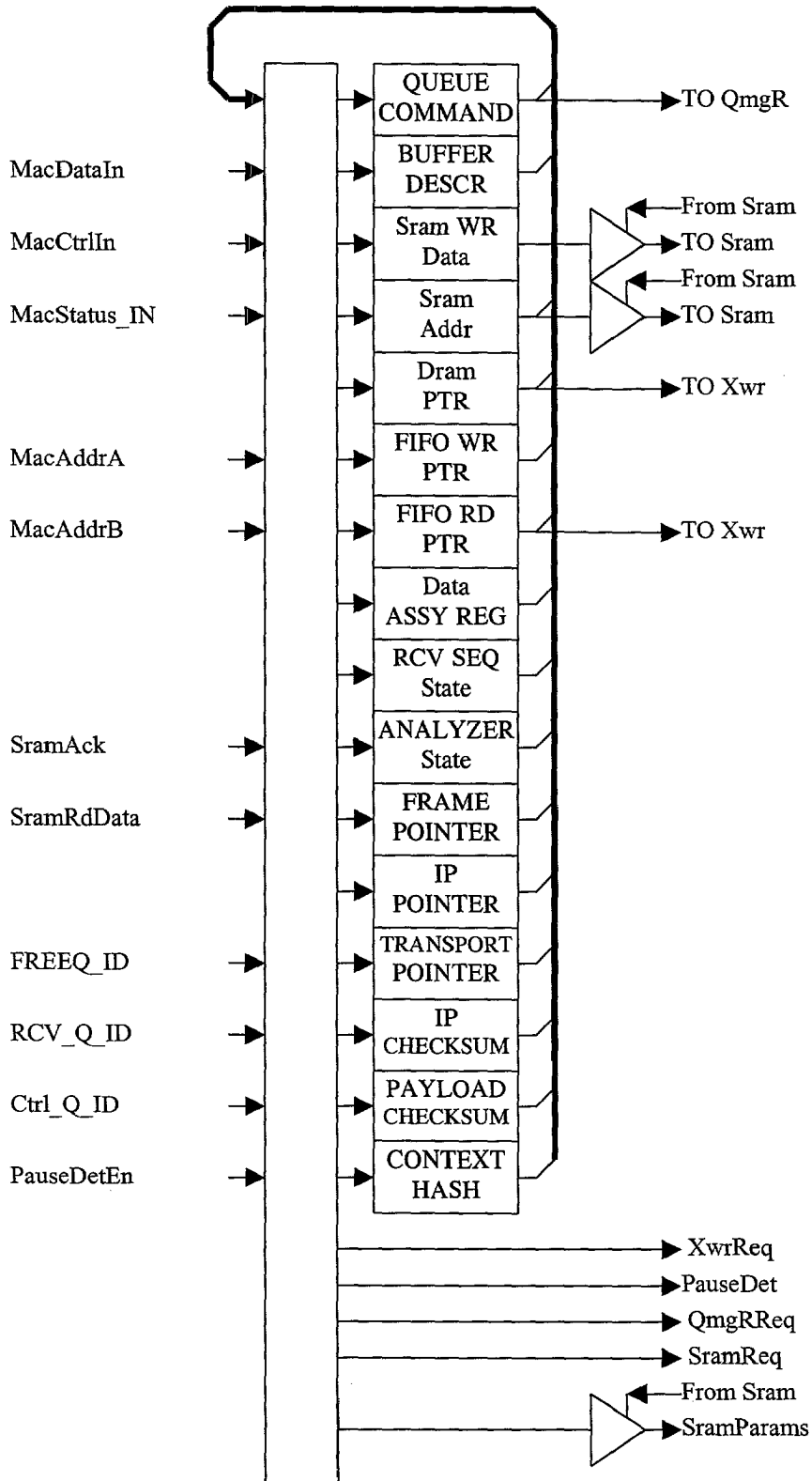
## FRAME RECEIVE SEQUENCER (RcvX)

The receive sequencer (**RcvSeq**) analyzes and manages incoming packets, stores the result in dram buffers, then notifies the processor through the receive queue (**RcvQ**) mechanism. The process begins when a buffer descriptor is available at the output of the **FreeQ**. **RcvSeq** issues a request to the **Qmg** which responds by supplying the buffer descriptor to **RcvSeq**. **RcvSeq** then waits for a receive packet. The Mac, network, transport and session information is analyzed as each byte is received and stored in the assembly register (**AssyReg**). When four bytes of information is available, **RcvSeq** requests a write of the data to the Sram. When sufficient data has been stored in the Sram based receive fifo, a dram write request is issued to **Xwr**. The process continues until the entire packet has been received at which point **RcvSeq** stores the results of the packet analysis in the beginning of the dram buffer. Once the buffer and status have both been stored, **RcvSeq** issues a write-queue request to **Qmg**. **Qmg** responds by storing a buffer descriptor provided by **RcvSeq**. The process then repeats. If **RcvSeq** detects the arrival of a packet before a free buffer is available, it ignores the packet and sets the **FrameLost** status bit for the next received buffer.

The following diagram depicts the sequence of events for successful reception of a packet followed by a definition of the receive buffer and the buffer descriptor as stored on the **RcvQ**.



# FRAME RECEIVE SEQUENCER (RcvX)



## RECEIVE BUFFER DESCRIPTOR

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|-------------|--|
| 31:30      | reserved    |  |
| 29:28      | size        | A copy of the bits in the <b>FreeBufDscr</b> .   |
| 27:00      | address     | Represents the last address + 1 to which frame data was transferred. The address wraps around at the boundary dictated by the <b>S</b> bits. This can be used to determine the size of the frame received. |

## RECEIVE BUFFER FORMAT

### FRAME Status A      OFFSET 0x0000:0x0003

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>  | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|--------------|---|
| 31         | attention    | Indicates one or more of the following: <b>CompositeErr</b> , <b>!IpDn</b> , <b>!MacADet</b> & <b>!MacBDet</b> , <b>IpMcst</b> , <b>IpBcst</b> , <b>!ethernet</b> & <b>!802.3Snap</b> , <b>!Ip4</b> , <b>!Tcp</b> . |
| 30         | CompositeErr | Set when any of the error bits of <b>ErrStatus</b> are set or if frame processing stops while receiving a <b>Tcp</b> or <b>Udp</b> header.  |
| 29         | CtrlFrame    | A control frame was received at our unicast or special <b>MltCst</b> address.   |
| 28         | IpDn         | Frame processing Hlted due to exhaustion of the <b>IP4</b> length counter.  |
| 27         | 802.3Dn      | Frame processing Hlted due to exhaustion of the <b>802.3</b> length counter.  |
| 26         | MacADet      | Frame's destination address matched the contents of <b>MacAddrA</b> .   |
| 25         | MacBDet      | Frame's destination address matched the contents of <b>MacAddrB</b> .   |
| 24         | MacMcst      | The Mac detected a <b>MltCst</b> address.   |
| 23         | MacBcst      | The Mac detected a <b>BrdCst</b> address.   |
| 22         | IpMcst       | The frame processor detected an <b>IP MltCst</b> address.   |
| 21         | IpBcst       | The frame processor detected an <b>IP BrdCst</b> address.   |
| 20         | Frag         | The frame processor detected a <b>Frag IP</b> datagram.   |
| 19         | IpOffst      | The frame processor detected a non-zero <b>IP</b> datagram offset.  |
| 18         | IpFlgs       | The frame processor detected flags within the <b>IP</b> datagram.   |
| 17         | IpOpts       | The frame processor detected a header length greater than 20 for the <b>IP</b> datagram.  |
| 16         | TcpFlgs      | The frame processor detected an abnormal header flag for the <b>TCP</b> segment.  |
| 15         | TcpOpts      | The frame processor detected a header length greater than 20 for the <b>TCP</b> segment.  |
| 14         | TcpUrg       | The frame processor detected a non-zero urgent pointer for the <b>TCP</b> segment.  |
| 13         | CarrierEvt   | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 12         | LongEvt      | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 11         | FrameLost    | Set when an incoming frame could not be processed as a result of an outstanding frame completion event not yet serviced by the utility processor.   |
| 10         | reserved     |   |
| 10         | NoAck        | The frame processor detected a  |
| 09:08      | FrameTyp     | 00 - Reserved.    01- ethernet.    10 - 802.3.    11 - 802.3 Snap.  |
| 07:06      | NwkTyp       | 00 - Unknown.    01- Ip4.    10 - Ip6    11 - ip other.   |
| 05:04      | TrnsptTyp    | 00 - Unknown.    01- reserved.    10 - Tcp    11 - Udp  |
| 03         | NetBios      | A <b>NetBios</b> frame was detected.  |
| 02         | reserved     |   |
| 01:00      | channel      | The Mac on which this frame was received.   |

45707 503T5009

**FRAME Status B**

**OFFSET 0x0004:0x0007**

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>       | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-------------------|---|
| 31         | <b>802.3Shrt</b>  | End of frame was encountered before the 802.3 length count was exhausted.   |
| 30         | <b>BufOvr</b>     | The frame length exceeded the buffer space available.   |
| 29         | <b>BadPkt</b>     | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 28         | <b>InvlPrmb</b>   | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 27         | <b>CrcErr</b>     | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 26         | <b>DrblNbbl</b>   | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 25         | <b>CodeErr</b>    | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 24         | <b>IpHdrShrt</b>  | The IP4 header length field contained a value less than 0x5.  |
| 23         | <b>IpIncmplt</b>  | The frame terminated before the IP length counter was exhausted.  |
| 22         | <b>IpSumErr</b>   | The IP header checksum was not 0xffff at the completion of the IP header read.  |
| 21         | <b>TcpSumErr</b>  | The session checksum was not 0xffff at the termination of session processing.   |
| 20         | <b>TcpHdrShrt</b> | The TCP header length field contained a value less than 0x5.  |
| 19:16      | <b>PressCd</b>    | The state of the frame processor at the time the frame processing terminated.<br>0b0000 Processing Mac header.<br>0b0001 Processing 802.3 LLC header.<br>0b0010 Processing 802.3 SNAP header.<br>0b0011 Processing unknown network data.<br>0b0100 Processing IP header.<br>0b0101 Processing IP data (unknown transport).<br>0b0110 Processing transport header (IP data).<br>0b0111 Processing transport data (IP data).<br>0b1000 Processing IP processing complete.<br>0b1001 Reserved.<br>0b101x Reserved.<br>0b11xx Reserved. |
| 15:08      | <b>MacHsh</b>     | The Mac destination-address hash. Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 07:00      | <b>CtxHsh</b>     | The 8-bit context-hash generated by exclusive-oring all bytes of the IP source address, IP destination-address, transport source port and the transport destination port.   |

**TIME STAMP**

**OFFSET 0x0008:0x000B**

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>    | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|----------------|--|
| 31:00      | <b>RcvTime</b> | The contents of <b>FreeClk</b> at the completion of the frame receive operation. |

**CHECKSUM**

**OFFSET 0x000C:0x000F**

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>      | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|------------------|--|
| 31:16      | <b>IpChksum</b>  | Reflects the value of the IP header checksum at frame completion or IP header completion. If an IP datagram was not detected, the checksum provides a total for the entire data portion of the received frame. The data area is defined as those bytes received after the type field of an ethernet frame, the LLC header of an 802.3 frame or the SNAP header of an 802.3-SNAP frame. |
| 15:00      | <b>TcpChksum</b> | Reflects the value of the transport checksum at IP completion or frame completion. If IP was detected but session was unknown, the checksum will not include the psuedo-header. If IP was not detected, the checksum will be 0x0000.   |

**RESERVED**

**OFFSET 0x0010:0x0011**

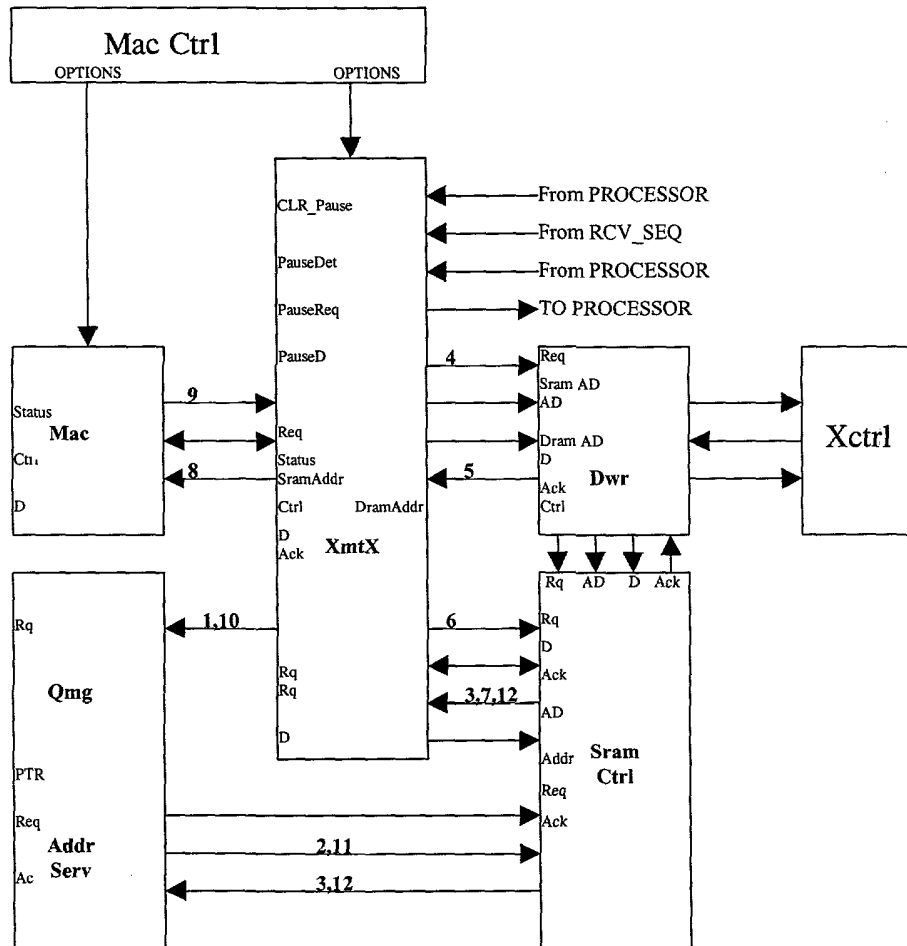
**FRAME Data**

**OFFSET 0x0012:END OF BUFFER**

## FRAME TRANSMIT SEQUENCER (XmtX)

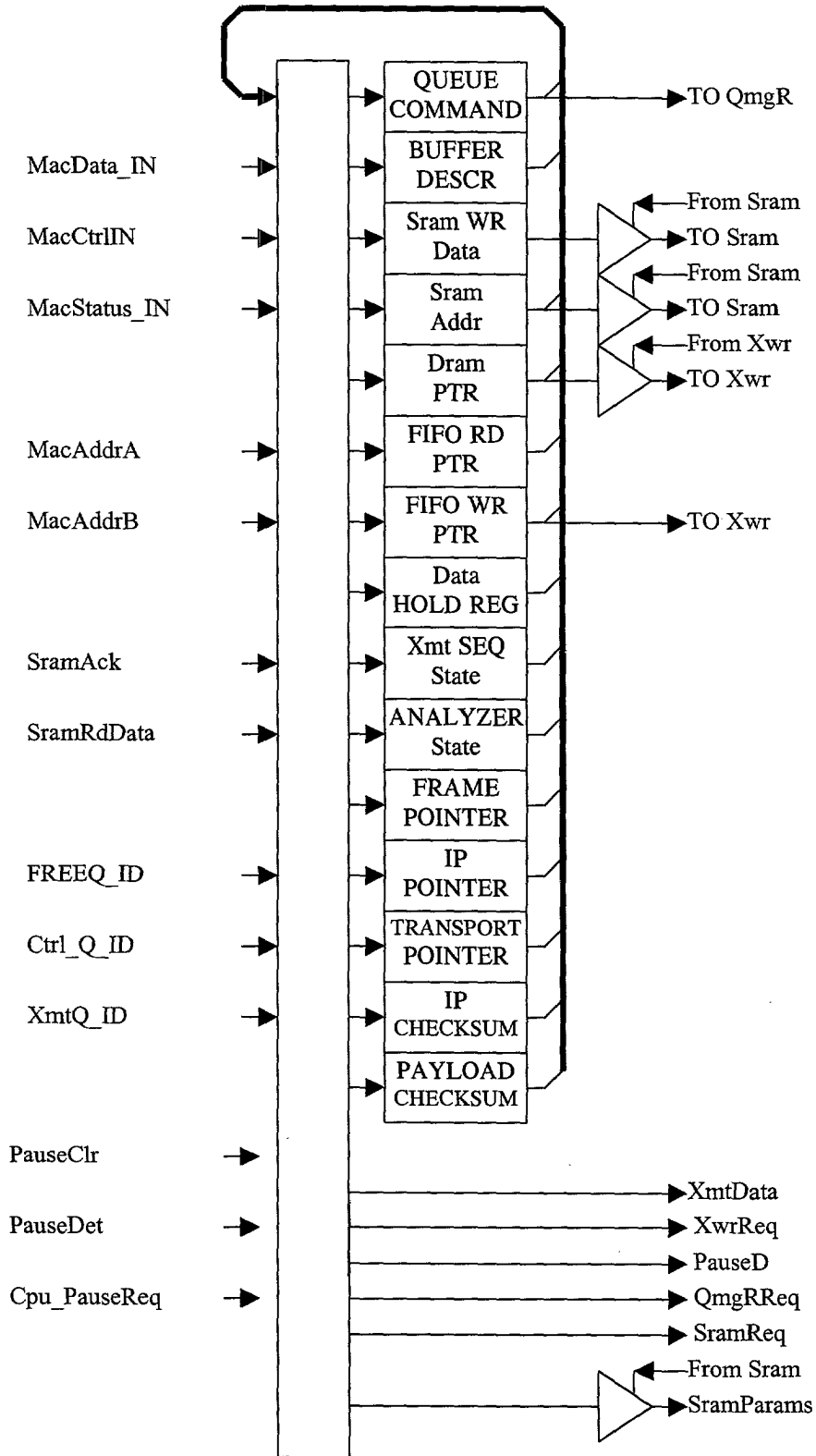
The transmit sequencer (**XmtSeq**) analyzes and manages outgoing packets, using buffer descriptors retrieved from the transmit queue (**XmtQ**) then storing the descriptor for the freed buffer in the free buffer queue (**FreeQ**). The process begins when a buffer descriptor is available at the output of the **XmtQ**. **XmtSeq** issues a request to the **Qmg** which responds by supplying the buffer descriptor to **XmtSeq**. **XmtSeq** then issues a read request to the **Xrd** sequencer. Next, **XmtSeq** issues a read request to **SramCtrl** then instructs the Mac to begin frame transmission. The Mac accepts data from **XmtSeq** which analyzes the packet as it flies-by in order to generate checksums to insert in the data stream. Once the frame transmission has completed, **XmtSeq** stores the buffer descriptor on the **FreeQ** thereby recycling the buffer.

The following diagram depicts the sequence of events for successful transmission of a packet followed by a definition of the receive buffer and the buffer descriptor as stored on the **XmtQ**.



"SECRET"

# FRAME TRANSMIT SEQUENCER (XmtX)



## TRANSMIT BUFFER DESCRIPTOR

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-------------|---|
| 31         | ChksumEn    | When set, XmtSeq will insert a calculated checksum. When reset, XmtSeq will not alter the outgoing data stream.   |
| 30         | reserved    |   |
| 29:28      | size        | Represents the size of the buffer by indicating at what boundary the buffer should start and terminate. This is used in combination with EndAddr to determine the starting address of the buffer :<br><br>S = 0 256B boundary. A[7:0] ignored.<br>S = 1 2KB boundary. A[10:0] ignored.<br>S = 2 4KB boundary. A[11:0] ignored.<br>S = 3 32KB boundary. A[14:0] ignored. |
| 27:00      | EndAddr     | The address of the last byte to transmit plus one.  |

## TRANSMIT BUFFER FORMAT

CHECKSUM PRIMER    OFFSET 0x0000:0x0003

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|-------------|--|
| 31:00      | Primer      | A value to be added during checksum accumulation. For IPV4, this should include the psuedo-header values, protocol and Tcp-length. |

RESERVED            OFFSET 0x0004:0x0005

FRAME Data         OFFSET 0x0006:END OF BUFFER

## TRANSMIT Status VECTOR

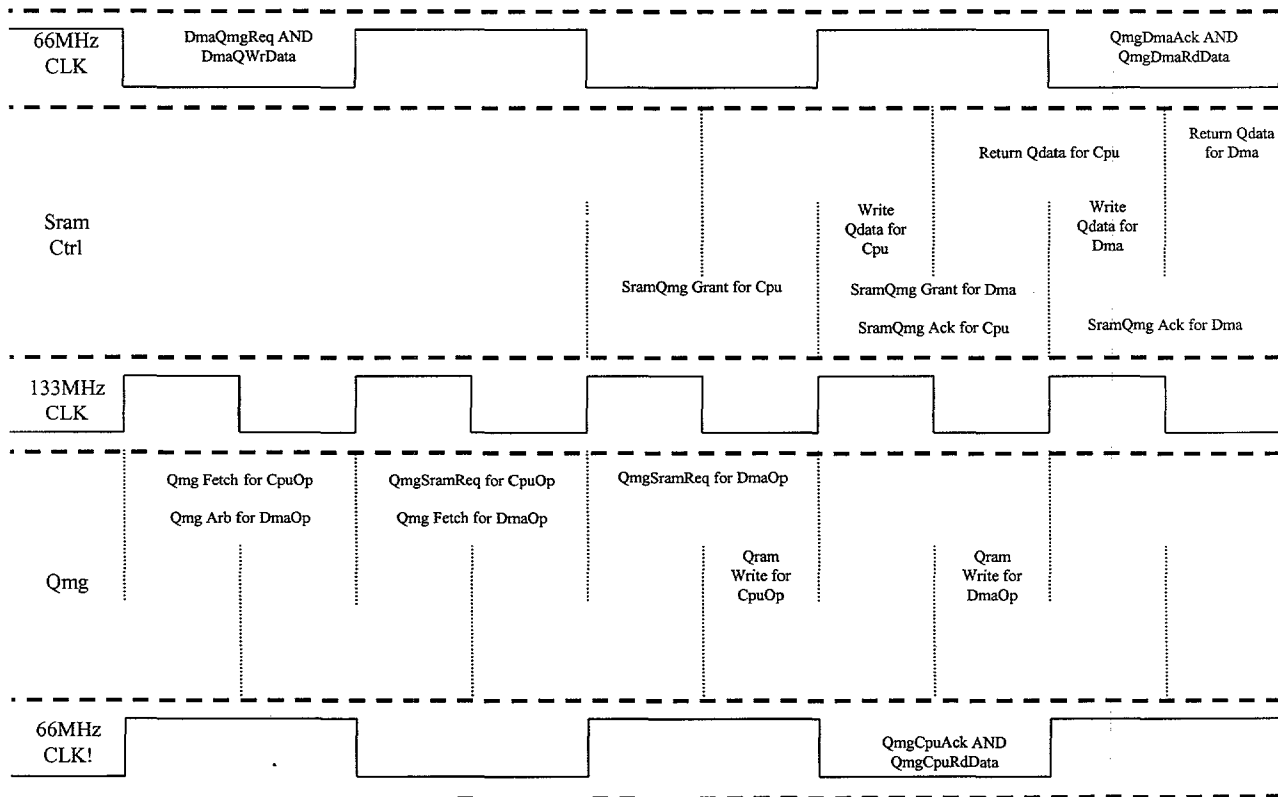
| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>    | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|----------------|--|
| 31         | LnkErr         | Indicates that a link status error occurred before or during transmit. |
| 30:15      | reserved       |  |
| 14         | ExcessDeferral | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 13         | LateAbort      | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 12         | ExcessColl     | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 11         | UnderRun       | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 10         | ExcessLgth     | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 09         | Okay           | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 08         | deferred       | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 07         | BrdCst         | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 06         | MltCst         | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 05         | CrcErr         | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 04         | LateColl       | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 03:00      | CollCnt        | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |

## QUEUE MANAGER (Qmg)

The INIC includes special hardware assist for the implementation of message and pointer queues. The hardware assist is called the queue manager (**Qmg**) and manages the movement of queue entries between Cpu and Sram, between dma sequencers and Sram as well as between Sram and dram. Queues comprise three distinct entities; the queue head (**QHd**), the queue tail (**QTI**) and the queue body (**QBdy**). **QHd** resides in 64 bytes of scratch ram and provides the area to which entries will be written (pushed). **QTI** resides in 64 bytes of scratch ram and contains queue locations from which entries will be read (popped). **QBdy** resides in dram and contains locations for expansion of the queue in order to minimize the Sram space requirements. The **QBdy** size depends upon the queue being accessed and the initialization parameters presented during queue initialization.

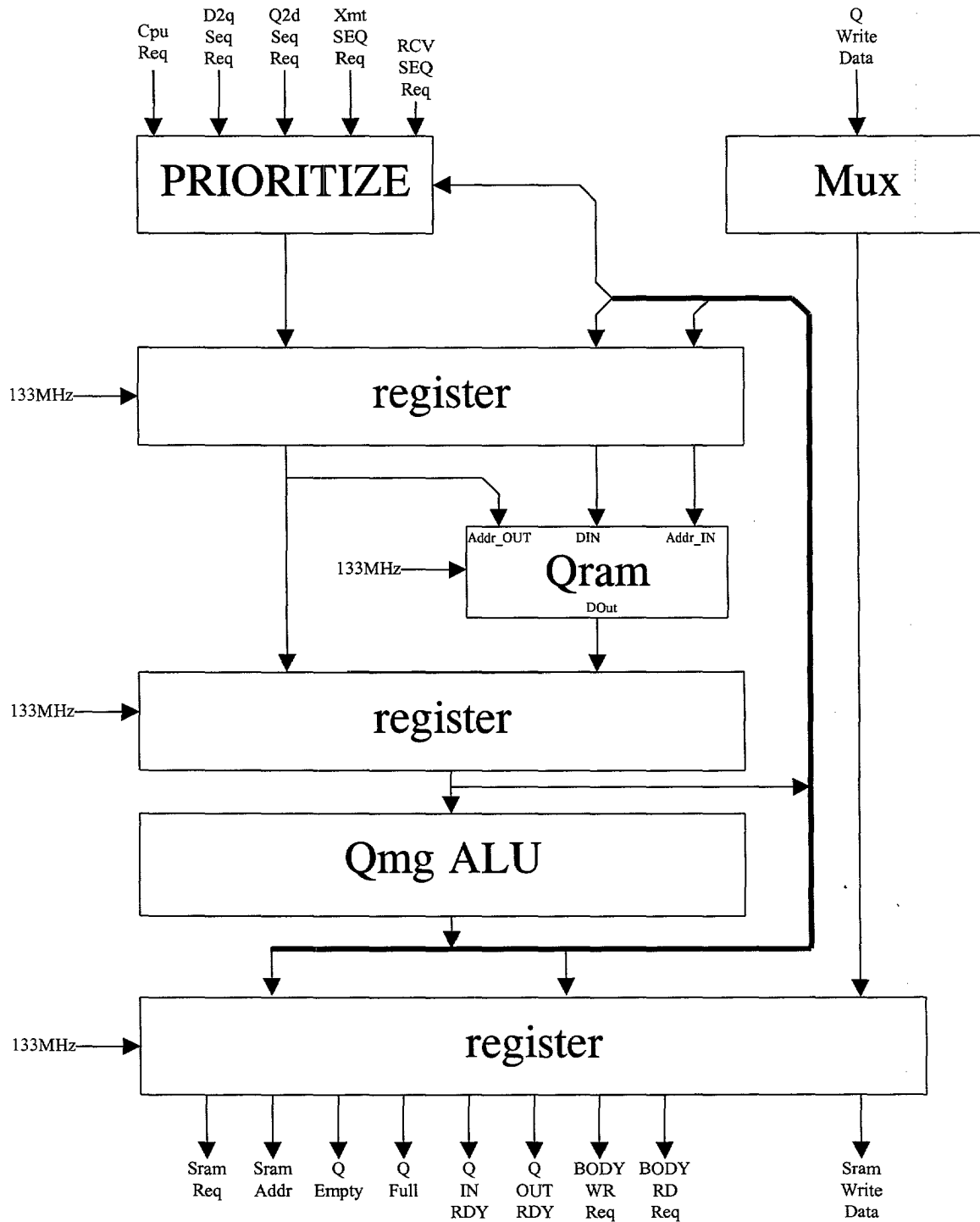
**Qmg** accepts operations from both Cpu and dma sources. Executing these operations at a frequency of 133MHz, **Qmg** reserves even cycles for dma requests and reserves odd cycles for Cpu requests. Valid Cpu operations include initialize queue (**InitQ**), write queue (**WrQ**) and read queue (**RdQ**). Valid dma requests include read body (**RdBdy**) and write body (**WrBdy**). **Qmg** working in unison with **Q2d** and **D2q** generate requests to the **Xwr** and **Xrd** sequencers to control the movement of data between the **QHd**, **QTI** and **QBdy**.

The preceding block diagram shows the major functions of **Qmg**. The arbiter selects the next operation to be performed. The dual-ported Sram holds the queue variables **HdWrAddr**, **HdRdAddr**, **TIWrAddr**, **TIRdAddr**, **BdyWrAddr**, **BdyRdAddr** and **Qsz**. **Qmg** accepts an operation request, fetches the queue variables from the queue ram (**Qram**), modifies the variables based on the current state and the requested operation then updates the variables and issues a read or write request to the Sram controller. The Sram controller services the requests by writing the tail or reading the head and returning an acknowledge.





# QUEUE MANAGER (Qmg)



## DMA OPERATIONS

DMA operations are accomplished through a combination of thirtytwo dma channels (**DmaCh**) and seven dma sequencers (**DmaSeq**). Each dma channel provides a mechanism whereby a Cpu can issue a command to any of the seven dma sequencers. Where as the dma channels are multi-purpose, the dma sequencers they command are single purpose as follows.

| <u>dma seq #</u> | <u>name</u>   | <u>description</u>                  |
|------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0                | none          | This is a no operation address.     |
| 1                | <b>D2dSeq</b> | Moves data from ExtMem to ExtMem.   |
| 2                | <b>D2sSeq</b> | Moves data from ExtMem bus to sram. |
| 3                | <b>D2pSeq</b> | Moves data from ExtMem to Pci bus.  |
| 4                | <b>S2dSeq</b> | Moves data from sram to ExtMem.     |
| 5                | <b>S2pSeq</b> | Moves data from sram to Pci bus.    |
| 6                | <b>P2dSeq</b> | Moves data from Pci bus to ExtMem.  |
| 7                | <b>P2sSeq</b> | Moves data from Pci bus to sram.    |

The processors manage dma in the following way. The processor writes a dma descriptor to an Sram location reserved for the dma channel. The format of the dma descriptor is dependent upon the targeted dma sequencer. The processor then writes the dma sequencer number to the channel command register.

Each of the dma sequencers polls all thirtytwo dma channels in search of commands to execute. Once a command request has been detected, the dma sequencer fetches a dma descriptor from a fixed location in Sram. The Sram location is fixed and is determined by the dma channel number. The dma sequencer loads the dma descriptor in to it's own registers, executes the command, then overwrites the dma descriptor with ending status. Once the command has halted, due to completion or error, and the ending status has been written, the dma sequencer sets the done bit for the current dma channel.

The done bit appears in a dma event register which the Cpu can examine. The Cpu fetches ending status from Sram, then clears the done bit by writing zeroes to the channel command (**ChCmd**) register. The channel is now ready to accept another command.

The format of all channel command registers is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>  | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|--------------|---|
| 31:11      | reserved     | Data written to these bits is ignored.  |
| 10:8       | <b>ChCmd</b> | 0 - Stops execution of the current operation and clears the corresponding event flag.<br>1 - Transfer data from ExtMem to ExtMem.<br>2 - Transfer data from ExtMem bus to sram.<br>3 - Transfer data from ExtMem to Pci bus.<br>4 - Transfer data from sram to ExtMem.<br>5 - Transfer data from sram to Pci bus.<br>6 - Transfer data from Pci bus to ExtMem.<br>7 - Transfer data from Pci bus to Sram. |
| 07:05      | reserved     | Data written to these bits is ignored.  |
| 04:00      | <b>ChId</b>  | Provides the channel number for the channel command.  |

"SECRET" 4949

The format of the **P2d** or **P2s** descriptor is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>      | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|------------------|---|
| 127:96     | <b>PciAddrH</b>  | Bits [63:32] of the Pci address.  |
| 95:64      | <b>PciAddrL</b>  | Bits [31:00] of the Pci address.  |
| 59:32      | <b>MemAddr</b>   | Bits [27:00] of the ExtMem address or bits [15:00] of the Sram address. |
| 31         | <b>PciEndian</b> | When set, selects big endian mode for Pci transfers.                    |
| 30         | <b>WideDbl</b>   | When set, disables Pci 64-bit mode.                                     |
| 22         | <b>DstFlash</b>  | Selects Flash for the external memory destination of <b>P2d</b> .       |
| 15:00      | <b>XfrSz</b>     | Bits [15:00] of the requested dma size expressed in bytes.              |

The format of the **S2p** or **D2p** descriptor is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>      | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|------------------|---|
| 123:96     | <b>MemAddr</b>   | Bits [27:00] of the ExtMem address or bits [15:00] of the Sram address. |
| 95:64      | <b>PciAddrH</b>  | Bits [63:32] of the Pci address.  |
| 63:32      | <b>PciAddrL</b>  | Bits [31:00] of the Pci address.  |
| 30         | <b>SrcFlash</b>  | Selects Flash for the external memory source of <b>D2p</b> .            |
| 23         | <b>PciEndian</b> | When set, selects big endian mode for Pci transfers.                    |
| 22         | <b>WideDbl</b>   | When set, disables Pci 64-bit mode.                                     |
| 15:00      | <b>XfrSz</b>     | Bits [15:00] of the requested dma size expressed in bytes.              |

The format of the **S2d**, **D2d** or **D2s** descriptor is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>     | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-----------------|---|
| 127:124    | <b>reserved</b> | Reserved for future use.  |
| 123:96     | <b>SrcAddr</b>  | Bits [27:00] of the ExtMem address or bits [15:00] of the Sram address.         |
| 95:60      | <b>reserved</b> | Reserved for future use.  |
| 59:32      | <b>DstAddr</b>  | Bits [27:00] of the ExtMem address or bits [15:00] of the Sram address.         |
| 30         | <b>FlashSel</b> | Selects Flash for the external memory source of <b>D2d</b> or <b>D2s</b> .      |
| 22         | <b>FlashSel</b> | Selects Flash for the external memory destination of <b>S2p</b> or <b>D2d</b> . |
| 15:00      | <b>XfrSz</b>    | Bits [15:00] of the requested dma size expressed in bytes.                      |

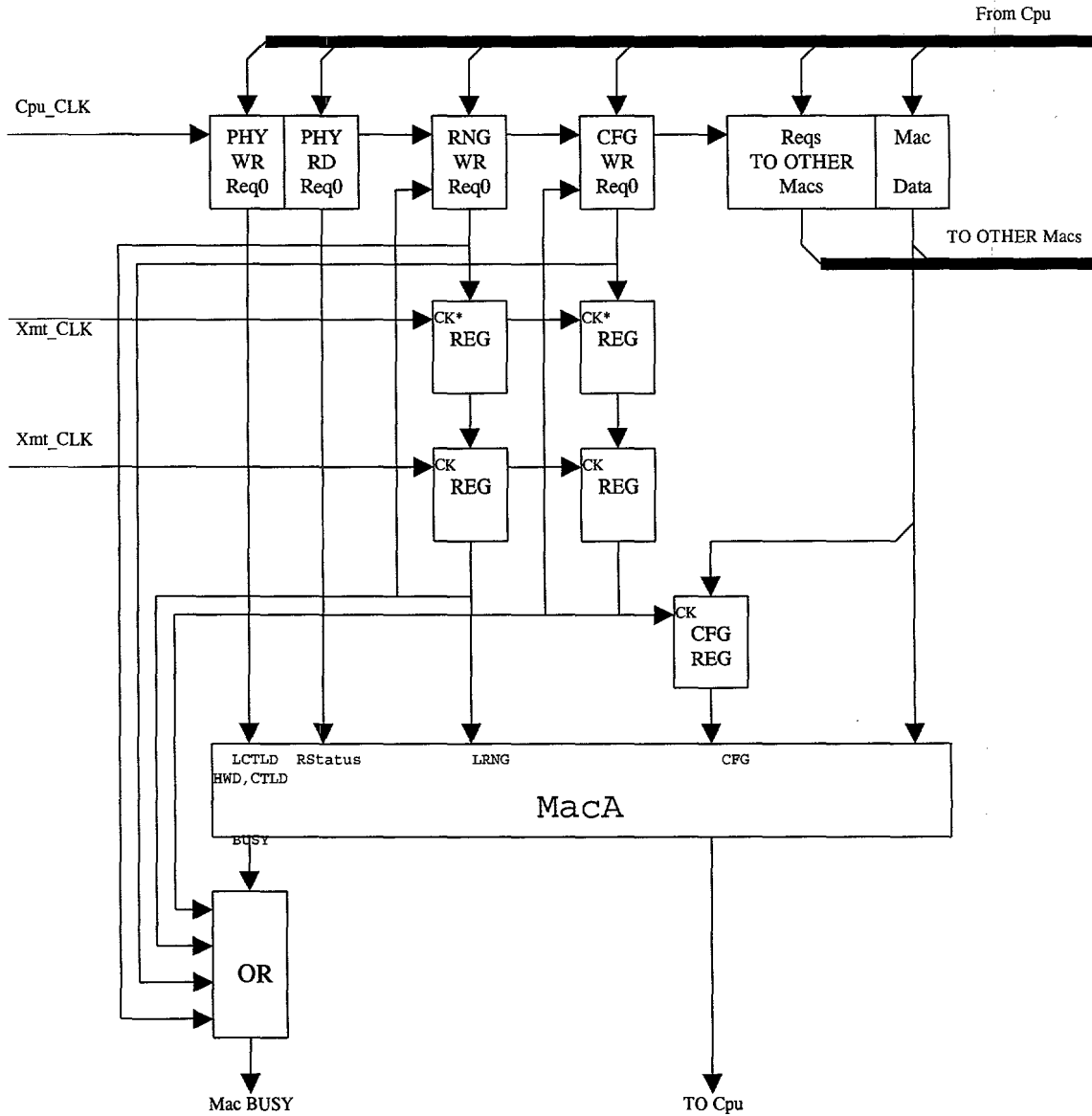
The format of the ending status or all channels is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>      | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|------------------|---|
| 127:64     | <b>reserved</b>  | Not used.   |
| 63:32      | <b>ChkSum</b>    | Represents the 1's compliment sum of all halfwords transferred during a <b>P2d</b> or <b>D2d</b> operation only.      |
| 31:24      | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future use.  |
| 23:20      | <b>SrcStatus</b> | TBD.  |
| 19:16      | <b>DstStatus</b> | TBD.  |
| 15:00      | <b>XfrSz</b>     | Bits [15:00] of the residual dma size expressed in bytes. This value will be zero if the dma operation was successful |

The format of the **ChEvnt** register is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|-------------|--|
| 31:00      | <b>ChDn</b> | Each bit represents the done flag for the respective dma channel. These bits are set by a dma sequencer upon completion of the channel command. Cleared when the processor writes 0 to the corresponding <b>ChCmd</b> register <b>ChCmdOp</b> field. |

# MAC CONTROL (Macctrl)



## Appendix A

The following load calculations are based on the following basic formulae:

$N = X * R$  (Little's Law) where

N = number of jobs in the system (either in progress or in a queue),

X = system throughput,

R = response time (which includes time waiting in queues).

$U = X * S$  (from Little's Law) where

S = service time,

U = utilization.

$R = S / (1-U)$  for exponential service times (which is the worst-case assumption).

A 256 byte frame at 100Mb/sec takes 20  $\mu$ sec per frame.

4 \* 100 Mbit ethernets receiving at full frame rate is:

51200 (4 \* 12800) frames/sec @ 1024 bytes/frame

102000 frames/sec @ 512 bytes/frame

204000 frames/sec @ 256 bytes/frame.

The following calculations assume 250 instructions/frame, 45nsec clock. Thus

$S = 250 * 45 \text{ nsecs} = 11.2 \mu\text{secs}$ .

| Av. Frame Size | Thruput<br>(X) | Utilization<br>(U) | Response<br>(R) | Nbr. in system<br>(N) |
|----------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1024           | 51200          | .57                | 26 usecs        | 1.3                   |
| 512            | 102000         | > 1                | --              | --                    |
| 256            | 204000         | > 1                | --              | --                    |

Lets look at it for varying instructions per frame assuming 512 bytes per frame average.

| Instns<br>Per Frame | Service<br>Time (S) | Thruput<br>(X) | Utilization<br>(U) | Response<br>(R) | Nbr. in system<br>(N) |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 250                 | 11.2 usec           | 102000         | > 1                | --              | --                    |
| 250                 | 11.2                | 85000 (*)      | .95                | 224 usecs       | 19                    |
| 250                 | 11.2                | 80000 (**)     | .89                | 101             | 8                     |
| 225                 | 10                  | 102000         | 1.0                | --              | --                    |
| 225                 | 10                  | 95000 (*)      | .95                | 200             | 19                    |
| 225                 | 10                  | 89000 (**)     | .89                | 90              | 8                     |
| 200                 | 9                   | 102000         | .9                 | 90              | 9                     |
| 150                 | 6.7                 | 102000         | .68                | 20              | 2                     |

(\*) shows what frame rate can be supported to get a utilization of less than 1.

(\*\*) shows what frame rate can be supported with 8 SRAM TCB buffers and at least 8 process contexts.

If 100 instructions / frame is used,  $S = 100 * 45 \text{ nsecs} = 4.5 \text{ usecs}$ , and we can support 256 byte frames:

|     |     |        |     |    |    |
|-----|-----|--------|-----|----|----|
| 100 | 4.5 | 204000 | .91 | 50 | 10 |
|-----|-----|--------|-----|----|----|

Firstly note that these calculations assume that response times increase exponentially as utilization increases. This is the worst-case assumption, and probably may not be true for our system.

The figures show that to support a theoretical full 4 \* 100 Mbit receive load with an average frame size of 512 bytes, there will need to be 19 active "jobs" in the system, assuming 250 instructions per frame. Due to SRAM limitations, the current design specifies 8 SRAM buffers for active TCBs, and not to swap a TCB out of SRAM once it is active. So under these limitations, the INIC will not be able to keep up with the full frame rate. Note that the initial implementation is trying to use only 8KB of SRAM, although 16KB may be available, in which case 19 TCB SRAM buffers could be used. This is a cost trade-off.


The real point here is the effect of instructions/frame on the throughput that can be maintained. If the instructions/frame drops to 200, then the INIC is capable of handling the full theoretical load (102000 frames/second) with only 9 active TCBs. If it drops to 100 instructions per frame, then the INIC can handle full bandwidth at 256 byte frames (204000 frames/second) with 10 active TCBs. The bottom line is that ALL hardware-assist that reduces the instructions/frame is really worthwhile. If header-assist hardware can save us 50 instructions per frame then it goes straight to the throughput bottom line.

---

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING UNDER 37 CFR 1.10

I hereby certify that this Provisional Patent Application is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee", label number EH756230105US, in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on October 14, 1997.

Date: October 14, 1997

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Mark Lauer  
(person mailing Application)

2025 RELEASE UNDER E.O. 14176

# INTELLIGENT NETWORK INTERFACE CARD AND SYSTEM FOR PROTOCOL PROCESSING

Provisional Patent Application Under 35 U.S.C. § 111 (b)

Inventors: Laurence B. Boucher  
Stephen E. J. Blightman  
Peter K. Craft  
David A. Higgin  
Clive M. Philbrick  
Daryl D. Starr

Assignee: Alacritech Corporation

## 1 Background of the Invention

Network processing as it exists today is a costly and inefficient use of system resources. A 200 MHz Pentium-Pro is typically consumed simply processing network data from a 100Mb/second-network connection. The reasons that this processing is so costly are described here.

### 1.1 Too Many Data Moves

When network packet arrives at a typical network interface card (NIC), the NIC moves the data into pre-allocated network buffers in system main memory. From there the data is read into the CPU cache so that it can be checksummed (assuming of course that the protocol in use requires checksums. Some, like IPX, do not.). Once the data has been fully processed by the protocol stack, it can then be moved into its final destination in memory. Since the CPU is moving the data, and must read the destination cache line in before it can fill it and write it back out, this involves at a minimum 2 more trips across the system memory bus. In short, the best one can hope for is that the data will get moved across the system memory bus 4 times before it arrives in its final destination. It can, and does, get worse. If the data happens to get invalidated from system cache after it has been checksummed, then it must get pulled back across the memory bus before it can be moved to its final destination. Finally, on some systems, including Windows NT 4.0, the data gets copied yet another time while being moved up the protocol stack. In NT 4.0, this occurs between the miniport driver interface and the protocol driver interface. This can add up to a whopping 8 trips across the system memory bus (the 4 trips described above, plus the move to replenish the cache, plus 3 more to copy from the miniport to the protocol driver). That's enough to bring even today's advanced memory busses to their knees.

## 1.2 Too Much Processing by the CPU

In all but the original move from the NIC to system memory, the system CPU is responsible for moving the data. This is particularly expensive because while the CPU is moving this data it can do nothing else. While moving the data the CPU is typically stalled waiting for the relatively slow memory to satisfy its read and write requests. A CPU, which can execute an instruction every 5 nanoseconds, must now wait as long as several hundred nanoseconds for the memory controller to respond before it can begin its next instruction. Even today's advanced pipelining technology doesn't help in these situations because that relies on the CPU being able to do useful work while it waits for the memory controller to respond. If the only thing the CPU has to look forward to for the next several hundred instructions is more data moves, then the CPU ultimately gets reduced to the speed of the memory controller.

Moving all this data with the CPU slows the system down even after the data has been moved. Since both the source and destination cache lines must be pulled into the CPU cache when the data is moved, more than 3k of instructions and or data resident in the CPU cache must be flushed or invalidated for every 1500 byte frame. This is of course assuming a combined instruction and data second level cache, as is the case with the Pentium processors. After the data has been moved, the former resident of the cache will likely need to be pulled back in, stalling the CPU even when we are not performing network processing. Ideally a system would never have to bring network frames into the CPU cache, instead reserving that precious commodity for instructions and data that are referenced repeatedly and frequently.

But the data movement is not the only drain on the CPU. There is also a fair amount of processing that must be done by the protocol stack software. The most obvious expense is calculating the checksum for each TCP segment (or UDP datagram). Beyond this, however, there is other processing to be done as well. The TCP connection object must be located when a given TCP segment arrives, IP header checksums must be calculated, there are buffer and memory management issues, and finally there is also the significant expense of interrupt processing which we will discuss in the following section.

## 1.3 Too Many Interrupts

A 64k SMB request (write or read-reply) is typically made up of 44 TCP segments when running over Ethernet (1500 byte MTU). Each of these segments may result in an interrupt to the CPU. Furthermore, since TCP must acknowledge all of this incoming data, it's possible to get another 44 transmit-complete interrupts as a result of sending out the TCP acknowledgements. While this is possible, it is not terribly likely. Delayed ACK timers allow us to acknowledge more than one segment at a time. And delays in interrupt processing may mean that we are able to process more than one incoming network frame per interrupt. Nevertheless, even if we assume 4 incoming frames per input, and an acknowledgement for every 2 segments (as is typical per the ACK-every-other-segment property of TCP), we are still left with 33 interrupts per 64k SMB request.

Interrupts tend to be very costly to the system. Often when a system is interrupted, important information must be flushed or invalidated from the system cache so that the interrupt routine instructions, and needed data can be pulled into the cache. Since the



CPU will return to its prior location after the interrupt, it is likely that the information flushed from the cache will immediately need to be pulled back into the cache.

What's more, interrupts force a pipeline flush in today's advanced processors. While the processor pipeline is an extremely efficient way of improving CPU performance, it can be expensive to get going after it has been flushed.

Finally, each of these interrupts results in expensive register accesses across the peripheral bus (PCI). This is discussed more in the following section.

#### **1.4 Inefficient Use of the Peripheral Bus (PCI)**

We noted earlier that when the CPU has to access system memory, it may be stalled for several hundred nanoseconds. When it has to read from PCI, it may be stalled for many microseconds. This happens every time the CPU takes an interrupt from a standard NIC. The first thing the CPU must do when it receives one of these interrupts is to read the NIC Interrupt Status Register (ISR) from PCI to determine the cause of the interrupt. The most troubling thing about this is that since interrupt lines are shared on PC-based systems, we may have to perform this expensive PCI read even when the interrupt is not meant for us!

There are other peripheral bus inefficiencies as well. Typical NICs operate using descriptor rings. When a frame arrives, the NIC reads a receive descriptor from system memory to determine where to place the data. Once the data has been moved to main memory, the descriptor is then written back out to system memory with status about the received frame. Transmit operates in a similar fashion. The CPU must notify that NIC that it has a new transmit. The NIC will read the descriptor to locate the data, read the data itself, and then write the descriptor back with status about the send. Typically on transmits the NIC will then read the next expected descriptor to see if any more data needs to be sent. In short, each receive or transmit frame results in 3 or 4 separate PCI reads or writes (not counting the status register read).

## **2 Summary of the Invention**

Alacritech was formed with the idea that the network processing described above could be offloaded onto a cost-effective Intelligent Network Interface Card (INIC). With the Alacritech INIC, we address each of the above problems, resulting in the following advancements:

1. The vast majority of the data is moved directly from the INIC into its final destination. A single trip across the system memory bus.
2. There is no header processing, little data copying, and no checksumming required by the CPU. Because of this, the data is never moved into the CPU cache, allowing the system to keep important instructions and data resident in the CPU cache.
3. Interrupts are reduced to as little as 4 interrupts per 64k SMB read and 2 per 64k SMB write.
4. There are no CPU reads over PCI and there are fewer PCI operations per receive or transmit transaction.

In the remainder of this document we will describe how we accomplish the above.

60051509 "101497  
454497" 60051509

## 2.1 Perform Transport Level Processing on the INIC

In order to keep the system CPU from having to process the packet headers or checksum the packet, we must perform this task on the INIC. This is a daunting task. There are more than 20,000 lines of C code that make up the FreeBSD TCP/IP protocol stack. Clearly this is more code than could be efficiently handled by a competitively priced network card. Furthermore, as we've noted above, the TCP/IP protocol stack is complicated enough to consume a 200 MHz Pentium-Pro. Clearly in order to perform this function on an inexpensive card, we need special network processing hardware as opposed to simply using a general purpose CPU.

### 2.1.1 Only Support TCP/IP

In this section we introduce the notion of a "context". A context is required to keep track of information that spans many, possibly discontinuous, pieces of information. When processing TCP/IP data, there are actually two contexts that must be maintained. The first context is required to reassemble IP fragments. It holds information about the status of the IP reassembly as well as any checksum information being calculated across the IP datagram (UDP or TCP). This context is identified by the IP\_ID of the datagram as well as the source and destination IP addresses. The second context is required to handle the sliding window protocol of TCP. It holds information about which segments have been sent or received, and which segments have been acknowledged, and is identified by the IP source and destination addresses and TCP source and destination ports.

If we were to choose to handle both contexts in hardware, we would have to potentially keep track of many pieces of information. One such example is a case in which a single 64k SMB write is broken down into 44 1500 byte TCP segments, which are in turn broken down into 131 576 byte IP fragments, all of which can come in any order (though the maximum window size is likely to restrict the number of outstanding segments considerably).

Fortunately, TCP performs a Maximum Segment Size negotiation at connection establishment time, which should prevent IP fragmentation in nearly all TCP connections. The only time that we should end up with fragmented TCP connections is when there is a router in the middle of a connection which must fragment the segments to support a smaller MTU. The only networks that use a smaller MTU than Ethernet are serial line interfaces such as SLIP and PPP. At the moment, the fastest of these connections only run at 128k (ISDN) so even if we had 256 of these connections, we would still only need to support 34Mb/sec, or a little over three 10bT connections worth of data. This is not enough to justify any performance enhancements that the INIC offers. If this becomes an issue at some point, we may decide to implement the MTU discovery algorithm, which should prevent TCP fragmentation on all connections (unless an ICMP redirect changes the connection route while the connection is established).

With this in mind, it seems a worthy sacrifice to not attempt to handle fragmented TCP segments on the INIC.

UDP is another matter. Since UDP does not support the notion of a Maximum Segment Size, it is the responsibility of IP to break down a UDP datagram into MTU sized

464707"508T9009

packets. Thus, fragmented UDP datagrams are very common. The most common UDP application running today is NFSV2 over UDP. While this is also the most common version of NFS running today, the current version of Solaris being sold by Sun Microsystems runs NFSV3 over TCP by default. We can expect to see the NFSV2/UDP traffic start to decrease over the coming years.

In summary, we will only offer assistance to non-fragmented TCP connections on the INIC.

### 2.1.2 Don't handle TCP "exceptions"

As noted above, we won't provide support for fragmented TCP segments on the INIC. We have also opted to not handle TCP connection and breakdown. Here is a list of other TCP "exceptions" which we have elected to not handle on the INIC:

Fragmented Segments – Discussed above.

Retransmission Timeout – Occurs when we do not get an acknowledgement for previously sent data within the expected time period.

Out of order segments – Occurs when we receive a segment with a sequence number other than the next expected sequence number.

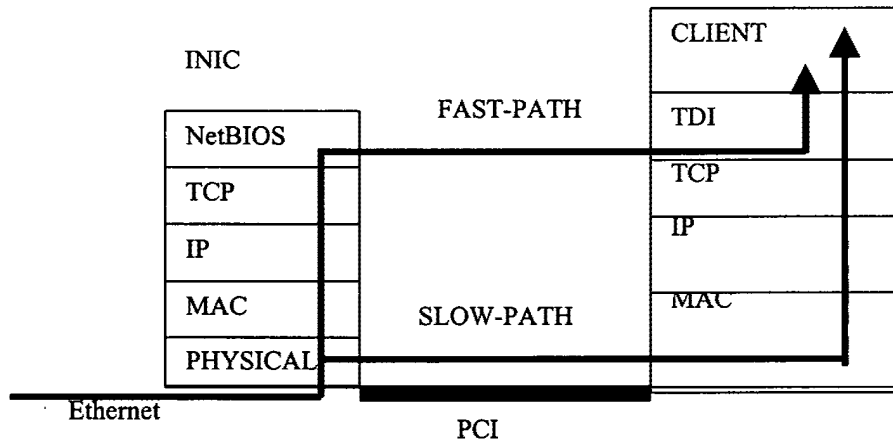
FIN segment – Signals the close of the connection.

Since we have now eliminated support for so many different code paths, it might seem hardly worth the trouble to provide any assistance by the card at all. This is not the case. According to W. Richard Stevens and Gary Write in their book "TCP/IP Illustrated Volume 2", TCP operates without experiencing any exceptions between 97 and 100 percent of the time in local area networks. As network, router, and switch reliability improve this number is likely to only improve with time.

20061909 10149

### 2.1.3 Two modes of operation

So the next question is what to do about the network packets that do not fit our criteria. The answer is to use two modes of operation: One in which the network frames are processed on the INIC through TCP and one in which the card operates like a typical dumb NIC. We call these two modes fast-path, and slow-path. In the slow-path case, network frames are handed to the system at the MAC layer and passed up through the host protocol stack like any other network frame. In the fast path case, network data is given to the host after the headers have been processed and stripped.



The transmit case works in much the same fashion. In slow-path mode the packets are given to the INIC with all of the headers attached. The INIC simply sends these packets out as if it were a dumb NIC. In fast-path mode, the host gives raw data to the INIC which it must carve into MSS sized segments, add headers to the data, perform checksums on the segment, and then send it out on the wire.

### 2.1.4 The TCB cache

Consider a situation in which a TCP connection is being handled by the card and a fragmented TCP segment for that connection arrives. In this situation, it will be necessary for the card to turn control of this connection over to the host.

This introduces the notion of a Transmit Control Block (TCB) cache. A TCB is a structure that contains the entire context associated with a connection. This includes the source and destination IP addresses and source and destination TCP ports that define the connection. It also contains information about the connection itself such as the current send and receive sequence numbers, and the first-hop MAC address, etc. The complete set of TCBs exists in host memory, but a subset of these may be "owned" by the card at any given time. This subset is the TCB cache. The INIC can own up to 256 TCBs at any given time.

TCBs are initialized by the host during TCP connection setup. Once the connection has achieved a "steady-state" of operation, its associated TCB can then be turned over to the INIC, putting us into fast-path mode. From this point on, the INIC owns the connection until either a FIN arrives signaling that the connection is being closed, or until an

exception occurs which the INIC is not designed to handle (such as an out of order segment). When any of these conditions occur, the INIC will then flush the TCB back to host memory, and issue a message to the host telling it that it has relinquished control of the connection, thus putting the connection back into slow-path mode. From this point on, the INIC simply hands incoming segments that are destined for this TCB off to the host with all of the headers intact.

Note that when a connection is owned by the INIC, the host is not allowed to reference the corresponding TCB in host memory as it will contain invalid information about the state of the connection.

### 2.1.5 TCP hardware assistance

When a frame is received by the INIC, it must verify it completely before it even determines whether it belongs to one of its TCBS or not. This includes all header validation (is it IP, IPV4 or V6, is the IP header checksum correct, is the TCP checksum correct, etc). Once this is done it must compare the source and destination IP address and the source and destination TCP port with those in each of its TCBS to determine if it is associated with one of its TCBS. This is an expensive process. To expedite this, we have added several features in hardware to assist us. The header is fully parsed by hardware and its type is summarized in a single status word. The checksum is also verified automatically in hardware, and a hash key is created out of the IP addresses and TCP ports to expedite TCB lookup. For full details on these and other hardware optimizations, refer to the INIC Hardware Specification sections (Heading 8).

With the aid of these and other hardware features, much of the work associated with TCP is done essentially for free. Since the card will automatically calculate the checksum for TCP segments, we can pass this on to the host, even when the segment is for a TCB that the INIC does not own.

### 2.1.6 TCP Summary

By moving TCP processing down to the INIC we have offloaded the host of a large amount of work. The host no longer has to pull the data into its cache to calculate the TCP checksum. It does not have to process the packet headers, and it does not have to generate TCP ACKs. We have achieved most of the goals outlined above, but we are not done yet.

## 2.2 Transport Layer Interface

This section defines the INIC's relation to the hosts transport layer interface (Called TDI or Transport Driver Interface in Windows NT). For full details on this interface, refer to the Alacritech TCP (ATCP) driver specification (Heading 4).

### 2.2.1 Receive

Simply implementing TCP on the INIC does not allow us to achieve our goal of landing the data in its final destination. Somehow the host has to tell the INIC where to put the data. This is a problem in that the host can not do this without knowing what the data

actually *is*. Fortunately, NT has provided a mechanism by which a transport driver can "indicate" a small amount of data to a client above it while telling it that it has more data to come. The client, having then received enough of the data to know what it is, is then responsible for allocating a block of memory and passing the memory address or addresses back down to the transport driver, which is in turn responsible for moving the data into the provided location.

We will make use of this feature by providing a small amount of any received data to the host, with a notification that we have more data pending. When this small amount of data is passed up to the client, and it returns with the address in which to put the remainder of the data, our host transport driver will pass that address to the INIC which will DMA the remainder of the data into its final destination.

Clearly there are circumstances in which this does not make sense. When a small amount of data (500 bytes for example), with a push flag set indicating that the data must be delivered to the client immediately, it does not make sense to deliver some of the data directly while waiting for the list of addresses to DMA the rest. Under these circumstances, it makes more sense to deliver the 500 bytes directly to the host, and allow the host to copy it into its final destination. While various ranges are feasible, it is currently preferred that anything less than a segment's (1500 bytes) worth of data will be delivered directly to the host, while anything more will be delivered as a small piece which may be 128 bytes, while waiting until receiving the destination memory address before moving the rest.

The trick then is knowing when the data should be delivered to the client or not. As we've noted, a push flag indicates that the data should be delivered to the client immediately, but this alone is not sufficient. Fortunately, in the case of NetBIOS transactions (such as SMB), we are explicitly told the length of the session message in the NetBIOS header itself. With this we can simply indicate a small amount of data to the host immediately upon receiving the first segment. The client will then allocate enough memory for the entire NetBIOS transaction, which we can then use to DMA the remainder of the data into as it arrives. In the case of a large (56k for example) NetBIOS session message, all but the first couple hundred bytes will be DMA'd to their final destination in memory.

But what about applications that do not reside above NetBIOS? In this case we can not rely on a session level protocol to tell us the length of the transaction. Under these circumstances we will buffer the data as it arrives until A) we have receive some predetermined number of bytes such as 8k, or B) some predetermined period of time passes between segments or C) we get a push flag. If after any of these conditions occur we will then indicate some or all of the data to the host depending on the amount of data buffered. If the data buffered is greater than about 1500 bytes we must then also wait for the memory address to be returned from the host so that we may then DMA the remainder of the data.

### 2.2.2 Transmit

The transmit case is much simpler. In this case the client (NetBIOS for example) issues a TDI Send with a list of memory addresses which contain data that it wishes to send along

50051809 "10149"

with the length. The host can then pass this list of addresses and length off to the INIC. The INIC will then pull the data from its source location in host memory, as it needs it, until the complete TDI request is satisfied.

### 2.2.3 Affect on interrupts

Note that when we receive a large SMB transaction, for example, that there are two interactions between the INIC and the host. The first in which the INIC indicates a small amount of the transaction to the host, and the second in which the host provides the memory location(s) in which the INIC places the remainder of the data. This results in only two interrupts from the INIC. The first when it indicates the small amount of data and the second after it has finished filling in the host memory given to it. A drastic reduction from the 33/64k SMB request that we estimate at the beginning of this section.

On transmit, we actually only receive a single interrupt when the send command that has been given to the INIC completes.

### 2.2.4 Transport Layer Interface Summary

Having now established our interaction with Microsoft's TDI interface, we have achieved our goal of landing most of our data directly into its final destination in host memory. We have also managed to transmit all data from its original location on host memory. And finally, we have reduced our interrupts to 2 per 64k SMB read and 1 per 64k SMB write. The only thing that remains in our list of objectives is to design an efficient host (PCI) interface.

## 2.3 Host (PCI) Interface

In this section we define the host interface. For a more detailed description, refer to the "Host Interface Strategy for the Alacritech INIC" section (Heading 3).

### 2.3.1 Avoid PCI reads

One of our primary objectives in designing the host interface of the INIC was to eliminate PCI reads in either direction. PCI reads are particularly inefficient in that they completely stall the reader until the transaction completes. As we noted above, this could hold a CPU up for several microseconds, a thousand times the time typically required to execute a single instruction. PCI writes on the other hand, are usually buffered by the memory-bus $\leftrightarrow$ PCI-bridge allowing the writer to continue on with other instructions. This technique is known as "posting".

#### 2.3.1.1 Memory-based status register

The only PCI read that is required by most NICs is the read of the interrupt status register. This register gives the host CPU information about what event has caused an interrupt (if any). In the design of our INIC we have elected to place this necessary status register into host memory. Thus, when an event occurs on the INIC, it writes the status register to an agreed upon location in host memory. The corresponding driver on the host reads this local register to determine the cause of the interrupt. The interrupt lines are

held high until the host clears the interrupt by writing to the INIC's Interrupt Clear Register. Shadow registers are maintained on the INIC to ensure that events are not lost.

### 2.3.1.2 Buffer Addresses are pushed to the INIC

Since it is imperative that our INIC operate as efficiently as possible, we must also avoid PCI reads from the INIC. We do this by pushing our receive buffer addresses to the INIC. As mentioned at the beginning of this section, most NICs work on a descriptor queue algorithm in which the NIC reads a descriptor from main memory in order to determine where to place the next frame. We will instead write receive buffer addresses to the INIC as receive buffers are filled. In order to avoid having to write to the INIC for every receive frame, we instead allow the host to pass off a pages worth (4k) of buffers in a single write.

### 2.3.2 Support small and large buffers on receive

In order to reduce further the number of writes to the INIC, and to reduce the amount of memory being used by the host, we support two different buffer sizes. A small buffer contains roughly 200 bytes of data payload, as well as extra fields containing status about the received data bringing the total size to 256 bytes. We can therefore pass 16 of these small buffers at a time to the INIC. Large buffers are 2k in size. They are used to contain any fast or slow-path data that does not fit in a small buffer. Note that when we have a large fast-path receive, a small buffer will be used to indicate a small piece of the data, while the remainder of the data will be DMA'd directly into memory. Large buffers are never passed to the host by themselves, instead they are always accompanied by a small buffer which contains status about the receive along with the large buffer address. By operating in the manner, the driver must only maintain and process the small buffer queue. Large buffers are returned to the host by virtue of being attached to small buffers. Since large buffers are 2k in size they are passed to the INIC 2 buffers at a time.

### 2.3.3 Command and response buffers

In addition to needing a manner by which the INIC can pass incoming data to us, we also need a manner by which we can instruct the INIC to send data. Plus, when the INIC indicates a small amount of data in a large fast-path receive, we need a method of passing back the address or addresses in which to put the remainder of the data. We accomplish both of these with the use of a command buffer. Sadly, the command buffer is the only place in which we must violate our rule of only pushing data across PCI. For the command buffer, we write the address of command buffer to the INIC. The INIC then reads the contents of the command buffer into its memory so that it can execute the desired command. Since a command may take a relatively long time to complete, it is unlikely that command buffers will complete in order. For this reason we also maintain a response buffer queue. Like the small and large receive buffers, a page worth of response buffers is passed to the INIC at a time. Response buffers are only 32 bytes, so we have to replenish the INIC's supply of them relatively infrequently. The response buffers only purpose is to indicate the completion of the designated command buffer, and to pass status about the completion.

60061809-101497



## 2.4 Examples

In this section we will provide a couple of examples describing some of the differing data flows that we might see on the Alacritech INIC.

### 2.4.1 Fast-path 56k NetBIOS session message

Let's say a 56k NetBIOS session message is received on the INIC. The first segment will contain the NetBIOS header, which contains the total NetBIOS length. A small chunk of this first segment is provided to the host by filling in a small receive buffer, modifying the interrupt status register on the host, and raising the appropriate interrupt line. Upon receiving the interrupt, the host will read the ISR, clear it by writing back to the INIC's Interrupt Clear Register, and will then process its small receive buffer queue looking for receive buffers to be processed. Upon finding the small buffer, it will indicate the small amount of data up to the client to be processed by NetBIOS. It will also, if necessary, replenish the receive buffer pool on the INIC by passing off a pages worth of small buffers. Meanwhile, the NetBIOS client will allocate a memory pool large enough to hold the entire NetBIOS message, and will pass this address or set of addresses down to the transport driver. The transport driver will allocate an INIC command buffer, fill it in with the list of addresses, set the command type to tell the INIC that this is where to put the receive data, and then pass the command off to the INIC by writing to the command register. When the INIC receives the command buffer, it will DMA the remainder of the NetBIOS data, as it is received, into the memory address or addresses designated by the host. Once the entire NetBIOS transaction is complete, the INIC will complete the command by writing to the response buffer with the appropriate status and command buffer identifier.

In this example, we have two interrupts, and all but a couple hundred bytes are DMA'd directly to their final destination. On PCI we have two interrupt status register writes, two interrupt clear register writes, a command register write, a command read, and a response buffer write.

With a standard NIC this would result in an estimated 30 interrupts, 30 interrupt register reads, 30 interrupt clear writes, and 58 descriptor reads and writes. Plus the data will get moved anywhere from 4 to 8 times across the system memory bus.

### 2.4.2 Slow-path receive

If the INIC receives a frame that does not contain a TCP segment for one of its TCB's, it simply passes it to the host as if it were a dumb NIC. If the frame fits into a small buffer (~200 bytes or less), then it simply fills in the small buffer with the data and notifies the host. Otherwise it places the data in a large buffer, writes the address of the large buffer into a small buffer, and again notifies the host. The host, having received the interrupt and found the completed small buffer, checks to see if the data is contained in the small buffer, and if not, locates the large buffer. Having found the data, the host will then pass the frame upstream to be processed by the standard protocol stack. It must also replenish the INIC's small and large receive buffer pool if necessary.

With the INIC, this will result in one interrupt, one interrupt status register write and one interrupt clear register write as well as a possible small and or large receive buffer register write. The data will go through the normal path although if it is TCP data then the host will not have to perform the checksum.

With a standard NIC this will result in a single interrupt, an interrupt status register read, an interrupt clear register write, and a descriptor read and write. The data will get processed as it would by the INIC, except for a possible extra checksum.

### 2.4.3 Fast-path 400 byte send

In this example, lets assume that the client has a small amount of data to send. It will issue the TDI Send to the transport driver which will allocate a command buffer, fill it in with the address of the 400 byte send, and set the command to indicate that it is a transmit. It will then pass the command off to the INIC by writing to the command register. The INIC will then DMA the 400 bytes into its own memory, prepare a frame with the appropriate checksums and headers, and send the frame out on the wire. After it has received the acknowledgement it will then notify the host of the completion by writing to a response buffer.

With the INIC, this will result in one interrupt, one interrupt status register write, one interrupt clear register write, a command buffer register write a command buffer read, and a response buffer write. The data is DMA'd directly from the system memory.

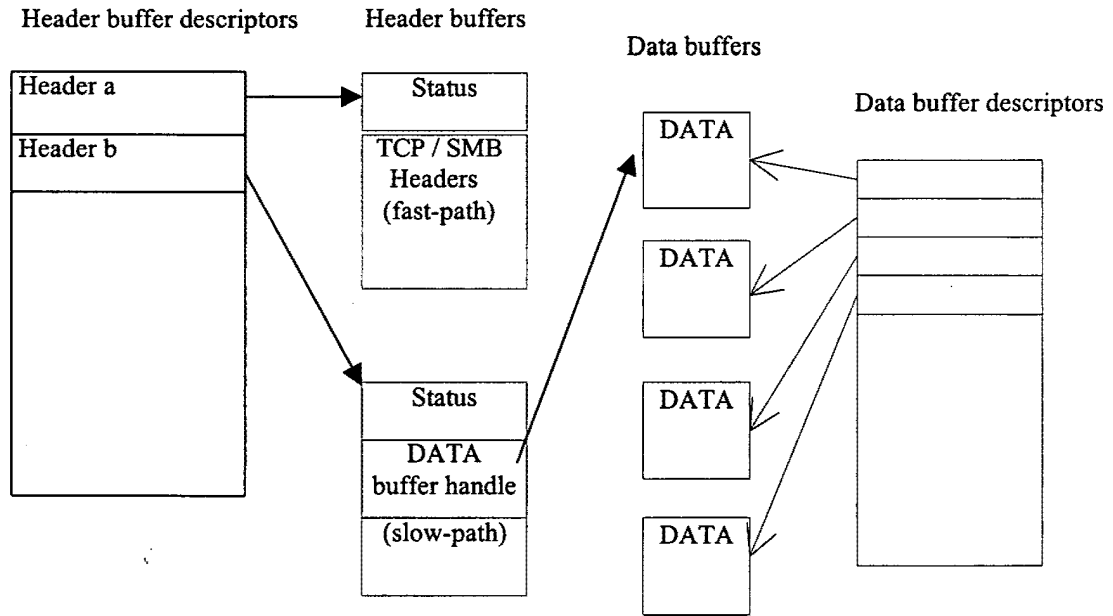
With a standard NIC this will result in a single interrupt, an interrupt status register read, an interrupt clear register write, and a descriptor read and write. The data would get moved across the system bus a minimum of 4 times. The resulting TCP ACK of the data, however, would add yet another interrupt, another interrupt status register read, interrupt clear register write, a descriptor read and write, and yet more processing by the host protocol stack.

## 3 Host Interface Strategy for the Alacritech INIC

This section describes the host interface strategy for the Alacritech Intelligent Network Interface Card (INIC). The goal of the Alacritech INIC is to not only process network data through TCP, but also to provide zero-copy support for the SMP upper-layer protocol. It achieves this by supporting two paths for sending and receiving data, the fast-path and the slow-path. The fast path data flow corresponds to connections that are maintained on the NIC, while slow-path traffic corresponds to network data for which the NIC does not have a connection. The fast-path flow works by passing a header to the host and subsequently holding further data for that connection on the card until the host responds via an INIC command with a set of buffers into which to place the accumulated data. In the slow-path data flow, the INIC will be operating as a "dumb" NIC, so that these packets are simply dumped into frame buffers on the host as they arrive. To do either path requires a pool of smaller buffers to be used for headers and a pool of data buffers for frames/data that are too large for the header buffer, with both pools being managed by the INIC. This section discusses how these two pools of data are managed as well as how buffers are associated with a given context.

### 3.1 Receive Interface

The varying requirements of the fast and slow paths and a desire to save PCI bandwidth are the driving forces behind the host interface that is described herein. As mentioned above, the fast-path flow puts a header into a header buffer that is then forwarded to the host. The host uses the header to determine what further data is following, allocates the necessary host buffers, and these are passed back to the INIC via a command to the INIC. The INIC then fills these buffers from data it was accumulating on the card and notifies the host by sending a response to the command. Alternatively, the fast-path may receive a header and data that is a complete request, but that is also too large for a header buffer. This results in a header and data buffer being passed to the host. This latter flow is identical to the slow-path flow, which also puts all the data into the header buffer or, if the header is too small, uses a large (2K) host buffer for all the data. This means that on the unsolicited receive path, the host will only see either a header buffer or a header and at most, one data buffer. Note that data is never split between a header and a data buffer. The diagram below illustrates both situations:



Since we want to fill in the header buffer with a single DMA, the header must be the last piece of data to be written to the host for any received transaction.

#### 3.1.1 Receive Interface Details

#### 3.1.2 Header Buffers

Header buffers in host memory are 256 bytes long, and are aligned on 256 byte boundaries. There will be a field in the header buffer indicating it has valid data. This field will initially be reset by the host before passing the buffer descriptor to the INIC. A

set of header buffers are passed from the host to the INIC by the host writing to the *Header Buffer Address Register* on the INIC. This register is defined as follows:

Bits 31-8            Physical address in host memory of the first of a set of contiguous header buffers

Bits 7-0            Number of header buffers passed.

In this way the host can, say, allocate 16 buffers in a 4K page, and pass all 16 buffers to the INIC with one register write. The INIC will maintain a queue of these header descriptors in the SmallHType queue in it's own local memory, adding to the end of the queue every time the host writes to the *Header Buffer Address Register*. Note that the single entry is added to the queue; the eventual dequeuer will use the count after extracting that entry.

The header buffers, will be used and returned to the host in the same order that they were given to the INIC. The valid field will be set by the INIC before returning the buffer to the host. In this way a PCI interrupt, with a single bit in the interrupt register, may be generated to indicate that there is a header buffer for the host to process. When servicing this interrupt, the host will look at its queue of header buffers, reading the valid field to determine how many header buffers are to be processed.

### 3.1.3 Receive Data Buffers

Receive data buffers in host memory are aligned to page boundaries, assumed here to be 2K bytes long and aligned on 4K page boundaries, 2 buffers per page. In order to pass receive data buffers to the INIC, the host must write to two registers on the INIC. The first register to be written is the *Data Buffer Handle Register*. The buffer handle is not significant to the INIC, but will be copied back to the host to return the buffer to the host. The second register written is the *Data Buffer Address Register*. This is the physical address of the data buffer. When both registers have been written, the INIC will add the contents of these two registers to FreeType queue of data buffer descriptors. Note that the INIC host driver sets the handle register first, then the address register. There needs to be some mechanism put in place to ensure the reading of these registers does not get out of sync with writing them. Effectively the INIC can read the address register first and save its contents, then read the handle register. It can then lock the register pair in some manner such that another write to the handle register is not permitted until the current contents have been saved. Both addresses extracted from the registers are to be written to the FreeType queue. The INIC will extract 2 entries each time when dequeuing.

Data buffers will be allocated and used by the INIC as needed. For each data buffer used by a slow-path transaction, the data buffer handle will be copied into a header buffer. Then the header buffer will be returned to the host.

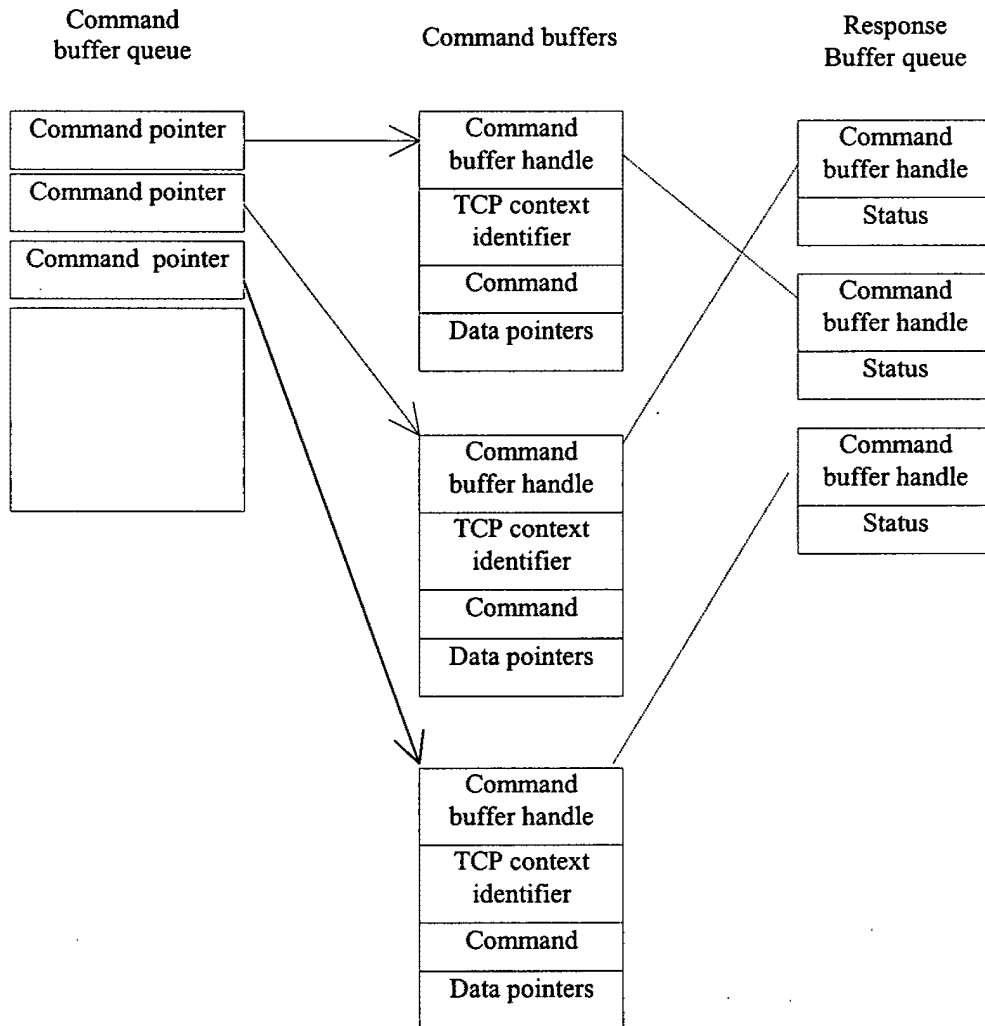
## 3.2 Transmit Interface

### 3.2.1 Transmit Interface Overview

The transmit interface, like the receive interface, has been designed to minimize the amount of PCI bandwidth and latencies. In order to transmit data, the host will transfer a command buffer to the INIC. This command buffer will include a command buffer

handle, a command field, possibly a TCP context identification, and a list of physical data pointers. The command buffer handle is defined to be the first word of the command buffer and is used by the host to identify the command. This word will be passed back to the host in a response buffer, since commands may complete out of order, and the host will need to know which command is complete. Commands will be used for many reasons, but primarily to cause the INIC to transmit data, or to pass a set of buffers to the INIC for input data on the fast-path as previously discussed.

Response buffers are physical buffers in host memory. They are used by the INIC in the same order as they were given to it by the host. This enables the host to know which response buffer(s) to next look at when the INIC signals a command completion.



"HOT" 6091309

## 3.2.2 Transmit Interface Details

### 3.2.2.1 Command Buffers

Command buffers in host memory are a multiple of 32 bytes, up to a maximum of 1K bytes, and are aligned on 32 byte boundaries. A command buffer is passed to the INIC by writing to one of 5 *Command Buffer Address Registers*. These registers are defined as follows:

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| Bits 31-5 | Physical address in host memory of the command buffer.                        |
| Bits 4-0  | Length of command buffer in bytes / 32 (i.e. number of multiples of 32 bytes) |

This is the physical address of the command buffer. The register to which the command is written predetermines the XMT interface number, or if the command is for the RCV CPU; hence there will be 5 of them, 0 – 3 for XMT and 4 for RCV. When one of these registers has been written, the INIC will add the contents of the register to its own internal queue of command buffer descriptors. The first word of all command buffers is defined to be the command buffer handle. It is the job of the utility CPU to extract a command from its local queue, DMA the command into a small INIC buffer (from the FreeSType queue), and queue that buffer into the Xmit#Type queue, where # is 0 – 3 depending on the interface, or the appropriate RCV queue. The receiving CPU will service the queues to perform the commands. When that CPU has completed a command, it extracts the command buffer handle and passes it back to the host via a response buffer.

### 3.2.2.2 Response Buffers

Response buffers in host memory are 32 bytes long and aligned on 32 byte boundaries. They are handled in a very similar fashion to header buffers. There will be a field in the response buffer indicating it has valid data. This field will initially be reset by the host before passing the buffer descriptor to the INIC. A set of response buffers are passed from the host to the INIC by the host writing to the *Response Buffer Address Register* on the INIC. This register is defined as follows:

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Bits 31-8 | Physical address in host memory of the first of a set of contiguous response buffers |
| Bits 7-0  | Number of response buffers passed.   |

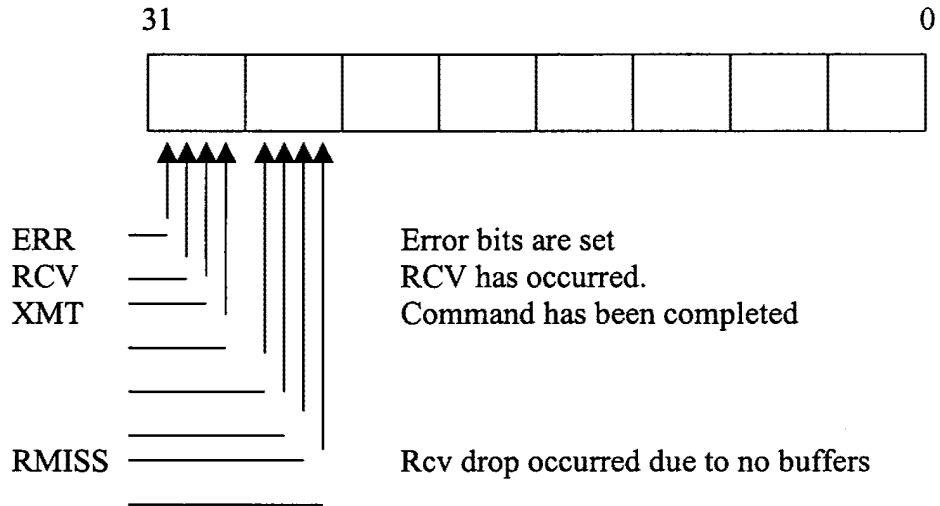
In this way the host can, say, allocate 128 buffers in a 4K page, and pass all 128 buffers to the INIC with one register write. The INIC will maintain a queue of these header descriptors in its ResponseType queue, adding to the end of the queue every time the host writes to the *Response Buffer Address Register*. The INIC writes the extracted contents including the count, to the queue in exactly the same manner as for the header buffers.

The response buffers can be used and returned to the host in the same order that they were given to the INIC. The valid field will be set by the INIC before returning the buffer

to the host. In this way a PCI interrupt, with a single bit in the interrupt register, may be generated to indicate that there is a response buffer for the host to process. When servicing this interrupt, the host will look at its queue of response buffers, reading the valid field to determine how many response buffers are to be processed.

### 3.2.3 Interrupt Status Register / Interrupt Mask Register:

The following is the general format of this register:



The setting of any bits in the ISR will cause an interrupt, provided the corresponding bit in the Interrupt Mask Register is set. The default setting for the IMR is 0.

The INIC is configured so that the host should never need to directly read the ISR from the INIC. To support this, it is important for the host/INIC to arrange a buffer area in host memory into which the ISR is dumped. The address and size of that area can be passed to the INIC via a command on the XMT interface. That command will also specify the setting for the IMR. Until the INIC receives this command, it will not DMA the ISR to host memory, and no events will cause an interrupt. The host could if necessary, read the ISR directly from the INIC in this case.

For the host to never have to actually read the register from the INIC itself, it is necessary for the INIC to update this host copy of the register whenever anything in it changes. The host will Ack (or deassert) events in the register by writing the register with 0's in appropriate bit fields. So that the host does not miss events, the following scheme has been developed:

The INIC keeps a local copy of the register whenever it DMA's it to the host i.e. after some event(s). Call this COPYA. Then the INIC starts accumulating any new events not reflected in the host copy in a separate word. Call this NEWA. As the host clears bits by writing the register back with those bits set to zero, the INIC clears these bits in COPYA (or the host write-back goes directly to COPYA). If there are new events in NEWA, it

4647016081909

ORs them with COPYA, and DMAs this new ISR to the host. This new ISR then replaces COPYA, NEWA is cleared and the cycle then repeats.

### 3.2.4 Register Addresses

For the sake of simplicity, in this example the registers are at 4-byte increments from whatever the base address is. Hence:

|       |      |                             |
|-------|------|-----------------------------|
| ISR   | 0x0  | Interrupt Status            |
| IMR   | 0x4  | Interrupt Mask              |
| HBAR  | 0x8  | Header Buffer Address       |
| DBHR  | 0xC  | Data Buffer Handle          |
| DBAR  | 0x10 | Data Buffer Address         |
| CBAR0 | 0x14 | Command Buffer Address XMT0 |
| CBAR1 | 0x18 | Command Buffer Address XMT1 |
| CBAR2 | 0x1C | Command Buffer Address XMT2 |
| CBAR3 | 0x20 | Command Buffer Address XMT3 |
| CBAR4 | 0x24 | Command Buffer Address RCV  |
| RBAR  | 0x28 | Response Buffer Address     |

## 4 Alacritech TCP (ATCP) Design Specification

This section outlines the design specification for the Alacritech TCP (ATCP) transport driver. The ATCP driver consists of three components:

1. The bulk of the protocol stack is based on the FreeBSD TCP/IP protocol stack. This code performs the Ethernet, ARP, IP, ICMP, and (slow path) TCP processing for the driver.
2. At the top of the protocol stack we introduce an NT filter driver used to intercept TDI requests destined for the Microsoft TCP driver.
3. At the bottom of the protocol stack we include an NDIS protocol-driver interface which allows us to communicate with the INIC miniport NDIS driver beneath the ATCP driver.

This section covers each of these topics, as well as issues common to the entire ATCP driver.

### 4.1 Coding style

In order to ensure that our ATCP driver is written in a consistent manner, we have adopted a set of coding guidelines. These guidelines are introduced with the philosophy that we should write code in a Microsoft style since we are introducing an NT-based product. The guidelines below apply to all code that we introduce into our driver. Since a very large portion of our ATCP driver will be based on FreeBSD, and since we are somewhat time-constrained on our driver development, the ported FreeBSD code will be exempt from these guidelines.



SECRET - 101497

1. Global symbols – All function names and global variables in the ATCP driver should begin with the “ATK” prefix (ATKSend() for instance).
2. Variable names – Microsoft seems to use capital letters to separate multi-word variable names instead of underscores (VariableName instead of variable\_name). We should adhere to this style.
3. Structure pointers – Microsoft typedefs all of their structures. The structure types are always capitals and they typedef a pointer to the structure as “P”<name> as follows:

```
typedef struct _FOO {
    INT bar;
} FOO, *PFOO;
We will adhere to this style.
```

4. Function calls – Microsoft separates function call arguments on separate lines:
 

```
X = foobar(
    argument1,
    argument2,
);
```

 We will adhere to this style.

5. Comments – While Microsoft seems to alternatively use // and /\* \*/ comment notation, we will exclusively use the /\* \*/ notation.
6. Function comments – Microsoft includes comments with each function that describe the function, its arguments, and its return value. We will also include these comments, but will move them from within the function itself to just prior to the function for better readability.
7. Function arguments – Microsoft includes the keywords IN and OUT when defining function arguments. These keywords denote whether the function argument is used as an input parameter, or alternatively as a placeholder for an output parameter. We will include these keywords.
8. Function prototypes – We will include function prototypes in the most logical header file corresponding to the .c file. For example, the prototype for function foo() found in foo.c will be placed in foo.h.
9. Indentation – Microsoft code fairly consistently uses a tabstop of 4. We will do likewise.
10. Header file #ifndef – each header file should contain a #ifndef/#define/#endif which is used to prevent recursive header file includes. For example, foo.h would include:

```
#ifndef __FOO_H__
#define __FOO_H__
<foo.h contents..>
#endif /* __FOO_H__ */
```

Note the \_\_NAME\_H\_\_ format.

11. Each file must contain a comment at the beginning which includes the \$Id\$ as follows:
 

```
/*
 * $Id$
 */
```

CVS (RCS) will expand this keyword to denote RCS revision, timestamps, author, etc.

## 4.2 SMP

This section describes the process by which we will make the ATCP driver SMP safe.

The basic rule for SMP kernel code is that any access to a memory variable must be protected by a lock that prevents a competing access by code running on another processor. Spinlocks are the normal locking method for code paths which do not take a long time to execute (and which do not sleep.)

In general each instance of a structure will include a spinlock, which must be acquired before members of that structure are accessed, and held while a function is accessing that instance of the structure. Structures which are logically grouped together may be protected by a single spinlock: for example, the 'in\_pcb' structure, 'tcpcb' structure, and 'socket' structure which together constitute the administrative information for a TCP connection will probably be collectively managed by a single spinlock in the 'socket' structure.

In addition, every global data structure such as a list or hash table must also have a protecting spinlock which must be held while the structure is being accessed or modified. The NT DDK in fact provides a number of convenient primitives for SMP-safe list manipulation, and it is recommended that these be used for any new lists. Existing list manipulations in the FreeBSD code can probably be left as-is to minimize code disturbance, except of course that the necessary spinlock acquisition and release must be added around them.

Spinlocks should not be held for long periods of time, and most especially, must not be held during a sleep, since this will lead to deadlocks. There is a significant deficiency in the NT kernel support for SMP systems: it does not provide an operation which allows a spinlock to be exchanged atomically for a sleep lock. This would be a serious problem in a UNIX environment where much of the processing occurs in the context of the user process which initiated the operation. (The spinlock would have to be explicitly released, followed by a separate acquisition of the sleep lock: creating an unsafe window.)

The NT approach is more asynchronous, however: IRPs are simply marked as 'PENDING' when an operation cannot be completed immediately. The calling thread does NOT sleep at that point: it returns, and may go on with other processing. Pending IRPs are later completed, not by waking up the thread which initiated them, but by an 'IoCompleteRequest' call which typically runs at DISPATCH level in an arbitrary context.

Thus we have not in fact used sleep locks anywhere in the design of the ATCP driver, hoping the above issue will not arise.

## 4.3 Data flow overview

50051809 . 101497

The ATCP driver supports two paths for sending and receiving data, the fast-path and the slow-path. The fast-path data flow corresponds to connections that are maintained on the INIC, while slow-path traffic corresponds to network data for which the INIC does not have a connection. In order to set some groundwork for the rest of this section, these two data paths are summarized here.

#### 4.3.1 Fast-path input data flow

There are 2 different cases to consider:

1. NETBIOS traffic (identifiable by port number.)
2. Everything else.

##### 4.3.1.1 NETBIOS input

As soon as the INIC has received a segment containing a NETBIOS header, it will forward it up to the TCP driver, along with the NETBIOS length from the header. (In principle the host could get this from the header itself, but since the INIC has already done the decode, it seem reasonable to just pass it.)

From the TDI spec, the amount of data in the buffer actually sent must be at least 128 bytes. For small SMBs, all of the received SMB should be forwarded; it will be absorbed directly by the TDI client without any further MDL exchange. Experiments tracing the TDI data flow show that the NETBIOS client directly absorbs up to 1460 bytes: the amount of payload data in a single Ethernet frame. Thus the initial system specifies that the INIC will indicate anything up to a complete segment to the ATCP driver. [See note (1)]

Once the INIC has passed up an indication with an NETBIOS length greater than the amount of data in the packet it passed, it will continue to accumulate further incoming data in DRAM on the INIC. Overflow of INIC DRAM buffers will be avoided by using a receive window on the INIC at this point, which can be 8K.

On receiving the indicated packet, the ATCP driver will call the receive handler registered by the TDI client for the connection, passing the actual size of the data in the packet from the INIC as "bytes indicated" and the NETBIOS length as "bytes available." [See note (2)].

In the "large data input" case, where "bytes available" exceeds the packet length, the TDI client will then provide an MDL, associated with an IRP, which must be completed when this MDL is filled. (This IRP/MDL may come back either in the response to TCP's call of the receive handler, or as an explicit TDI\_RECEIVE request.)

The ATCP driver will build a "receive request" from the MDL information, and pass this to the INIC. This request will contain:

- The TCP context identifier.
- Size and offset information.
- A list of physical addresses corresponding to the MDL pages.

- A context field to allow the ATCP driver to identify the request on completion.
- "Piggybacked" window update information (this will be discussed in section 6.1.3.)

Note: the ATCP driver must copy any remaining data (which was not taken by the receive handler) from the segment indicated by the INIC to the start of the MDL, and must adjust the size & offset information in the request passed to the INIC to account for this.

The INIC will fill the given page(s) with incoming data up to the requested amount, and respond to the ATCP driver when this is done [see note (3)]. If the MDL is large, the INIC may open up its advertised receive window for improved throughput while filling the MDL.

On receiving the response from the INIC, the ATCP driver will complete the IRP associated with this MDL, to tell the TDI client that the data is available.

At this point the cycle of events is complete, and the ATCP driver is now waiting for the next header indication.

#### 4.3.1.2 Other TCP input.

In the general case we do not have a higher-level protocol header to enable us to predict that more data is coming. So on non-NETBIOS connections, the INIC will just accumulate incoming data in INIC DRAM up to a quantity of 8K in this example. Again, a maximum advertised window size, which may be 16K, will be used to prevent overflow of INIC DRAM buffers.

When the prescribed amount has been accumulated, or when a PSH flag is seen, the INIC will indicate a small packet which may be 128 bytes of the data to the ATCP driver, along with the total length of the data accumulated in INIC DRAM.

On receiving the indicated packet, the ATCP driver will call the receive handler registered by the TDI client for the connection, passing the actual size of the data in the packet from the INIC as "bytes indicated" and the total INIC-buffer length as "bytes available."

As in the NETBIOS case, if "bytes available" exceeds "bytes indicated", the TDI client will provide an IRP with an MDL. The ATCP driver will pass the MDL to the INIC to be filled, as before. The INIC will reply to the ATCP driver, which in turn will complete the IRP to the TDI client.

Using an MDL from the client avoids a copy step. However, if we can only buffer 8K and delay indicating to the ATCP driver until we have done so, a question arises regarding further segments coming in, since INIC DRAM is a scarce resource. We do not want to ACK with a zero-size window advertisement: this would cause the transmitting end to go into persist state, which is bad for throughput. If the transmitting end is also our INIC, this results in having to implement the persist timer on the INIC, which we do not wish to do. Instead for large transfers (i.e. no PSH flag seen) we will not send an ACK

"50051809" 101497

until the host has provided the MDL, and also, to avoid stopping the transmitting end, we will use a receive window of twice the amount we will buffer before calling the host. Since the host comes back with the MDL quite quickly (measured at < 100 microseconds), we do not expect to experience significant overruns.

#### 4.3.1.3 INIC Receive window updates

If the INIC "owns" an MDL provided by the TDI client (sent by ATCP as a receive request), it will treat this as a "promise" by the TDI client to accept the data placed in it, and may therefore ACK incoming data as it is filling the pages.

However, for small requests, there will be no MDL returned by the TDI client: it absorbs all of the data directly in the receive callback function. We need to update the INIC's view of data which has been accepted, so that it can update its receive window. In order to be able to do this, the ATCP driver will accumulate a count of data which has been accepted by the TDI client receive callback function for a connection.

From the INIC's point of view, though, segments sent up to the ATCP driver are just "thrown over the wall"; there is no explicit reply path. We will therefore "piggyback" the update on requests sent out to the INIC. Whenever the ATCP driver has outgoing data for that connection, it will place this count in a field in the send request (and then clear the counter.) Any receive request (passing a receive MDL to the INIC) may also be used to transport window update info in the same way.

Note: we will probably also need to design a message path whereby the ATCP driver can explicitly send an update of this "bytes consumed" information (either when it exceeds a preset threshold or if there are no requests going out to the INIC for more than a given time interval), to allow for possible scenarios in which the data stream is entirely one-way.

#### 4.3.1.4 Notes

- 1) The PSH flag can help to identify small SMB requests that fit into one segment.
- 2) Actually, the observed "bytes available" from the NT TCP driver to its client's callback in this case is always 1460. The NETBIOS-aware TDI client presumably calculates the size of the MDL it will return from the NETBIOS header. So strictly speaking we do not need the NETBIOS header length at this point: just an indication that this is a header for a "large" size. However, we \*do\* need an actual "bytes available" value for the non-NETBIOS case, so we may as well pass it.
- 3) We observe that the PSH flag is set in the segment completing each NETBIOS transfer. The INIC can use this to determine when the current transfer is complete and the MDL should be returned. It can, at least in a debug mode, sanity check the amount of received data against what is expected, though.

454707 " 50875009

### 4.3.2 Fast-path output data flow

The fast-path output data flow is similar to the input data-flow, but simpler. In this case the TDI client will provide a MDL to the ATCP driver along with an IRP to be completed when the data is sent. The ATCP driver will then give a request (corresponding to the MDL) to the INIC. This request will contain:

- The TCP context identifier.
- Size and offset information.
- A list of physical addresses corresponding to the MDL pages.
- A context field to allow the ATCP driver to identify the request on completion.
- “Piggybacked” window update information (as discussed in section 6.1.3.)

The INIC will copy the data from the given physical location(s) as it sends the corresponding network frames onto the network. When all of the data is sent, the INIC will notify the host of the completion, and the ATCP driver will complete the IRP.

Note that there may be multiple output requests pending at any given time, since SMB allows multiple SMB requests to be simultaneously outstanding.

### 4.3.3 Slow-path data flow

For data for which there is no connection being maintained on the INIC, we will have to perform all of the TCP, IP, and Ethernet processing ourselves. To accomplish this we will port the FreeBSD protocol stack.

In this mode, the INIC will be operating as a “dumb NIC”; the packets which pass over the NDIS interface will just contain MAC-layer frames.

The MBUFs in the incoming direction will in fact be managing NDIS-allocated packets. In the outgoing direction, we need protocol-allocated MBUFs in which to assemble the data and headers. The MFREE macro must be cognizant of the various types of MBUFs, and “do the right thing” for each type. (See more extensive discussion of MBUFs in section XXX.)

We will retain a (modified) socket structure for each connection, containing the socket buffer fields expected by the FreeBSD code. The TCP code that operates on socket buffers (adding/removing MBUFs to & from queues, indicating acknowledged & received data etc) will remain essentially unchanged from the FreeBSD base (though most of the socket functions & macros used to do this will need to be modified; these are the functions in kern/uipc\_socket2.c)

The upper socket layer (kern/uipc\_socket.c), where the overlying OS moves data in and out of socket buffers, must be entirely re-implemented to work in TDI terms. Thus, instead of sosend(), there will be a function that copies data from the MDL provided in a TDI\_SEND call into socket buffer MBUFs. Instead of soreceive(), there will be a handler that calls the TDI client receive callback function, and also copies data from socket buffer

50061809-10199

MBUFs into any MDL provided by the TDI client (either explicitly with the callback response or as a separate TDI\_RECEIVE call.)

We must note that there is a semantic difference between TDI\_SEND and a write() on a BSD socket. The latter may complete back to its caller as soon as the data has been copied into the socket buffer. The completion of a TDI\_SEND, however, implies that the data has actually been sent on the connection. Thus we will need to keep the TDI\_SEND IRPs (and associated MDLs) in a queue on the socket until the TCP code indicates that the data from them has been ACK'd.

#### 4.3.4 Data Path Notes

1. There might be input data on a connection object for which there is no receive handler function registered. This has not been observed, but we can probably just ASSERT for a missing handler for the moment. If it should happen, however, we must assume that the TDI client will be doing TDI\_RECEIVE calls on the connection. If we can't make a callup at the time that the indication from the INIC appears, we can queue the data and handle it when a TDI\_RECEIVE does appear.
2. NT has a notion of "canceling" IRPs. It is possible for us to get a "cancel" on an IRP corresponding to an MDL which has been "handed" to the INIC by a send or receive request. We can handle this by being able to force the context back off the INIC, since IRPs will only get cancelled when the connection is being aborted.

### 4.4 Context Passing Between ATCP and INIC

#### 4.4.1 From ATCP to INIC

There is a synchronization problem that must be addressed here. The ATCP driver will make a decision on a given connection that this connection should now be passed to the INIC. It builds and sends a command identifying this connection to the INIC.

Before doing so, it must ensure that no slow-path outgoing data is outstanding. This is not difficult; it simply pends and queues any new TDI\_SEND requests and waits for any unacknowledged slow path output data to be acknowledged before initiating the context pass operation.

The problem arises with incoming slow-path data. If we attempt to do the context-pass in a single command handshake, there is a window during which the ATCP driver has send the context command, but the INIC has not yet seen this (or has not yet completed setting up its context.) During this time, slow-path input data frames could arrive and be fed into the slow-path ATCP processing code. Should that happen, the context information which the ATCP driver passed to the INIC is no longer correct. We can simply abort the outward pass of the context in this event, but it seems better to have a reliable handshake.

Therefore, the command to pass context from ATCP driver to INIC will be split into two halves, and there will be a two-exchange handshake.

4049 50875009

The initial command from ATCP to INIC expresses an "intention" to hand out the context. It will include the source and destination IP addresses and ports, which will allow the INIC to establish a "provisional" context. Once it has this "provisional" context in place, the INIC will not send any more slow-path input frames for that src/dest IP/port combination (it will queue them, if any are received.)

When the ATCP driver receives the response to this initial "intent" command, it knows that the INIC will send no more slow-path input. The ATCP driver then waits for any remaining unconsumed slow-path input data for this connection to be consumed by the client. (Generally speaking there will be none, since the ATCP driver will not initiate a context pass while there is unconsumed slow-path input data; the handshake is simply to close the crossover window.)

Once any such data has been consumed, we know things are in a quiescent state. The ATCP driver can then send the second, "commit" command to hand out the context, with confidence that the TCB values it is handing out (sequence numbers etc) are reliable.

Note 1: it is conceivable that there might be situations in which the ATCP driver decides, after having sent the original "intention" command, that the context is not to be passed after all. (E.g. the local client issues a close.) So we must allow for the possibility that the second command may be a "abort", which should cause the INIC to deallocate and clear up its "provisional" context.

Note 2: to simplify the logic, the ATCP driver will guarantee that only one context may be in process of being handed out at a time: in other words, it will never issue another initial "intention" command until it has completed the second half of the handshake for the first one.

#### 4.4.2 From INIC to ATCP

There are two possible cases for this: a context transfer may be initiated either by the ATCP driver or by the INIC.

However the machinery will be very similar in the two cases. If the ATCP driver wishes to cause context to be flushed from INIC to host, it will send a "flush" message to the INIC specifying the context number to be flushed. Once the INIC receives this, it will proceed with the same steps as for the case where the flush is initiated by the INIC itself:

- The INIC will send an error response to any current outstanding receive request it is working on (corresponding to an MDL into which data is being placed.) Before sending the response, it updates the receive command "length" field to reflect the amount of data which has actually been placed in the MDL buffers at the time of the flush.
- Likewise it will send an error response for any current send request, again reporting the amount of data actually sent from the request.
- The INIC will DMA the TCB for the context back to the host. (Note: part of the information provided with a context must be the address of the TCB in the host.)



- The INIC will send a “flush” indication to the host (very preferably via the regular input path as a special type of frame) identifying the context which is being flushed. Sending this indication via the regular input path ensures that it will arrive before any following slow-path frames.

At this point, the INIC is no longer doing fast-path processing, and any further incoming frames for the connection will simply be sent to the host as raw frames for the slow input path.

The ATCP driver may not be able to complete the cleanup operations needed to resume normal slow path processing immediately on receipt of the “flush frame”, since there may be outstanding send and receive requests to which it has not yet received a response.

If this is the case, the ATCP driver must set a “pend incoming TCP frames” flag in its per-connection context. The effect of this is to change the behavior of tcp\_input(). This runs as a function call in the context of ip\_input(), and normally returns only when incoming frames have been processed as far as possible (queued on the socket receive buffer or out-of-sequence reassembly queue.) However, if there is a flush pending and we have not yet completed resynchronization, we cannot do TCP processing and must instead queue input frames for TCP on a “holding queue” for the connection, to be picked up later when context flush is complete and normal slow path processing resumes. (This is why we want to send the “flush” indication via the normal input path: so that we can ensure it is seen before any following frames of slow-path input.)

Next we need to wait for any outstanding “send” requests to be errored off:

- The INIC maintains its context for the connection in a “zombie” state. As “send” requests for this connection come out of the INIC queue, it sends error responses for them back to the ATCP driver. (It is apparently difficult for the INIC to identify all command requests for a given context; simpler for it to just continue processing them in order, detecting ones that are for a “zombie” context as they appear.)
- The ATCP driver has a count of the number of outstanding requests it has sent to the INIC. As error responses for these are received, it decrements this count, and when it reaches zero, the ATCP driver sends a “flush complete” message to the INIC.
- When the INIC receives the “flush complete” message, it dismantles its “zombie” context. From the INIC perspective, the flush is now completed.
- When the ATCP driver has received error responses for all outstanding requests, it has all the information needed to complete its cleanup. This involves completing any IRPs corresponding to requests which have entirely completed and adjusting fields in partially-completed requests so that send and receive of slow path data will resume at the right point in the byte streams.
- Once all this cleanup is complete, the ATCP driver will loop pulling any “pending” TCP input frames off the “pending queue” mentioned above and feeding them into the normal TCP input processing. Once all input frames on this queue have been cleared off, the “pend incoming TCP frames” flag can be cleared for the connection, and we are back to normal slow-path processing.

20090120 10:49

## 4.5 FreeBSD Porting Specification

The largest portion of the ATCP driver is either derived, or directly taken from the FreeBSD TCP/IP protocol stack. This section defines the issues associated with porting this code, the FreeBSD code itself, and the modifications required for it to suit our needs.

### 4.5.1 Porting philosophy

FreeBSD TCP/IP (current version referred to as Net/3) is a general purpose TCP/IP driver. It contains code to handle a variety of interface types and many different kinds of protocols. To meet this requirement the code is often written in a sometimes confusing, over-complex manner. General-purpose structures are overlaid with other interface-specific structures so that different interface types can coexist using the same general-purpose code. For our purposes much of this complexity is unnecessary since we are only supporting a single interface type and a few specific protocols. It is therefore tempting to modify the code and data structures in an effort to make it more readable, and perhaps a bit more efficient. There are, however, some problems with doing this. First, the more we modify the original FreeBSD, the more changes we will have to make. This is especially true with regard to data structures. If we collapse two data structures into one we might improve the cleanliness of the code a bit, but we will then have to modify every reference to that data structure in the entire protocol stack. Another problem with attempting to “clean up” the code is that we might later discover that we need something that we had previously thrown away. Finally, while we might gain a small performance advantage in cleaning up the FreeBSD code, the FreeBSD TCP code will mostly only run in the slow-path connections, which are not our primary focus. Our priority is to get the slow-path code functional and reliable as quickly as possible.

For the reasons above we have adopted the philosophy that we should initially keep the data structures and code as close to the original FreeBSD implementation as possible. The code will be modified for the following reasons:

5. As required for NT interaction – Obviously we can't expect to simply “drop-in” the FreeBSD code as is. The interface of this code to the NT system will require some significant code modifications. This will mostly occur at the topmost and bottommost portions of the protocol stack, as well as the “ioctl” sections of the code. Modifications for SMP issues are also needed.
6. Unnecessary code can be removed – While we will keep the code as close to the original FreeBSD as possible, we will nonetheless remove code that will never be used (UDP is a good example of this).

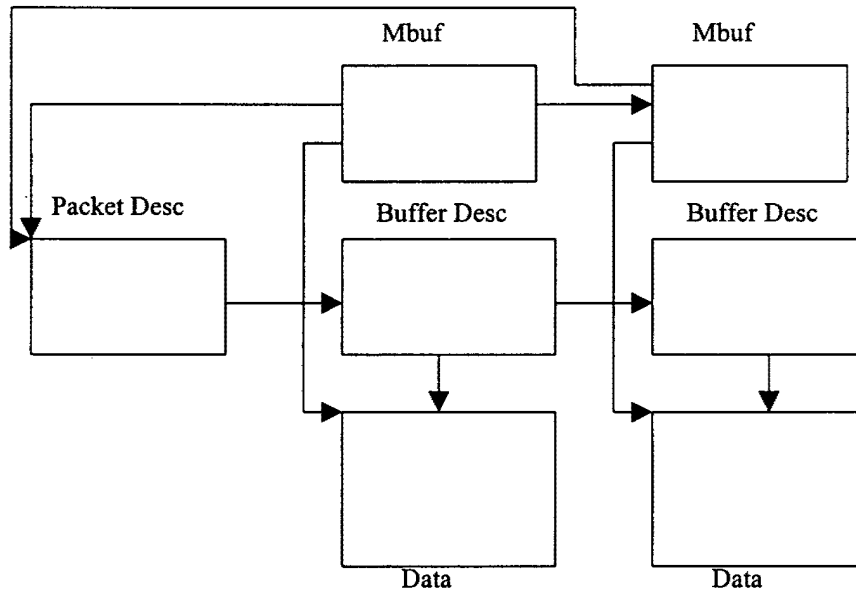
### 4.5.2 Unix ⇔ NT conversion

The FreeBSD TCP/IP protocol stack makes use of many Unix system services. These include bcopy to copy memory, malloc to allocate memory, timestamp functions, etc. These will not be itemized in detail since the conversion to the corresponding NT calls is a fairly trivial and mechanical operation.

An area which will need non-trivial support redesign is Mbufs.

#### 4.5.2.1 Network buffers

Under FreeBSD, network buffers are mapped using mbufs. Under NT network buffers are mapped using a combination of packet descriptors and buffer descriptors (the buffer descriptors are really MDLs). There are a couple of problems with the Microsoft method. First it does not provide the necessary fields which allow us to easily strip off protocol headers. Second, converting all of the FreeBSD protocol code to speak in terms of buffer descriptors is an unnecessary amount of overhead. Instead, in our port we will allocate our own mbuf structures and remap the NT packets as follows:



The mbuf structure will provide the standard fields provided in the FreeBSD mbuf including the data pointer, which points to the current location of the data, data length fields and flags. In addition each mbuf will point to the packet descriptor which is associated with the data being mapped. Once an NT packet is mapped, our transport driver should never have to refer to the packet or buffer descriptors for any information except when we are finished and are preparing to return the packet.

There are a couple of things to note here. We have designed our INIC such that a packet header should never be split across multiple buffers. Thus, we should never require the equivalent of the "m\_pullup" routine included in Unix. Also note that there are circumstances in which we will be accepting data that will also be accepted by the Microsoft TCP/IP. One such example of this is ARP frames. We will need to build our own ARP cache by looking at ARP replies as they come off the network. Under these circumstances, it is absolutely imperative that we do not modify the data, or the packet and buffer descriptors. We will discuss this further in the following sections.

2025 RELEASE UNDER E.O. 14176

We will allocate a pool of mbuf headers at ATCP initialization time. It is important to remember that unlike other NICs, we can not simply drop data if we run out of the system resources required to manage/map the data. The reason for this is that we will be receiving data from the card that has already been acknowledged by TCP. Because of this it is essential that we never run out of mbuf headers. To solve this problem we will statically allocate mbuf headers for the maximum number of buffers that we will ever allow to be outstanding. By doing so, the card will run out of buffers in which to put the data before we will run out of mbufs, and as a result, the card will be forced to drop data at the link layer instead of us dropping it at the transport layer.

DhXXX: as we've discussed, I don't think this is really true anymore. The INIC won't ACK data until either it's gotten a window update from ATCP to tell it the data's been accepted, or it's got an MDL.

Thus it seems workable, though undesirable, if we can't accept a frame from the INIC & return an error to it saying it was not taken.

We will also require a pool of actual mbufs (not just headers). These mbufs are required in order to build transmit protocol headers for the slow-path data path, as well as other miscellaneous purposes such as for building ARP requests. We will allocate a pool of these at initialization time and we will add to this pool dynamically as needed. Unlike the mbuf headers described above, which will be used to map acknowledged TCP data coming from the card, the full mbufs will contain data that can be dropped if we can not get an mbuf.

### 4.5.3 The code

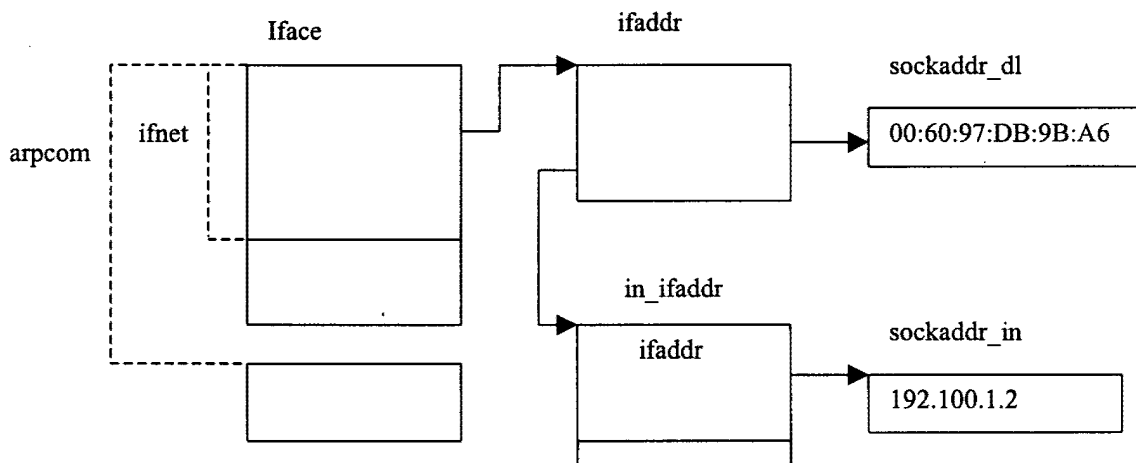
In this section we describe each section of the FreeBSD TCP/IP port. These sections include Interface Initialization, ARP, Route, IP, ICMP, and TCP.

#### 4.5.3.1 Interface initialization

##### 4.5.3.1.1 Structures

There are a variety of structures, which represent a single interface in FreeBSD. These structures include:

ifnet, arpcom, ifaddr, in\_ifaddr, sockaddr, sockaddr\_in, and sockaddr\_dl. The following illustration shows the relationship between all of these structures:



"608T9008" 10497

In this example we show a single interface with a MAC address of 00:60:97:DB:9B:A6 configured with an IP address of 192.100.1.2. As illustrated above, the `in_ifaddr` is actually an `ifaddr` structure with some extra fields tacked on to the end. Thus the `ifaddr` structure is used to represent both a MAC address and an IP address. Similarly the `sockaddr` structure is recast as a `sockaddr_dl` or a `sockaddr_in` depending on its address type. An interface can be configured to multiple IP addresses by simply chaining `in_ifaddr` structures after the `in_ifaddr` structure shown above.

As mentioned in the Porting Philosophy section, many of the above structures could likely be collapsed into fewer structures. In order to avoid making unnecessary modifications to FreeBSD, for the time being we will leave these structures mostly as is. We will however eliminate the fields from the structure that will never be used. These structure modifications are discussed below.

We also show above a structure called `iface`. This is a structure that we define. It contains the `arpcom` structure, which in turn contains the `ifnet` structure. It also contains fields that enable us to blend our FreeBSD implementation with NT NDIS requirements. One such example is the NDIS binding handle used to call down to NDIS with requests (such as `send`).

#### 4.5.3.1.2 The functions

FreeBSD initializes the above structures in two phases. First when a network interface is found, the `ifnet`, `arpcom`, and first `ifaddr` structures are initialized first by the network layer driver, and then via a call to the `if_attach` routine. The subsequent `in_ifaddr` structure(s) are initialized when a user dynamically configures the interface. This occurs in the `in_ioctl` and the `in_ifinit` routines. Since NT allows dynamic configuration of a network interface we will continue to perform the interface initialization in two phases, but we will consolidate these two phases as described below:

##### 4.5.3.1.2.1 *IfInit*

The `IfInit` routine will be called from the `ATKProtocolBindAdapter` function. The `IfInit` function will initialize the `Iface` structure and associated `arpcom` and `ifnet` structures. It will then allocate and initialize an `ifaddr` structure in which to contain link-level information about the interface, and a `sockaddr_dl` structure to contain the interface name and MAC address. Finally it will add a pointer to the `ifaddr` structure into the `ifnet_addrs` array (using the `if_index` field of the `ifnet` structure) contained in the extended device object. `IfInit` will then call `IfConfig` for each IP address that it finds in the registry entry for the interface.

##### 4.5.3.1.2.2 *IfConfig*

`IfConfig` is called to configure an IP address for a given interface. It is passed a pointer to the `ifnet` structure for that interface along with all the information required to configure an IP address for that interface (such as IP address, netmask and broadcast info, etc). `IfConfig` will allocate an `in_ifaddr` structure to be used to configure the interface. It will chain it to the total chain of `in_ifaddr` structures contained in the extended device object, and will then configure the structure with the information given to it. After that it will add a static route for the newly configured network and then broadcast a gratuitous ARP request to notify others of our Mac/IP address and to detect duplicate IP addresses on the net.

#### 4.5.3.2 ARP

We will port the FreeBSD ARP code to NT mostly as-is. For some reason, the FreeBSD ARP code is located in a file called `if_ether.c`. While the functionality of this file will remain the same, we will rename it to a more logical `arp.c`. The main structures used by ARP are the `llinfo_arp` structure and the `rentry` structure (actually part of `route`). These structures will not be require major modifications. The functions that will require modification are defined here.

##### 4.5.3.2.1 In\_arpinput

This function is called to process an incoming ARP frame. An ARP frame can either be an ARP request or an ARP reply. ARP requests are broadcast, so we will see every ARP request on the network, while ARP replies are directed so we should only see ARP replies that are sent to us. This introduces the following possible cases for an incoming ARP frame:

1. ARP request trying to resolve our IP address – Under normal circumstances, ARP would reply to this ARP request with an ARP reply containing our MAC address. Since ARP requests will also be passed up to the Microsoft TCP/IP driver, we need not reply. Note however, that FreeBSD also creates or updates an ARP cache entry with the information derived from the ARP request. It does this in anticipation of the fact that any host that wishes to know our MAC address is likely to wish to talk to us soon. Since we will need to know his MAC address in order to talk back, we might as well add the ARP information now rather than issuing our own ARP request later.
2. ARP request trying to resolve someone else's IP address – Since ARP requests are broadcast, we see every one on the network. When we receive an ARP request of this type, we simply check to see if we have an entry for the host that sent the request in our ARP cache. If we do, we check to see if we still have the correct MAC address associated with that host. If it is incorrect, we update our ARP cache entry. Note that we do not create a new ARP cache entry in this case.
3. ARP reply – In this case we add the new ARP entry to our ARP cache. Having resolved the address, we check to see if there is any transmit requests pending for the resolve IP address, and if so, transmit them.

Given the above three possibilities, the only major change to the `in_arpinput` code is that we will remove the code which generates an ARP reply for ARP requests that are meant for our interface.

##### 4.5.3.2.2 Arpintr

This is the FreeBSD code that delivers an incoming ARP frame to `in_arpinput`. We will be calling `in_arpinput` directly from our `ProtocolReceiveDPC` routine (discussed in the NDIS section below) so this function is not needed.

#### 4.5.3.2.3 Arpwhoas

This is a single line function that serves only as a wrapper around arprequest. We will remove it and replace all calls to it with direct calls to arprequest.

#### 4.5.3.2.4 Arprequest

This code simply allocates a mbuf, fills it in with an ARP header, and then passes it down to the ethernet output routine to be transmitted. For us, the code remains essentially the same except for the obvious changes related to how we allocate a network buffer, and how we send the filled in request.

#### 4.5.3.2.5 Arp\_ifinit

This is simply called when an interface is initialized to broadcast a gratuitous ARP request (described in the interface initialization section) and to set some ARP related fields in the ifaddr structure for the interface. We will simply move this functionality into the interface initialization code and remove this function.

#### 4.5.3.2.6 Arptimer

This is a timer-based function that is called every 5 minutes to walk through the ARP table looking for entries that have timed out. Although the time-out period for FreeBSD is 20 minutes, RFC 826 does not specify any timer requirements with regard to ARP so we can modify this value or delete the timer altogether to suit our needs. Either way the function won't require any major changes.

All other functions in if\_ether.c will not require any major changes.

#### 4.5.3.3 Route

On first thought, it might seem that we have no need for routing support since our ATCP driver will only receive IP datagrams who's destination IP address matches that of one of our own interfaces. Therefore, we will not "route" from one interface to another. Instead, the MICROSOFT TCP/IP driver will provide that service. We will, however, need to maintain an up-to-date routing table so that we know a) whether an outgoing connection belongs to one of our interfaces, b) to which interface it belongs, and c) what the first-hop IP address (gateway) is if the destination is not on the local network.

We discuss four aspects on the subject of routing in this section. They are as follows:

1. The mechanics of how routing information is stored
2. The manner in which routes are added or deleted from the route table.
3. When and how route information is retrieved from the route table.
4. Notification of route table changes to interested parties.

#### 4.5.3.3.1 The route table

In FreeBSD, the route table is maintained using an algorithm known as PATRICIA (Practical Algorithm To Retrieve Information Coded in Alphanumeric). This is a complicated algorithm that is a bit costly to set up, but is very efficient to reference. Since the routing table should contain the same information for both NT and FreeBSD, and since the key used to search for an entry in the routing table will be the same for each (the destination IP address), we should be able to port the routing table software to NT without any major changes.

The software which implements the route table (via the PATRICIA algorithm) is located in the FreeBSD file, radix.c. This file will be ported directly to the ATCP driver with no significant changes required.

#### 4.5.3.3.2 Adding and deleting routes

Routes can be added or deleted in a number of different ways. The kernel adds or deletes routes when the state of an interface changes or when an ICMP redirect is received. User space programs such as the RIP daemon, or the route command also modify the route table.

For kernel-based route changes, the changes can be made by a direct call to the routing software. The FreeBSD software that is responsible for the modification of route table entries is found in route.c. The primary routine for all route table changes is called rrequest(). It takes as its arguments, the request type (ADD, RESOLVE, DELETE), the destination IP address for the route, the gateway for the route, the netmask for the route, the flags for the route, and a pointer to the route structure (struct rentry) in which we will place the added or resolved route. Other routines in the route.c file include rtinit(), which is called during interface initialization time to add a static route to the network, rredirect, which is called by ICMP when we receive a ICMP redirect, and an assortment of support routines used for the modification of route table entries. All of these routines found in route.c will be ported with no major modifications.

For user-space-based changes, we will have to be a bit more clever. In FreeBSD, route changes are sent down to the kernel from user-space applications via a special route socket. This code is found in the FreeBSD file, rtsock.c. Obviously this will not work for our ATCP driver. Instead the filter driver portion of our driver will intercept route changes destined for the Microsoft TCP driver and will apply those modifications to our own route table via the rrequest routine described above. In order to do this, it will have to do some format translation to put the data into the format (sockaddr\_in) expected by the rrequest routine. Obviously, none of the code from rtsock.c will be ported to the ATCP driver. This same procedure will be used to intercept and process explicit ARP cache modifications.

#### 4.5.3.3.3 Consulting the route table

In FreeBSD, the route table is consulted in ip\_output when an IP datagram is being sent. In order to avoid a complete route table search for every outgoing datagram, the route is stored into the in\_pcb for the connection. For subsequent calls to ip\_output, the route entry is then simply checked to ensure validity. While we will keep this basic operation as is, we will require a slight modification to allow us to coexist with the Microsoft TCP



driver. When an active connection is being set up, our filter driver will have to determine whether the connection is going to be handled by one of the INIC interfaces. To do this, we will have to consult the route table from the filter driver portion of our driver. This is done via a call to the `rtalloc1` function (found in `route.c`). If a valid route table entry is found, then we will take control of the connection and set a pointer to the `rtentry` structure returned by `rtalloc1` in our `in_pcb` structure.

#### 4.5.3.3.4 What to do when a route changes.

When a route table entry changes, there may be connections that have pointers to a stale route table entry. These connections will need to be notified of the new route. FreeBSD solves this by checking the validity of a route entry during every call to `ip_output`. If the entry is no longer valid, its reference to the stale route table entry is removed, and an attempt is made to allocate a new route to the destination. For our slow path, this will work fine. Unfortunately, since our IP processing is handled by the INIC for our fast path, this sanity check method will not be sufficient. Instead, we will need to perform a review of all of our fast path connections during every route table modification. If the route table change affects our connection, we will need to advise the INIC with a new first-hop address, or if the destination is no longer reachable, close the connection entirely.

#### 4.5.3.4 ICMP

Like the ARP code above, we will need to process certain types of incoming ICMP frames. Of the 10 possible ICMP message types, there are only three that we need to support. These include `ICMP_REDIRECT`, `ICMP_UNREACH`, and `ICMP_SOURCEQUENCH`. Any FreeBSD code to deal with other types of ICMP traffic will be removed. Instead, we will simply return `NDIS_STATUS_NOT_ACCEPTED` for all but the above ICMP frame types. This section describes how we will handle these ICMP frames.

##### 4.5.3.4.1 ICMP\_REDIRECT

Under FreeBSD, an `ICMP_REDIRECT` causes two things to occur. First, it causes the route table to be updated with the route given in the redirect. Second, it results in a call back to TCP to cause TCP to flush the route entry attached to its associated `in_pcb` structures. By doing this, it forces `ip_output` to search for a new route. As mentioned in the Route section above, we will also require a call to a routine which will review all of the TCP fast-path connections, and update the route entries as needed (in this case because the route entry has been zeroed). The INIC will then be notified of the route changes.

##### 4.5.3.4.2 ICMP\_UNREACH

In both FreeBSD and Microsoft TCP, the `ICMP_UNREACH` results in no more than a simple statistic update. We will do the same.

##### 4.5.3.4.3 ICMP\_SOURCEQUENCH

A source quench is sent to cause a TCP sender to close its congestion window to a single segment, thereby putting the sender into slow-start mode. We will keep the FreeBSD code as-is for slow-path connections. For fast path connections we will send a notification to the card that the congestion window for the given connection has been reduced. The INIC will then be responsible for the slow-start algorithm.

#### 4.5.3.5 IP

The FreeBSD IP code should require few modifications when porting to the ATCP driver. What few modifications will be required will be discussed in this section.

##### 4.5.3.5.1 IP initialization

During initialization time, `ip_init` is called to initialize the array of `protosw` structures. These structures contain all the information needed by IP to be able to pass incoming data to the correct protocol above it. For example, when a UDP datagram arrives, IP locates the `protosw` entry corresponding to the UDP protocol type value (0x11) and calls the input routine specified in that `protosw` entry. We will keep the array of `protosw` structures intact, but since we are only handling the TCP and ICMP protocols above IP, we will strip the `protosw` array down substantially.

##### 4.5.3.5.2 IP input

Following are the changes required for IP input (function `ip_intr()`).

###### 4.5.3.5.2.1 *No IP forwarding*

Since we will only be handling datagrams for which we are the final destination, we should never be required to forward an IP datagram. All references to IP forwarding, and the `ip_forward` function itself, can be removed.

###### 4.5.3.5.2.2 *IP options*

The only options supported by FreeBSD at this time include record route, strict and loose source and record route, and timestamp. For the timestamp option, FreeBSD only logs the current time into the IP header so that before it is forwarded. Since we will not be forwarding IP datagrams, this seems to be of little use to us. While FreeBSD supports the remaining options, NT essentially does nothing useful with them. For the moment, we will not bother dealing with IP options. They will be added in later if needed.

###### 4.5.3.5.2.3 *IP reassembly*

There is a small problem with the FreeBSD IP reassembly code. The reassembly code reuses the IP header portion of the IP datagram to contain IP reassembly queue information. It can do this because it no longer requires the original IP header. This is an absolute no-no with the NDIS 4.0 method of handling network packets. The NT DDK explicitly states that we must not modify packets given to us by NDIS. This is not the only place in which the FreeBSD code modifies the contents of a network buffer. It also does this when performing endian conversions. At the moment we will leave this code as is and violate the DDK rules. We believe we can do this because we are going to ensure that no other transport driver looks at these frames. If this becomes a problem we will have to modify this code substantially by moving the IP reassembly fields into the `mbuf` header.

##### 4.5.3.5.3 IP output

There are only two modifications required for IP output. The first is that since, for the moment, we are not dealing with IP options, there is no need for the code that inserts the IP options into the IP header. Second, we may discover that it is impossible for us to ever receive an output request that requires fragmentation. Since TCP performs Maximum Segment Size negotiation, we should theoretically never attempt to send a TCP segment larger than the MTU.

## 4.6 NDIS Protocol Driver

This section defines protocol driver portion of the ATCP driver. The protocol driver portion of the ATCP driver is defined by the set of routines registered with NDIS via a call to NdisRegisterProtocol. These routines are limited to those that are called (indirectly) by the INIC miniport driver beneath us. For example, we register a ProtocolReceivePacket routine so that when the INIC driver calls NdisMIndicateReceivePacket it will result in a call from NDIS to our driver. Strictly speaking, the protocol driver portion of our driver does not include the method by which our driver calls down to the miniport (for example, the method by which we send network packets). Nevertheless, we will describe that method here for lack of a better place to put it. That said, we cover the following topics in this section of the document:

1. Initialization
2. Receive
3. Transmit
4. Query/Set Information
5. Status indications
6. Reset
7. Halt

### 4.6.1 Initialization

The protocol driver initialization occurs in two phases. The first phase occurs when the ATCP DriverEntry routine calls ATKProtoSetup. The ATKProtoSetup routine performs the following:

1. Allocate resources – We attempt to allocate many of the required resources as soon as possible so that we are more likely to get the memory we want. This mostly applies to allocating and initializing our mbuf and mbuf header pools.
2. Register Protocol – We call NdisRegisterProtocol to register our set of protocol driver routines.
3. Locate and initialize bound NICs – We read the Linkage parameters of the registry to determine which NIC devices we are bound to. For each of these devices we allocate and initialize a IFACE structure (defined above). We then read the TCP parameters out of the registry for each bound device and set the corresponding fields in the IFACE structure.

After the underlying INIC devices have completed their initialization, NDIS will call our driver's ATKBindAdapter function for each underlying device. It will perform the following:

1. Open the device specified in the call the ATKBindAdapter
2. Find the IFACE structure that was created in ATKProtoSetup for this device.
3. Query the miniport for adapter information. This includes such things as link speed and MAC address. Save relevant information in the IFACE structure.
4. Perform the interface initialization as specified in section 4.5.3.1 Interface initialization

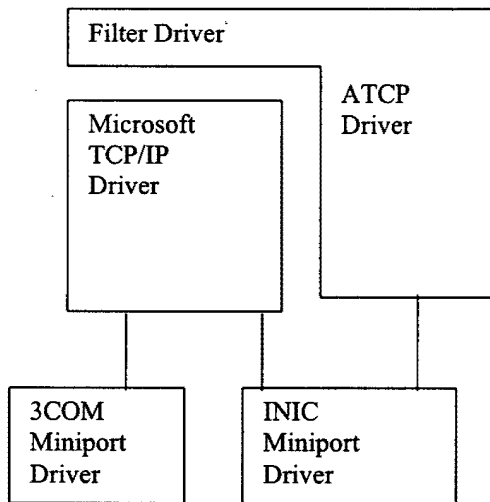
2019-05-10 10:49:59

## 4.6.2 Receive

Receive is handled by the protocol driver routine `ATKReceivePacket`. Before we describe this routine, it is important to consider each possible receive type and how it will be handled.

### 4.6.2.1 Receive overview

Our INIC miniport driver will be bound to our transport driver as well as the generic Microsoft TCP driver (and possibly others). The ATCP driver will be bound exclusively to INIC devices, while the Microsoft TCP driver will be bound to INIC devices as well as other types of NICs. This is illustrated below:



By binding the driver in this fashion, we can choose to direct incoming network data to our own ATCP transport driver, the Microsoft TCP driver, or both. We do this by playing with the ethernet "type" field as follows.

To NDIS and the transport drivers above it, our card is going to be registered as a normal ethernet card. When a transport driver receives a packet from our driver, it will expect the data to start with an ethernet header, and consequently, expects the protocol type field to be in byte offset 12. If Microsoft TCP finds that the protocol type field is not equal to either IP, or ARP, it will not accept the packet. So, to deliver an incoming packet to our driver, we must simply map the data such that byte 12 contains a non-recognized ethernet type field. Note that we must choose a value that is greater than 1500 bytes so that the transport drivers do not confuse it with an 802.3 frame. We must also choose a value that will not be accepted by other transport driver such as Appletalk or IPX. Similarly, if we want to direct the data to Microsoft TCP, we can then simply leave the ethernet type field set to IP (or ARP). Note that since we will also see these frames we can choose to accept or not-accept them as necessary.

Incoming packets are delivered as follows:

Packets delivered to ATCP only (not accepted by MSTCP):

1. All TCP packets destined for one of our IP addresses. This includes both slow-path frames and fast-path frames. In the slow-path case, the TCP frames are given in their entirety (headers included). In the fast-path case, the ATKReceivePacket is given a header buffer that contains status information and data with no headers (except those above TCP). More on this later.

Packets delivered to Microsoft TCP only (not accepted by ATCP):

1. All non-TCP packets.
2. All packets that are not destined for one of our interfaces (packets that will be routed). Continuing the above example, if there is an IP address 144.48.252.4 associated with the 3com interface, and we receive a TCP connect with a destination IP address of 144.48.252.4, we will actually want to send that request up to the ATCP driver so that we create a fast-path connection for it. This means that we will need to know every IP address in the system and filter frames based on the destination IP address in a given TCP datagram. This can be done in the INIC miniport driver. Since it will be the ATCP driver that learns of dynamic IP address changes in the system, we will need a method to notify the INIC miniport of all the IP addresses in the system. More on this later.

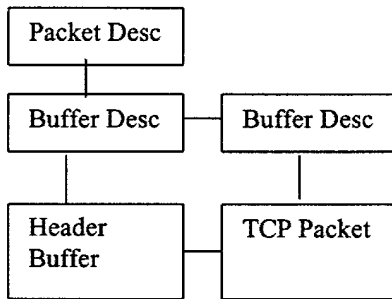
Packets delivered to both:

1. All ARP frames
2. All ICMP frames

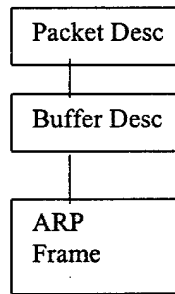
#### 4.6.2.2 Two types of receive packets

There are several circumstances in which the INIC will need to indicate extra information about a receive packet to the ATCP driver. One such example is a fast path receive in which the ATCP driver will need to be notified of how much data the card has buffered. To accomplish this, the first (and sometimes only) buffer in a received packet will actually be an INIC header buffer. The header buffer contains status information about the receive packet, and may or may not contain network data as well. The ATCP driver will recognize a header buffer by mapping it to an ethernet frame and inspecting the type field found in byte 12. We will indicate all TCP frames destined for us in this fashion, while frames that are destined for both our driver and the Microsoft TCP driver (ARP, ICMP) will be indicated without a header buffer.

6051809-10149



Example of incoming TCP pkt



Example of incoming ARP Frame

#### 4.6.2.3 NDIS 4 ProtocolReceivePacket operation

NDIS has been designed such that all packets indicated via `NdisMIndicateReceivePacket` by an underlying miniport are delivered to the `ProtocolReceivePacket` routine for all protocol drivers bound to it. These protocol drivers can choose to accept or not accept the data. They can either accept the data by copying the data out of the packet indicated to it, or alternatively they can keep the packet and return it later via a call to `NdisReturnPackets`. By implementing it in this fashion, NDIS allows more than one protocol driver to accept a given packet. For this reason, when a packet is delivered to a protocol driver, the contents of the packet descriptor, buffer descriptors and data must all be treated as read-only. At the moment, we intend to violate this rule. We choose to violate this because much of the FreeBSD code modifies the packet headers as it examines them (mostly for endian conversion purposes). Rather than modify all of the FreeBSD code, we will instead ensure that no other transport driver accepts the data by making sure that the ethernet type field is unique to us (no one else will want it). Obviously this only works with data that is only delivered to our ATCP driver. For ARP and ICMP frames we will instead copy the data out of the packet into our own buffer and return the packet to NDIS directly. While this is less efficient than keeping the data and returning it later, ARP and ICMP traffic should be small enough, and infrequent enough, that it doesn't matter.

The DDK specifies that when a protocol driver chooses to keep a packet, it should return a value of 1 (or more) to NDIS in its `ProtocolReceivePacket` routine. The packet is then later returned to NDIS via the call to `NdisReturnPackets`. This can only happen after the `ProtocolReceivePacket` has returned control to NDIS. This requires that the call to `NdisReturnPackets` must occur in a different execution context. We can accomplish this by scheduling a DPC, scheduling a system thread, or scheduling a kernel thread of our own. For brevity in this section, we will assume it is done through a DPC. In any case, we will require a queue of pending receive buffers on which to place and fetch receive packets.

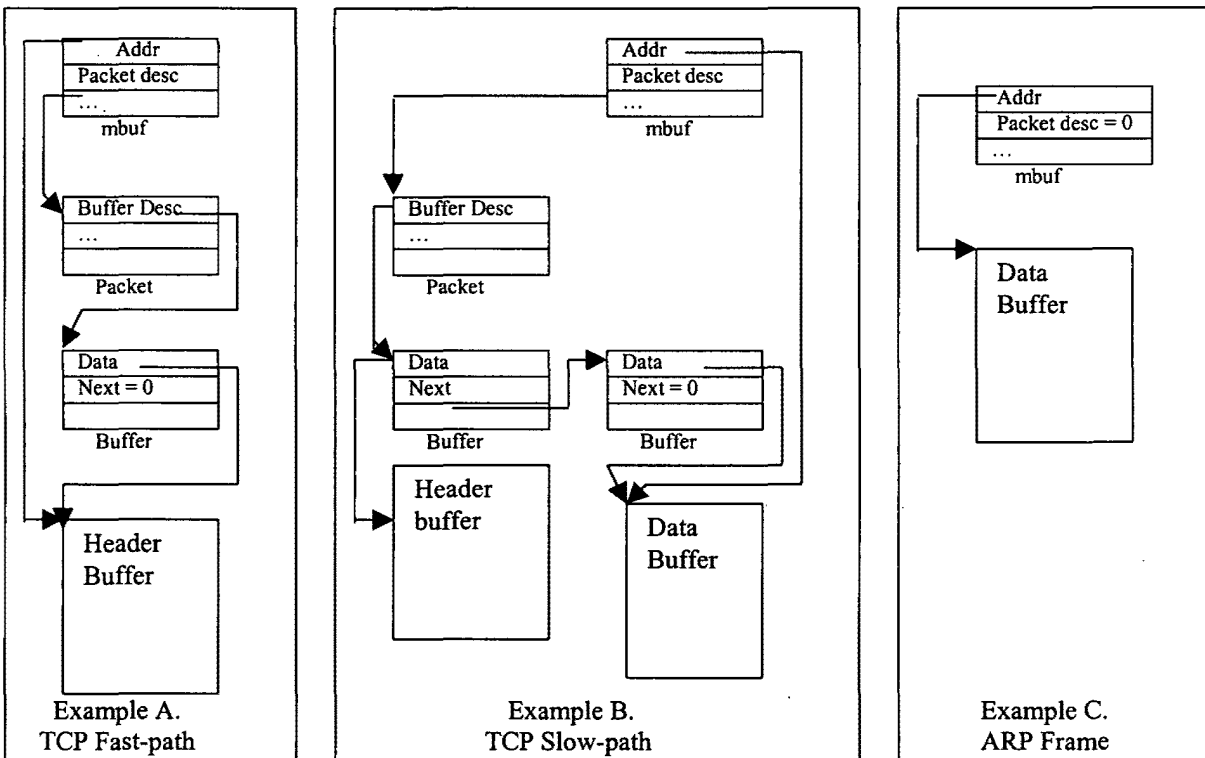
After a receive packet is dequeued by the DPC it is then either passed to TCP directly for fast-path processing, or it is sent through the FreeBSD path for slow-path processing. Note that in the case of slow-path processing, we may be working on data that needs to be returned to NDIS (TCP data) or we may be working on our own copy of the data

60651809-101497

(ARP and ICMP). When we finish with the data we will need to figure out whether or not to return the data to NDIS or not. This will be done via fields in the mbuf header used to map the data. When the mfree routine is called to free a chain of mbufs, the fields in the mbuf will be checked and, if required, the packet descriptor pointed to by the mbuf will be returned to NDIS.

#### 4.6.2.4 Mbuf ↔ Packet mapping

As noted in the section on mbufs above, we will map incoming data to mbufs so that our FreeBSD port requires fewer modifications. Depending on the type of data received, this mapping will appear differently. Here are some examples:



In Example A, we show incoming data for a TCP fast-path connection. In this example, the TCP data is fully contained in the header buffer. The header buffer is mapped by the mbuf and sent upstream for fast-path TCP processing. In this case it is required that the header buffer be mapped and sent upstream because the fast-path TCP code will need information contained in the header buffer in order to perform the processing. When the mbuf in this example is freed, the mfree routine will determine that the mbuf maps a packet that is owned by NDIS and will then free the mbuf header only and call NdisReturnPackets to free the data.

In Example B, we show incoming data for a TCP slow-path connection. In this example the mbuf points to the start of the TCP data directly instead of the header buffer. Since this buffer will be sent up for slow-path FreeBSD processing, we can not have the mbuf pointing to a header buffer (FreeBSD would get awfully confused). Again, when mfree

is called to free the mbuf, it will discover the mapped packet, free the mbuf header, and call NDIS to free the packet and return the underlying buffers. Note that even though we do not directly map the header buffer with the mbuf we do not lose it because of the link from the packet descriptor. Note also that we could alternatively have the INIC miniport driver only pass us the TCP data buffer when it receives a slow-path receive. This would work fine except that we have determined that even in the case of slow-path connections we are going to attempt to offer some assistance to the host TCP driver (most likely by checksum processing only). In this case there may be some special fields that we need to pass up to the ATCP driver from the INIC driver. Leaving the header buffer connected seems the most logical way to do this.

Finally, in Example C, we show a received ARP frame. Recall that for incoming ARP and ICMP frames we are going to copy the incoming data out of the packet and return it directly to NDIS. In this case the mbuf simply points to our data, with no corresponding packet descriptor. When we free this mbuf, mfree will discover this and free not only the mbuf header, but the data as well.

#### 4.6.2.5 Other receive packets

We use this receive mechanism for other purposes besides the reception of network data. It is also used as a method of communication between the ATCP driver and the INIC. One such example is a TCP context flush from the INIC. When the INIC determines, for whatever reason, that it can no longer manage a TCP connection, it must flush that connection to the ATCP driver. It will do this by filling in a header buffer with appropriate status and delivering it to the INIC driver. The INIC driver will in turn deliver it to the protocol driver which will treat it essentially like a fast-path TCP connection by mapping the header buffer with an mbuf header and delivering it to TCP for fast-path processing. There are two advantages to communicating in this manner. First, it is already an established path, so no extra coding or testing is required. Second, since a context flush comes in, in the same manner as received frames, it will prevent us from getting a slow-path frame before the context has been flushed.

#### 4.6.2.6 Summary

Having covered all of the various types of receive data, following are the steps that are taken by the ATKProtocolReceivePacket routine.

1. Map incoming data to an ethernet frame and check the type field.
2. If the type field contains our custom INIC type then it should be TCP
3. If the header buffer specifies a fast-path connection, allocate one or more mbufs headers to map the header and possibly data buffers. Set the packet descriptor field of the mbuf to point to the packet descriptor, set the mbuf flags appropriately, queue the mbuf, and return 1.
4. If the header buffer specifies a slow-path connection, allocate a single mbuf header to map the network data, set the mbuf fields to map the packet, queue the mbuf and return 1. Note that we design the INIC such that we will never get a TCP segment split across more than one buffer.



5. If the type field of the frame indicates ARP or ICMP
6. Allocate a mbuf with a data buffer. Copy the contents of the packet into the mbuf. Queue the mbuf, and return 0 (not accepted).
7. If the type field is not either the INIC type, ARP or ICMP, we don't want it. Return 0.

The receive processing will continue when the mbufs are dequeued. At the moment this is done by a routine called ATKProtocolReceiveDPC. It will do the following:

1. Dequeue a mbuf from the queue.
2. Inspect the mbuf flags. If the mbuf is meant for fast-path TCP, it will call the fast-path routine directly. Otherwise it will call the ethernet input routine for slow-path processing.

#### 4.6.3 Transmit

In this section we discuss the ATCP transmit path.

##### 4.6.3.1 NDIS 4 send operation

The NDIS 4 send operation works as follows. When a transport/protocol driver wishes to send one or more packets down to an NDIS 4 miniport driver, it calls NdisSendPackets with an array of packet descriptors to send. As soon as this routine is called, the transport/protocol driver relinquishes ownership of the packets until they are returned, one by one in any order, via a NDIS call to the ProtocolSendComplete routine. Since this routine is called asynchronously, our ATCP driver must save any required context into the packet descriptor header so that the appropriate resources can be freed. This is discussed further in the following sections.

##### 4.6.3.2 Types of "sends"

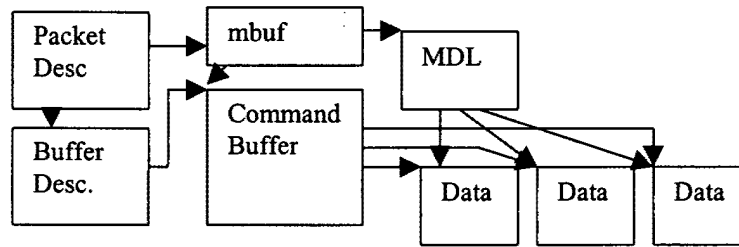
Like the Receive path described above, the transmit path is used not only to send network data, but is also used as a communication mechanism between the host and the INIC. Here are some examples of the types of sends performed by the ATCP driver.

##### 4.6.3.2.1 Fast-path TCP send

When the ATCP driver receives a transmit request with an associated MDL, it will package up the MDL physical addresses into a command buffer, map the command buffer with a buffer and packet descriptor, and call NdisSendPackets with the corresponding packet. The underlying INIC driver will issue the command buffer to the INIC. When the corresponding response buffer is given back to the host, the INIC miniport will call NdisMSendComplete which will result in a call to the ATCP ProtocolSendComplete (ATKSendComplete) routine, at which point the resources associated with the send can be freed. We will allocate and use a mbuf to hold the command buffer. By doing this we can store the context necessary in order to clean up after the send completes. This context includes a pointer to the MDL and presumably some other connection context as well. The other advantage to using a mbuf to hold the command buffer is that it eliminates having another special set of code to allocate and return command buffer. We will store a pointer to the mbuf in the reserved section of the

254707-60879009

packet descriptor so we can locate it when the send is complete. The following diagram illustrates the relationship between the client's MDL, the command buffer, and the buffer and packet descriptors.

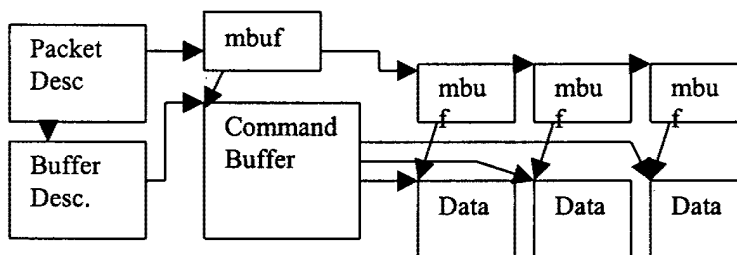


#### 4.6.3.2.2 Fast-path TCP Receive

As described in section 4.3.1 above, the receive process typically occurs in two phases. First the INIC fills in a host receive buffer with a relatively small amount of data, but notifies the host of a large amount of pending data (either through a large amount of buffered data on the card, or through a large amount of expected NetBios data). This small amount of data is delivered to the client through the TDI interface. The client will then respond with a MDL in which the data should be placed. Like the Fast-path TCP send process, the receive portion of the ATPC driver will then fill in a command buffer with the MDL information from the client, map the buffer with packet and buffer descriptors and send it to the INIC via a call to NdisSendPackets. Again, when the response buffer is returned to the INIC miniport, the ATKSendComplete routine will be called and the receive will complete. This relationship between the MDL, command buffer and buffer and packet descriptors are the same as shown in the Fast-path send section above.

#### 4.6.3.2.3 Slow-path (FreeBSD)

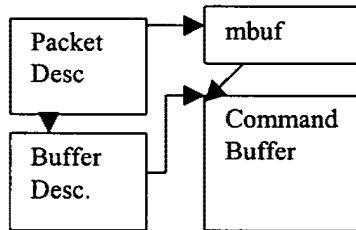
Slow-path sends pass through the FreeBSD stack until the ethernet header is prepended in ether\_output and the packet is ready to be sent. At this point a command buffer will be filled with pointers to the ethernet frame, the command buffer will be mapped with a packet and buffer descriptor and NdisSendPackets will be called to hand the packet off to the miniport. In the illustration below we show the relationship between the mbufs, command buffer, and buffer and packet descriptors. Since we will use a mbuf to map the command buffer, we can simply link the data mbufs directly off of the command buffer mbuf. This will make the freeing of resources much simpler.



20051809-10449

#### 4.6.3.2.4 Non-data command buffer

The transmit path is also used to send non-data commands to the card. For example, the ATCP driver gives a context to the INIC by filling in a command buffer, mapping it with a packet and buffer descriptor, and calling NdisSendPackets.



#### 4.6.3.3 ATKProtocolSendComplete

Given the above different types of sends, the ATKProtocolSendComplete routine will perform various types of actions when it is called from NDIS. First it must examine the reserved area of the packet descriptor to determine what type of request has completed. In the case of a slow-path completion, it can simply free the mbufs, command buffer, and descriptors and return. In the case of a fast-path completion, it will need to notify the TCP fast path routines of the completion so TCP can in turn complete the client's IRP. Similarly, when a non-data command buffer completes, TCP will again be notified that the command sent to the INIC has completed.

### 4.7 TDI Filter Driver

In a first embodiment of the product, the INIC handles only simple-case data transfer operations on a TCP connection. (These of course constitute the large majority of CPU cycles consumed by TCP processing in a conventional driver.)

There are many other complexities of the TCP protocol which must still be handled by host driver software: connection setup and breakdown, out-of-order data, nonstandard flags, etc.

The NT OS contains a fully functional TCP/IP driver, and one solution would be to enhance this so that it is able to detect our INIC and take advantage of it by "handing off" data-path processing where appropriate.

Unfortunately, we do not have access to NT source, let alone permission to modify NT. Thus the solution above, while a goal, cannot be done immediately. We instead provide our own custom driver software on the host for those parts of TCP processing which are not handled by the INIC.

This presents a challenge. The NT network driver framework does make provision for multiple types of protocol driver: but it does not easily allow for multiple instances of drivers handling the SAME protocol.

20050814 16:01

For example, there are no "hooks" into the Microsoft TCP/IP driver which would allow for routing of IP packets between our driver (handling our INICs) and the Microsoft driver (handling other NICs).

Our approach to this is to retain the Microsoft driver for all non-TCP network processing (even for traffic on our INICs), but to invisibly "steal" TCP traffic on our connections and handle it via our own (BSD-derived) driver. The Microsoft TCP/IP driver is unaware of TCP connections on interfaces we handle.

The network "bottom end" of this artifice is described earlier in the document. In this section we will discuss the "top end": the TDI interface to higher-level NT network client software.

We make use of an NT facility called a filter driver. NT allows a special type of driver ("filter driver") to attach itself "on top" of another driver in the system. The NT I/O manager then arranges that all requests directed to the attached driver are sent first to the filter driver; this arrangement is invisible to the rest of the system.

The filter driver may then either handle these requests itself, or pass them down to the underlying driver it is attached to. Provided the filter driver completely replicates the (externally visible) behavior of the underlying driver when it handles requests itself, the existence of the filter driver is invisible to higher-level software.

The filter driver attaches itself on top of the Microsoft TCP/IP driver; this gives us the basic mechanism whereby we can intercept requests for TCP operations and handle them in our driver instead of the Microsoft driver.

However, while the filter driver concept gives us a framework for what we want to achieve, there are some significant technical problems to be solved. The basic issue is that setting up a TCP connection involves a sequence of several requests from higher-level software, and it is not always possible to tell, for requests early in this sequence, whether the connection should be handled by our driver or by the Microsoft driver.

Thus for many requests, we store information about the request in case we need it later, but also allow the request to be passed down to the Microsoft TCP/IP driver in case the connection ultimately turns out to be one which that driver should handle.

Let us look at this in more detail, which will involve some examination of the TDI interface: the NT interface into the top end of NT network protocol drivers. Higher-level TDI client software which requires services from a protocol driver proceeds by creating various types of NT FILE\_OBJECTs, and then making various DEVICE\_IO\_CONTROL requests on these FILE\_OBJECTs.

There are two types of FILE\_OBJECT of interest here. Local IP addresses that are represented by ADDRESS objects, and TCP connections that are represented by CONNECTION objects. The steps involved in setting up a TCP connection (from the "active", client, side) are:

20051009 1049

(for a CONNECTION object)

- 1) Create an ADDRESS object.
- 2) Create a CONNECTION object.
- 3) Issue a TDI\_ASSOCIATE\_ADDRESS io-control to associate the CONNECTION object with the ADDRESS object.
- 4) Issue a TDI\_CONNECT io-control on the CONNECTION object, specifying the remote address and port for the connection.

Initial thoughts were that handling this would be straightforward: we would tell, on the basis of the address given when creating the ADDRESS object, whether the connection is for one of our interfaces or not. After which, it would be easy to arrange for handling entirely by our code, or entirely by the Microsoft code: we would simply examine the ADDRESS object to see if it was "one of ours" or not.

There are two main difficulties, however.

First, when the CONNECTION object is created, no address is specified: it acquires a local address only later when the TDI\_ASSOCIATE\_ADDRESS is done. Also, when a CONNECTION object is created, the caller supplies an opaque "context cookie" which will be needed for later communications with that caller. Storage of this cookie is the responsibility of the protocol driver: it is not directly derivable just by examination of the CONNECTION object itself. If we simply passed the "create" call down to the Microsoft TCP/IP driver, we would have no way of obtaining this cookie later if it turns out that we need to handle the connection.

Therefore, for every CONNECTION object which is created we allocate a structure to keep track of information about it, and store this structure in a hash table keyed by the address of the CONNECTION object itself, so that we can locate it if we later need to process requests on this object. We refer to this as a "shadow" object: it replicates information about the object stored in the Microsoft driver. (We must, of course, also pass the create request down to the Microsoft driver too, to allow it to set up its own administrative information about the object.)

A second major difficulty arises with ADDRESS objects. These are often created with the TCP/IP "wildcard" address (all zeros); the actual local address is assigned only later during connection setup (by the protocol driver itself.) Of course, a "wildcard" address does not allow us to determine whether connections that will be associated with this ADDRESS object should be handled by our driver or by the Microsoft one. Also, as with CONNECTION objects, there is "opaque" data associated with ADDRESS objects that cannot be derived just from examination of the object itself. (In this case addresses of callback functions set on the object by TDI\_SET\_EVENT io-controls.)

Thus, as in the CONNECTION object case, we create a "shadow" object for each ADDRESS object which is created with a wildcard address. In this we store information (principally addresses of callback functions) which we will need if we are handling connections on CONNECTION objects associated with this ADDRESS object. We store similar information, of course, for any ADDRESS object which is explicitly for one of

2019-08-08 10:00:00

our interface addresses; in this case we don't need to also pass the create request down to the Microsoft driver.

With this concept of "shadow" objects in place, let us revisit the steps involved in setting up a connection, and look at the processing required in our driver.

First, the TDI client makes a call to create the ADDRESS object. Assuming that this is a "wildcard" address, we create a "shadow" object before passing the call down to the Microsoft driver.

The next step (omitted in the earlier list for brevity) is normally that the client makes a number of TDI\_SET\_EVENT io-control calls to associate various callback functions with the ADDRESS object. These are functions that should be called to notify the TDI client when certain events (such arrival of data or disconnection requests etc) occur. We store these callback function pointers in our "shadow" address object, before passing the call down to the Microsoft driver.

Next, the TDI client makes a call to create a CONNECTION object. Again, we create our "shadow" of this object.

Next, the client issues the TDI\_ASSOCIATE\_ADDRESS io-control to bind the CONNECTION object to the ADDRESS object. We note the association in our "shadow" objects, and also pass the call down to the Microsoft driver.

Finally the TDI client issues a TDI\_CONNECT io-control on the CONNECTION object, specifying the remote IP address (and port) for the desired connection. At this point, we examine our routing tables (see section XXX for details of routing) to determine if this connection should be handled by one of our interfaces, or by some other NIC. If it is ours, we mark the CONNECTION object as "one of ours" for future reference (using an opaque field which NT FILE\_OBJECTS provide for driver use.) We then proceed with connection setup and handling in our driver, using information stored in our "shadow" objects. The Microsoft driver does not see the connection request or any subsequent traffic on the connection.

If the connection request is NOT for one of our interfaces, we pass it down to the Microsoft driver. Note carefully, however, that we can not simply discard our "shadow" objects at this point. The TDI interface allows re-use of CONNECTION objects: on termination of a connection, it is legal for the TDI client to dissociate the CONNECTION object from its current . Thus our "shadow" objects must be retained for the lifetime ADDRESS object, re-associate it with another, and use it for another connection of the NT FILE\_OBJECTS: the subsequent connection could turn out to be via one of our interfaces!

## 4.7.1 Timers

### 4.7.1.1 Keepalive Timer

We don't want to implement keepalive timers on the INIC. It would in any case be a very poor use of resources to have an INIC context sitting idle for two hours.

### 4.7.1.2 Idle Timer

We will keep an idle timer in the ATCP driver for connections that are managed by the INIC (resetting it whenever we see activity on the connection), and cause a flush of context back to the host if this timer expires. We may want to make the threshold substantially lower than 2 hours, to reclaim INIC context slots for useful work sooner. May also want to make that dependent on the number of contexts which have actually been handed out: don't need to reclaim them if we haven't handed out the max.

## 5 Receive & Transmit Microcode Design

This section provides a general description of the design of the microcode that will execute on two of the sequencers of the Protocol Processor on the INIC. The overall philosophy of the INIC is discussed in other sections. This section will discuss the INIC microcode in detail.

### 5.1 Design Overview

As specified in other sections, the INIC supplies a set of 3 custom processors that will provide considerable hardware-assist to the microcode running thereon. The following lists the main hardware-assist features:

- header processing with specialized DMA engines to validate an input header and generate a context hash, move the header into fast memory and do header comparisons on a DRAM-based TCP control block.
- DRAM fifos for free buffer queues (large & small), receive-frame queues, event queues etc.
- header compare logic
- checksum generation
- multiple register contexts with register access controlled by simply setting a context register. The Protocol Processor will provide 512 SRAM-based registers to be shared among the 3 sequencers.
- automatic movement of input frames into DRAM buffers from the MAC Fifos.
- run receive processing on one sequencer and transmit processing on the other. This was chosen as opposed to letting both sequencers run receive and transmit. One of the main reasons for this is that the header-processing hardware can not be shared and interlocks would be needed to do this. Another reason is that interlocks would be needed on the resources used exclusively by receive and by transmit.
- The INIC will support up to 256 TCP connections (TCB's). A TCB is associated with an input frame when the frame's source and destination IP addresses and source and destination ports match that of the TCB. For speed of access, the TCB's will be

CONFIDENTIAL

maintained in a hash table in NIC DRAM to save sequential searching. There will however, be an index in hash order in SRAM. Once a hash has been generated, the TCB will be cached in SRAM. There will be up to 8 cached TCBs in SRAM. These cache locations can be shared between both sequencers so that the sequencer with the heavier load will be able to use more cache buffers. There will also be 8 header buffers to be shared between the sequencers. Note that each header buffer is not statically linked to a specific TCB buffer. In fact the link is dynamic on a per-frame basis. The need for this dynamic linking will be explained in later sections. Suffice to say here that if there is a free header buffer, then somewhere there is also a free TCB SRAM buffer.

- There were 2 basic implementation options considered here. The first was single-stack and the second was a process model. The process model was chosen here because the custom processor design is providing zero-cost overhead for context switching through the use of a context base register, and because there will be more than enough process slots (or contexts) available for the peak load. It is also expected that all "local" variables will be held permanently in registers whilst an event is being processed.
- The features that provide this are:
  - 256 of the 512 SRAM-based registers will be used for the register contexts. This can be divided up into 16 contexts (or processes) of 16 registers each. Then 8 of these will be reserved for receive and 8 for transmit. A Little's Law analysis has shown that in order to support 512 byte frames at maximum arrival rate of  $4 * 100$  Mbits, requires more than 8 jobs to be in process in the NIC. However each job requires an SRAM buffer for a TCB context and at present, there are only 8 of these currently specified due to SRAM space limits. So more contexts (e.g.  $32 * 8$  regs each) do not seem worthwhile. Refer to Appendix A for more details of this analysis.
  - A context switch simply involves reloading the context base register based on the context to be restarted, and jumping to the appropriate address for resumption.
- To better support the process model chosen, the code will lock an active TCB into an SRAM buffer while either sequencer is operating on it. This implies there will be no swapping to and from DRAM of a TCB once it is in SRAM and an operation is started on it. More specifically, the TCB will not be swapped after requesting that a DMA be performed for it. Instead, the system will switch to another active "process". Then it will resume the former process at the point directly after where the DMA was requested. This constitutes a zero-cost switch as mentioned above.
- individual TCB state machines will be run from within a "process". There will be a state machine for the receive side and one for the transmit side. The current TCB states will be stored in the SRAM TCB index table entry.
- The INIC will have 16 MB of DRAM. The current specification calls for dividing a large portion of this into 2K buffers and control allocation / deallocation of these buffers through one of the DRAM fifos mentioned above. These fifos will also be used to control small host buffers, large host buffers, command buffers and command response buffers.
- For events from one sequencer to the other (i.e. RCV  $\Leftrightarrow$  XMT), the current specification calls for using simple SRAM CIO buffers, one for each direction.
- Each sequencer handles its own timers independently of the others.
- Contexts will be passed to the INIC through the Transmit command and response buffers. INIC-initiated TCB releases will be handled through the Receive small



buffers. Host-initiated releases will use the Command buffers. There needs to be strict handling of the acquisition and release of contexts to avoid windows where for example, a frame is received on a context just after the context was passed to the INIC, but before the INIC has "accepted" it.

- T/TCP (Transaction TCP): the initial INIC will not handle T/TCP connections. This is because they are typically used for the HTTP protocol and the client for that protocol typically connects, sends a request and disconnects in one segment. The server sends the connect confirm, reply and disconnect in his first segment. Then the client confirms the disconnect. This is a total of 3 segments for the life of a context. Typical data lengths are on the order of 300 bytes from the client and 3K from the server. The INIC will provide as good an assist as seems necessary here by checksumming the frame and splitting headers and data. The latter is only likely when data is forwarded with a request such as when a filled-in form is sent by the client.

### 5.1.1 SRAM Requirements

The following are SRAM requirements for the Receive and Transmit engines:

|                  |                |                           |
|------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| TCB buffers      | 256 bytes * 16 | 4096                      |
| Header buffers   | 128 bytes * 16 | 2048                      |
| TCB hash index   | 16 bytes * 256 | 4096                      |
| Timers           |                | 128                       |
| DRAM Fifo queues | 128 bytes * 16 | <u>2048</u><br>~12K bytes |

Depending upon the available space, the number of TCB buffers may be increased to 16.

### 5.1.2 General Philosophy

The basic plan is to have the host determine when a TCP connection is able to be handed to the INIC, setup the TCB and pass it to the card via a command in the Transmit queue. TCBs that the INIC owns can be handed back to the host via a request from the Receive or Transmit sequencers or from the host itself at any time.

When the INIC receives a frame, one of its immediate tasks is to determine if the frame is for a TCB that it controls. If not, the frame is passed to the host on a generic interface TCB. On transmit, the transmit request will specify a TCB hash number if the request is on a INIC-controlled TCB. Thus the initial state for the INIC will be transparent mode in which all received frames are directly passed through and all transmit requests will be simply thrown on the appropriate wire. This state is maintained until the host passes TCBs to the INIC to control. Note that frames received for which the INIC has no TCB (or it is with the host) will still have the TCP checksum verified if TCP/IP, and may split the TCPIP header off into a separate buffer.

20081209-1049

### 5.1.3 Register Usage

There will be 512 registers available. The first 256 will be used for process contexts. The remaining 256 will be split between the 3 sequencers as follows:

257 – 320: 64 for RCV general processing / main loop.

321 - 384: 64 for XMT general processing / main loop.

385 – 512: 128 for 3<sup>rd</sup> sequencer use.

## 5.2 Receive Processing

### 5.2.1 Main Loop

The following is a summary of the main loop of Receive:

```
forever {
    while there are any Receive events {
        if (a new event) {
            if (no new context available)
                ignore the event;
        }
        call appropriate event handler to service the event;
        this may make a waiting process runnable or set up
        a new process to be run (get free context, hhdr buffer,
        TCB buffer, set the context up).
    }
    while any process contexts are runnable {
        run them by jumping to the start/resume address;
        if (process complete)
            free the context;
    }
}
```

### 5.2.2 Receive Events

The events that will be processed on a given context are:

- accept a context
- release a context command (from the host via Transmit)
- release a context request (from Transmit)
- receive a valid frame; this will actually become 2 events based on the received frame
  - receive an ACK, receive a segment
- receive an “invalid” frame i.e. one that causes the TCB to be flushed to the host
- a valid ACK needs to be sent (delayed ACK timer expiry).
- There are expected to be the following sources of events:
  1. Receive input queue: it is expected that hardware will automatically DMA arriving frames into frame buffers and queue an event into a RCV-event queue.
  2. Timer event queue: expiration of a timer will queue an event into this queue.
  3. Transmit sequencer queue: for requests from the transmit processor.

2019-04-10 10:49:09

For the sake of brevity the following only discusses receive-frame processing .

### 5.2.3 Receive Details – Valid Context

The base for the receive processing done by the INIC on an existing context is the fast-path or “header prediction” code in the FreeBSD release. Thus the processing is divided into 3 parts: header validation and checksumming, TCP processing and subsequent SMB processing.

#### 5.2.3.1 Header Validation

There is considerable hardware assist here. The first step in receive processing is to dma the frame header into an SRAM header buffer. It is useful for header validation to be implemented in conjunction with this dma by scanning the data as it flies by. The following tests need to be “passed”:

- MAC header: destination address is our MAC address (not MC or BC too), the Ethertype is IP.
- IP header: header checksum is valid, header length = 5, IP length > header length, protocol = TCP, no fragmentation, destination IP is our IP address.
- TCP header: checksum is valid (incl. pseudo-header), header length = 5 or 8 (timestamp option), length is valid, dest port = SMB or FTP data, no FIN/SYN/URG/PSH/RST bits set, timestamp option is valid if present, segment is in sequence, the window size did not change, this is not a retransmission, it is a pure ACK or a pure receive segment, and most important, a valid context exists. The valid-context test is non-trivial in the amount of work involved to determine it. Also note that for pure ACKs, the window-size test will be relaxed. This is because initially the output PERSIST state is to be handled on the INIC.

Many but perhaps not all of these tests will be performed in hardware – depending upon the embodiment

#### 5.2.3.2 TCP Processing

Once a frame has passed the header validation tests, processing splits based on whether the frame is a pure ACK or a pure received segment.

##### 5.2.3.2.1 Pure RCV Packet

The design is to split off headers into a small header buffer and pass the aligned data in separate large buffers. Since a frame has been received, eventually some receiver process on the host will need to be informed. In the case of FTP, the frame is pure data and it is passed to the host immediately. This involves getting large buffers and dmaing the data into them, then setting the appropriate details in a small buffer that is used to notify the host. However for SMB, the INIC is performing reassembly of data when the frame consists of headers and data. So there may not yet be a complete SMB to pass to the host. In this case, a small buffer will be acquired and the header moved into it. If the received segment completes an SMB, then the procedures are pretty much as for FTP. If it does not, then the scheme is to at least move the received data (not the headers) to the host to free the INIC buffers and to save latency. The list of in-progress host buffers is maintained in the TCB and moved to the header buffer when the SMB is complete.

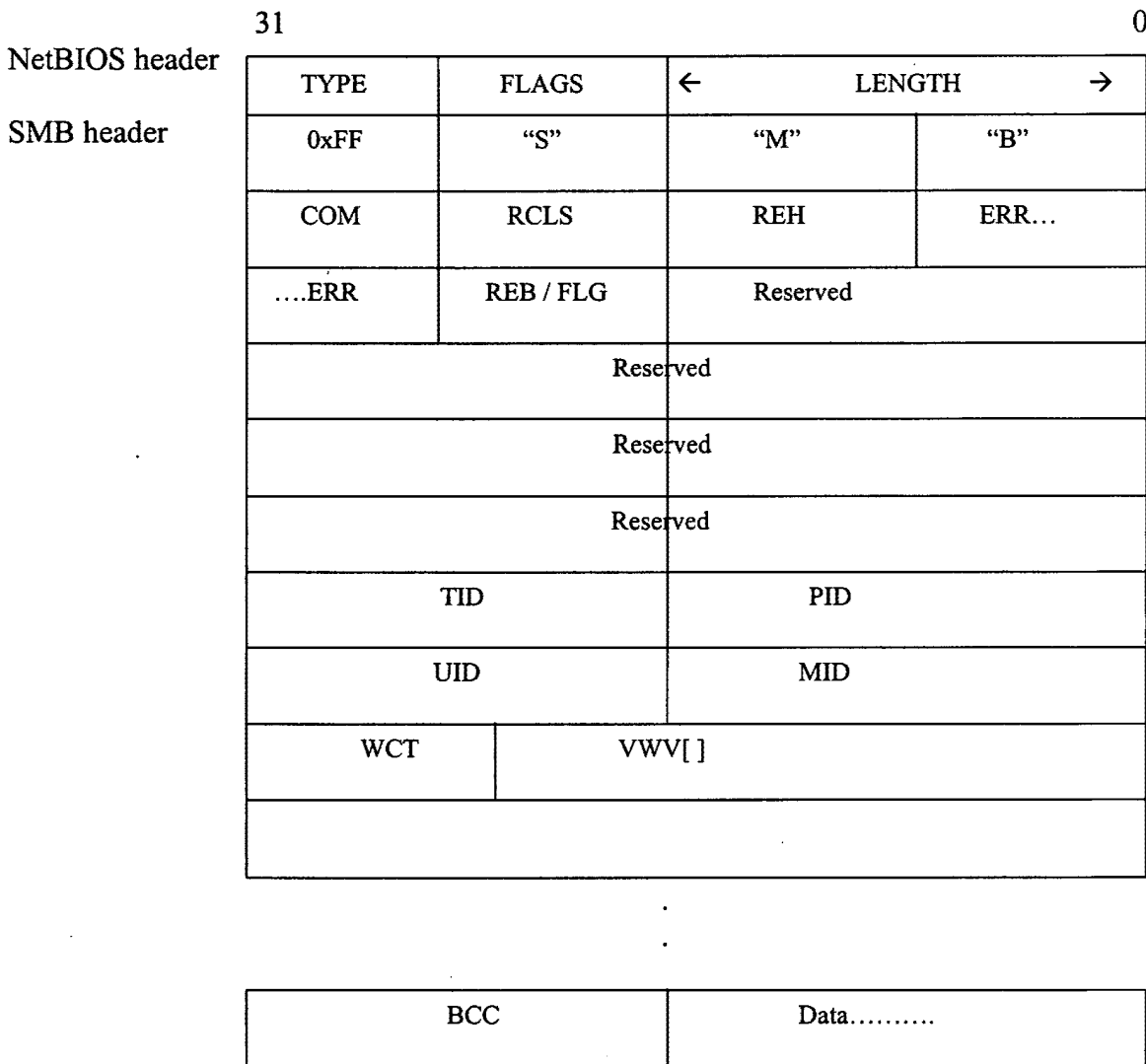
The final part of pure-receive processing is to fire off the delayed ACK timer for this segment.

### 5.2.3.2.2 Pure ACK

Pure ACK processing implies this TCB is the sender, so there may be transmit buffers that can be returned to the host. If so, send an event to the Transmit processor (or do the processing here). If there is more output available, send an event to the transmit processor. Then appropriate actions need to be taken with the retransmission timer.

### 5.2.3.3 SMB Processing

The following is the format of the SMB header of an SMB frame:



Notes (interesting fields):

- LENGTH            17 bit Length of SMB message (0 – 128K)
- COM                SMB command
- WCT                Count (16 bit) of parameter words in VWV[]
- VWV                Variable number of parameter words
- BCC                Bytes of data following

20061009 10:49

The LENGTH field of the NetBIOS header will be used to determine when a complete SMB has been received and the header buffer with appropriate details can be posted to the host.

The interesting commands are the write commands: SMBwrite (0xB), SMBwriteBraw (0x1D), SMBwriteBmpx (0x1E), SMBwriteBs (0x1F), SMBwriteclose (0x2C), SMBwriteX (0x2F), SMBwriteunlock (0x14). These are interesting because they will have data to be aligned in host memory. The point to note about these commands is that they each have a different WCT field, so that the start offset of the data depends on the command type. SMB processing will thus need to be cognizant of these types.

#### 5.2.4 Receive Details – No Valid Context

The design here is to provide as much assist as possible. Frames will be checksummed and the TCPIP headers may be split off.

#### 5.2.5 Receive Notes

1. PRU\_RCVD or the equivalent in Microsoft language: the host application has to tell the INIC when he has accepted the received data that has been queued. This is so that the INIC can update the receive window. It is an advantage for this mechanism to be efficient. This may be accomplished by piggybacking these on transmit requests (not necessarily for the same TCB).
2. Keepalive Timer: for a INIC-controlled TCB, the INIC will not maintain this timer. This leaves the host with the job of determining that the TCB is still active.
3. Timestamp option: it is useful to support this option in the fast path because the BSD implementation does. Also, it can be very helpful in getting a much better estimate of the round-trip time (RTT) which TCP needs to use.
4. Idle timer: the INIC will not maintain this timer (see Note 2 above).
5. Frame with no valid context: The INIC may split TCP/IP headers into a separate header buffer.

254701" 60875009

## 5.3 Transmit Processing

### 5.3.1 Main Loop.

The following is a summary of the main loop of Transmit:

```
forever {
    while there are any Transmit events {
        if (a new event) {
            if (no new context available)
                ignore the event;
        }
        call appropriate event handler to service the event;
        this may make a waiting process runnable or set up
        a new process to be run (get free context, hhdr buffer,
        TCB buffer, set the context up).
    }
    while any process contexts are runnable {
        run them by jumping to the start/resume address;
        if (process complete)
            free the context;
    }
}
```

### 5.3.2 Transmit Events

The events that will be processed on a given context and their sources are:

- accept a context (from the Host).
- release a context command (from the Host).
- release a context command (from Receive).
- valid send request and window > 0 (from host or RCV sequencer).
- valid send request and window = 0 (from host or RCV sequencer).
- send a window update (host has accepted data).
- persist timer expiration (persist timer).
- context-release event e.g. window shrank (XMT processing or retransmission timer).
- receive-release request ACK( from RCV sequencer).

### 5.3.3 Transmit Details – Valid Context

The following is an overview of the transmit flow:

The host posts a transmit request to the INIC by filling in a command buffer with appropriate data pointers etc and posting it to the INIC via the Command Buffer Address register. Note that there is one host command buffer queue, but there are 4 physical transmit lines. So each request needs to include an interface number as well as the context number. The INIC microcode will dma the command in and place it in 1 of 4 internal command queues which the transmit sequencer will work on. This is so that transmit processing can round-robin service these 4 queues to keep all 4 interfaces busy, and not

20190910 10:49:09

let a highly-active interface lock out the others (which would happen with a single queue).

The transmit request may be a segment that is less than the MSS, or it may be as much as a full 64K SMB READ. Obviously the former request will go out as one segment, the latter as a number of MSS-sized segments. The transmitting TCB must hold on to the request until all data in it has been transmitted and acked. Appropriate pointers to do this will be kept in the TCB. A large buffer is acquired from the free buffer fifo, and the MAC and TCP/IP headers are created in it. It may be quicker/simpler to keep a basic frame header set up in the TCB and either dma directly this into the frame each time. Then data is dmad from host memory into the frame to create an MSS-sized segment. This dma also checksums the data. Then the checksum is adjusted for the pseudo-header and placed into the TCP header, and the frame is queued to the MAC transmit interface which may be controlled by the third sequencer. The final step is to update various window fields etc in the TCB. Eventually either the entire request will have been sent and acked, or a retransmission timer will expire in which case the context is flushed to the host. In either case, the INIC will place a command response in the Response queue containing the command buffer handle from the original transmit command and appropriate status. The above discussion has dealt how an actual transmit occurs. However the real challenge in the transmit processor is to determine whether it is appropriate to transmit at the time a transmit request arrives. There are many reasons not to transmit: the receiver's window size is  $\leq 0$ , the Persist timer has expired, the amount to send is less than a full segment and an ACK is expected / outstanding, the receiver's window is not half-open etc. Much of the transmit processing will be in determining these conditions.

#### 5.3.4 Transmit Details – No Valid Context

The main difference between this and a context-based transmit is that the queued request here will already have the appropriate MAC and TCP/IP (or whatever) headers in the frame to be output. Also the request is guaranteed not to be greater than MSS-sized in length. So the processing is fairly simple. A large buffer is acquired and the frame is dmad into it, at which time the checksum is also calculated. If the frame is TCP/IP, the checksum will be appropriately adjusted if necessary (pseudo-header etc) and placed in the TCP header. The frame is then queued to the appropriate MAC transmit interface. Then the command is immediately responded to with appropriate status through the Response queue.

#### 5.3.5 Transmit Notes

1. Slow-start: the INIC will handle the slow-start algorithm that is now a part of the TCP standard. This obviates waiting until the connection is sending a full-rate before passing it to the INIC.
2. Window Probe vs Window Update: an explanation for posterity....

A Window Probe is sent from the sending TCB to the receiving TCB, and it means the sender has the receiver in PERSIST state. Persist state is entered when the receiver advertises a zero window. It is thus the state of the transmitting TCB. In this state, he sends periodic window probes to the receiver in case an ACK from the receiver has been lost. The receiver will return his latest window size in the ACK.

A Window Update is sent from the receiving TCB to the sending TCB, usually to tell him that the receiving window has altered. It is mostly triggered by the upper layer when it accepts some data. This probably means the sending TCB is viewing the receiving TCB as being in PERSIST state.

3. Persist state: it is designed to handle Persist state on the INIC. It seems unreasonable to throw a TCB back to the host just because its receiver advertised a zero window. This would normally be a transient situation, and would tend to happen mostly with clients that do not support slow-start. Alternatively, the code can easily be changed to throw the TCB back to the host as soon as a receiver advertises a zero window.
4. MSS-sized frames: the INIC code will expect all transmit requests for which it has no TCB to not be greater than the MSS. If any request is, it will be dropped and an appropriate response status posted.
5. Silly Window avoidance: as a receiver, the INIC will do the right thing here and not advertise small windows – this is easy. However it is necessary to also do things to avoid this as a sender, for the cases where a stupid client does advertise small windows. Without getting into too much detail here, the mechanism requires the INIC code to calculate the largest window advertisement ever advertised by the other end. It is an attempt to guess the size of the other end's receive buffer and assumes the other end never reduces the size of its receive buffer. See Stevens Vol. 1 pp. 325-326.

## 6 The Utility Processor

### 6.1 Summary

The following is a summary of the main functions of the utility sequencer of the microprocessor:

- look at the event queues: Event13Type & Event23Type (we assume there will be an event status bit for this - USE\_EV13 and USE\_EV23) in the events register; these are events from sequencers 1 and 2; they will mainly be XMIT requests from the XMT sequencer. Dequeue request and place the frame on the appropriate interface.
- RCV-frame support: in the model, RCV is done through VnicReceive() which is registered by the lower-edge driver, and is called at dispatch-level. This routine calls VnicTransferDataComplete() to check if the xfer (possibly DMA) of the frame into host buffers is complete. The latter rtne is also called at dispatch level on a DMA-completion interrupt. It queues complete buffers to the RCV sequencer via the normal queue mechanism.
- Other processes may also be employed here for supporting the RCV sequencer.
- service the following registers: (this will probably involve micro-interrupts)
  - Header Buffer Address register:
    - buffers are 256 bytes long on 256-byte boundaries.
    - 31-8 - physical addr in host of a set of contiguous hhdr buffers
    - 7-0 - number of hhdr buffers passed.
    - Use contents to add to SmallHType queue

6081309-101497



Data Buffer Handle & Data Buffer Address registers:  
buffers are 4K long aligned on 4K boundaries...  
Use contents to add to the FreeType queue.

Command Buffer Address register:  
buffers are multiple of 32 bytes up to 1K long ( $2^{**5} * 32$ )  
31-5 - physical addr in host of cmd buffer  
4-0 - length of cmd in bytes/32  
(i.e. multiples of 32 bytes)  
Points to host cmd; get FreeSType buffer and move  
command into it; queue to Xmit0-Xmit3Type queues.

Response Buffer Address register:  
buffers are 32 bytes long on 32-byte boundaries  
31-8 - physical addr in host of a set of  
contiguous resp buffers  
7-0 - number of resp buffers passed.  
Use contents to add to the ResponseType queue.

- low buffer threshold support: set approp bits in the ISR when the available-buffers count in the various queues filled by the host falls below a threshold.

## 6.2 Further Operations of the Utility Processor

The utility processor of the microprocessor housed on the INIC is responsible for setting up and implementing all configuration space and memory mapped operations, and also as described below, for managing the debug interface.

All data transfers, and other INIC initiated transfers will be done via DMA. Configuration space for both the network processor function and the utility processor function will define a single memory space for each. This memory space will define the basic communication structure for the host. In general, writing to one of these memory locations will perform a request for service from the INIC. This is detailed in the memory description for each function. This section defines much of the operation of the Host interface, but should be read in conjunction with the Host Interface Strategy for the Alacritech INIC to fully define the Host/INIC interface.

Two registers, DMA hardware and an interrupt function comprise the INIC interface to the Host through PCI. The interrupt function is implemented via a four bit register (PCI\_INT) tied to the PCI interrupt lines. This register is directly accessed by the microprocessor.

THE MICROPROCESSOR uses two registers, the PCI\_Data\_Reg and the PCI\_Address\_Reg, to enable the Host to access Configuration Space and the memory space allocated to the INIC. These registers are not available to the Host, but are used by THE MICROPROCESSOR to enable Host reads and writes. The function of these two registers is as follows.

## PCI\_Data\_Reg

This register can be both read and written by THE MICROPROCESSOR. On write operations from the host, this register contains the data being sent from the host. On read operations, this register contains the data to be sent to the host.

## PCI\_Address\_Reg

This is the control register for memory reads and writes from the host. The structure of the register is as follows:

|             |   |            |
|-------------|---|------------|
| Bit 31 – 24 | Byte enable 7 – 0. Only the low order four bits are valid for 32 bit addressing mode. |            |
| Bit 23 – 0  | Memory access<br>1 Configuration access   |            |
| Bit 22 – 0  | Read (to Host)<br>1 Write (from Host)   |            |
| 1           | Bit 21 – 1  | Data Valid |
| Bit 20 – 16 | Reserved  |            |
| Bit 15 – 0  | Address   |            |

During a write operation from the Host the PCI\_Data\_Reg contains valid data after Data Valid is set in the PCI\_Address\_Reg. Both registers are locked until THE MICROPROCESSOR writes the PCI\_Data\_Reg, which resets Data Valid.

All read operations will be direct from SRAM. Memory space based reads will return 00. Configuration space reads will be mapped as follows:

| <u>Configuration Space 1</u> | <u>SRAM Address Offset</u> |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 00                           | 00                         |
| 04                           | 04                         |
| 08                           | 08                         |
| 0C                           | 0C                         |
| 10                           | 10                         |
| 3C                           | 14                         |

| <u>Configuration Space 2</u> |    |
|------------------------------|----|
| 00                           | 00 |
| 04                           | 18 |
| 08                           | 08 |
| 0C                           | 1C |
| 10                           | 20 |
| 3C                           | 24 |

All other reads to configuration space will return 00.

20190910 14:49

## 6.2.1 CONFIGURATION SPACE

The INIC is implemented as a multi-function device. The first device is the network controller, and the second device is the debug interface. An alternative production embodiment may implement only the network controller function. Both configuration space headers will be the same, except for the differences noted in the following description.

**Vendor ID** – This field will contain the Alacritech Vendor ID. One field will be used for both functions. The Alacritech Vendor ID is hex 139A.

**Device ID** – Chosen at Alacritech on a device specific basis. One field will be used for both functions.

**Command** – Initialized to 00. All bits defined below as not enabled (0) will remain 0. Those that are enabled will be set to 0 or 1 depending on the state of the system. Each function (network and debug) will have its own command field.

- Bit 0 – 0 I/O accesses are not enabled
- Bit 1 – 1 Memory accesses are enabled
- Bit 2 – 1 Bus master is enabled
- Bit 3 – 0 Special Cycle is not enabled
- Bit 4 – 1 Memory Write and Invalidate is enabled
- Bit 5 – 0 VGA palette snooping is not enabled
- Bit 6 – 1 Parity checking is enabled
- Bit 7 – 0 Address data stepping is not enabled
- Bit 8 – SERR# is enabled
- Bit 9 – 0 Fast back to back is not enabled

**Status** – This is not initialized to zero. Each function will have its own field. The configuration is as follows:

- Bit 5 – 1 66 MHz capable is enabled. This bit will be set if the INIC  
Detects the system running at 66 MHz on reset
- Bit 6 – 0 User Definable Features is not enabled
- Bit 7 – 1 Fast Back-to-Back slave transfers enabled
- Bit 8 – 1 Parity Error enabled – This bit is initialized to 0
- Bit 9,10 – 00 – Fast device select will be set if we are at 33 MHz  
01 – Medium device select will be set if we are at  
66 MHz
- Bit 11 – 1 Target Abort is implemented. Initialized to 0.
- Bit 12 – 1 Target Abort is implemented. Initialized to 0.
- Bit 13 – 1 Master Abort is implemented. Initialized to 0.
- Bit 14 – 1 SERR# is implemented. Initialized to 0.
- Bit 15 – 1 Parity error is implemented. Initialized to 0.

**Revision ID** – The revision field will be shared by both functions.

**Class Code** – This is 02 00 00 for the network controller, and for the debug interface. The field will be shared.

Cache Line Size – This is initialized to zero. Supported sizes are 16, 32, 64 and 128 bytes. This hardware register is replicated in SRAM and supported separately for each function, but THE MICROPROCESSOR will implement the value set in Configuration Space 1 (the network processor).

Latency Timer – This is initialized to zero. The function is supported. This hardware register is replicated in SRAM. Each function is supported separately, but THE MICROPROCESSOR will implement the value set in Configuration Space 1 (the network processor).

Header Type – This is set to 80 for both functions, but will be supported separately.

BIST – Is implemented. In addition to responding to a request to run self test, if test after reset fails, a code will be set in the BIST register. This will be implemented separately for each function.

Base Address Register – A single base address register is implemented for each function. It is 64 bits in length, and the bottom four bits are configured as follows:

- Bit 0 – 0 Indicates memory base address
- Bit 1,2 – 00 Locate base address anywhere in 32 bit memory space
- Bit 3 – 1 Memory is prefetchable

CardBus CIS Pointer – Not implemented—initialized to 0.

Subsystem Vendor ID – Not implemented—initialized to 0.

Subsystem ID – Not implemented—initialized to 0.

Expansion ROM Base Address – Not implemented—initialized to 0.

Interrupt Line – Implemented—initialized to 0. This is implemented separately for each function.

Interrupt Pin – This is set to 01, corresponding to INTA# for the network controller, and 02, corresponding to INTB# for the debug interface. This is implemented separately for each function.

Min\_Gnt – This can be set at a value in the range of 10, to allow reasonably long bursts on the bus. This is implemented separately for each function.

Max\_Lat – This can be set to 0 to indicate no particular requirement for frequency of access to PCI. This is implemented separately for each function.

## 6.2.2 MEMORY SPACE

Because each of the following functions may or may not reside in a single location, and may or may not need to be in SRAM at all, the address for each is really only used as an identifier (label). There is, therefore, no control block anywhere in memory that represents this memory space. When the host writes one of these registers, the utility

processor will construct the data required and transfer it. Reads to this memory will generate 00 for data.

#### 6.2.2.1 Network Processor

The following four byte registers, beginning at location h00 of the network processor's allocated memory, are defined.

- 00 – Interrupt Status Pointer -- Initialized by the host to point to a four byte area where status is stored
- 04 – Interrupt Status – Returned status from host. Sent after one or more status conditions have been reset. Also an interlock for storing any new status. Once status has been stored at the Interrupt Status Pointer location, no new status will be stored until the host writes the Interrupt Status Register. New status will be ored with any remaining uncleared status (as defined by the contents of the returned status) and stored again at the Interrupt Status Pointer location. Bits are as follows:
  - Bit 31 – ERR -- Error bits are set
  - Bit 30 – RCV – Receive has occurred
  - Bit 29 – XMT – Transmit command complete
  - Bit 25 – RMISS – Receive drop occurred due to no buffers
- 08 – Interrupt Mask – Written by the host. Interrupts are masked for each of the bits in the interrupt status when the same bit in the mask register is set. When the Interrupt Mask register is written and as a result a status bit is unmasked, an interrupt is generated. Also, when the Interrupt Status Register is written, enabling new status to be stored, when it is stored if a bit is stored that is not masked by the Interrupt Mask, an interrupt is generated.
- 0C – Header Buffer Address – Written by host to pass a set of header buffers to the INIC.
- 10 – Data Buffer Handle – First register to be written by the Host to transfer a receive data buffer to the INIC. This data is Host reference data. It is not used by the INIC, it is returned with the data buffer. However, to insure integrity of the buffer, this register must be interlocked with the Data Buffer Address register. Once the Data Buffer Address register has been written, neither register can be written until after the Data Buffer Handle register has been read by THE MICROPROCESSOR.
- 14 – Data Buffer Address – Pointer to the data buffer being sent to the INIC by the Host. Must be interlocked with the Data Buffer Handle register.
- 18 – Command Buffer Address XMT0 – Pointer to a set of command buffers sent by the Host. THE MICROPROCESSOR will DMA the buffers to local DRAM found on the FreeSType queue and queue the Command

2019-04-19 10:44:49

Buffer Address XMT0 with the local address replacing the host Address.

- 1C – Command Buffer Address SMT1
- 20 – Command Buffer Address SMT2
- 24 – Command Buffer Address SMT3
- 28 – Response Buffer Address -- Pointer to a set of response buffers sent by the Host. These will be treated in the same fashion as the Command Buffer Address registers.

#### 6.2.2.2 Utility Processor

Ending status will be handled by the utility processor in the same fashion as it is handled by the network processor. At present two ending status conditions are defined B31 – command complete, and B30 – error. When end status is stored an interrupt is generated.

Two additional registers are defined, Command Pointer and Data Pointer. The Host is responsible for insuring that the Data Pointer is valid and points to sufficient memory before storing a command pointer. Storing a command pointer initiates command decode and execution by the debug processor. The Host must not modify either command or Data Pointer until ending status has been received, at which point a new command may be initiated. Memory space is write only by the Host, reads will receive 00. The format is as follows:

- 00 – Interrupt Status Pointer -- Initialized by the host to point to a four byte area where status is stored
- 04 – Interrupt Status – Returned status from host. Sent after one or more status conditions have been reset. Also an interlock for storing any new status. Once status has been stored at the Interrupt Status Pointer location, no new status will be stored until the host writes the Interrupt Status Register. New status will be ored with any remaining uncleared status (as defined by the contents of the returned status) and stored again at the Interrupt Status Pointer location. Bits are as follows:
  - Bit 31 – CC – Command Complete
  - Bit 30 – ERR -- Error
  - Bit29 – Transmit Processor Halted
  - Bit28 – Receive Processor Halted
  - Bit27 – Utility Processor Halted
- 08 – Interrupt Mask – Written by the host. Interrupts are masked for each of the bits in the interrupt status when the same bit in the mask register is set. When the Interrupt Mask register is written and as a result a status bit is unmasked, an interrupt is generated. Also,

when the Interrupt Status Register is written, enabling new status to be stored, when it is stored if a bit is stored that is not masked by the Interrupt Mask, an interrupt is generated.

- 0C – Command Pointer – Points to command to be executed. Storing this pointer initiates command decode and execution.
- 10 – Data Pointer – Points to the data buffer. This is used for both read and write data, determined by the command function.

## 7 Debug Interface

In order to provide a mechanism to debug the microcode running on the microprocessor sequencers, a debug process has been defined which will run on the utility sequencer. This processor will interface with a control program on the host processor over PCI.

### 7.1 PCI Interface

This interface is defined in the combination of the Utility Processor and the Host Interface Strategy sections, above.

### 7.2 Command Format

The first byte of the command, the command byte, defines the structure of the remainder of the command. The first five bits of the command byte are the command itself. The next bit is used to specify an alternate processor, and the last two bits specify which processors are intended for the command.

#### 7.2.1 Command Byte

|         |            |           |
|---------|------------|-----------|
| 7 – 3   | 2          | 1 – 0     |
| Command | Alt. Proc. | Processor |

#### 7.2.2 Processor Bits

- 00 – Any Processor
- 01 – Transmit Processor
- 10 – Receive Processor
- 11 – Utility Processor

6061809-10149

### 7.2.3 Alternate Processor

This bit defines which processor should handle debug processing if the utility processor is defined as the processor in debug.

- 0 – Transmit Processor
- 1 – Receive Processor

### 7.2.4 Single Byte Commands

- 00 – Halt

This command asynchronously halts the processor.

- 08 – Run

This command starts the processor.

- 10 – Step

This command steps the processor.

### 7.2.5 Eight Byte Commands

- 18 – Break

|         |          |       |         |
|---------|----------|-------|---------|
| 0       | 1        | 2 - 3 | 4 - 7   |
| Command | Reserved | Count | Address |

This command sets a stop at the specified address. A count of 1 causes the specified processor to halt the first time it executes the instruction. A count of 2 or more causes the processor to halt after that number of executions. The processor is halted just before executing the instruction. A count of 0 does not halt the processor, but causes a sync signal to be generated. If a second processor is set to the same break address, the count data from the first break request is used, and each time either processor executes the instruction the count is decremented.

- 20 – Reset Break

|         |          |         |
|---------|----------|---------|
| 0       | 1 - 3    | 4 - 7   |
| Command | Reserved | Address |



This command resets a previously set break point at the specified address. Reset break fully resets that address. If multiple processors were set to that break point, all will be reset.

## 28 – Dump

|         |            |       |         |
|---------|------------|-------|---------|
| 0       | 1          | 2 - 3 | 4 - 7   |
| Command | Descriptor | Count | Address |

This command transfers to the host the contents of the descriptor. For descriptors larger than four bytes, a count, in four byte increments is specified. For descriptors utilizing an address the address field is specified.

### 7.2.6 Descriptor

#### 00 – Register

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Both fields are four byte based (a count of 1 transfers four bytes).

#### 01 – Sram

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address.

#### 02 – Dram

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address

#### 03 – Cstore

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address

Stand-alone descriptors:

The following descriptors do not use either the count or address fields. They transfer the contents of the referenced register.

#### 04 – CPU\_STATUS

#### 05 – PC

45449 "60EFS009

- 06 – ADDR\_REGA
- 07 – ADDR\_REGB
- 08 – RAM\_BASE
- 09 – FILE\_BASE
- 0A – INSTR\_REG\_L
- 0B – INSTR\_REG\_H
- 0C – MAC\_DATA
- 0D – DMA\_EVENT
- 0E – MISC\_EVENT
- 0F – Q\_IN\_RDY
- 10 – Q\_OUT\_RDY
- 11 – LOCK STATUS
- 12 – STACK - This returns 12 bytes
- 13 – Sense \_ Reg

This register contains four bytes of data. If error status is posted for a command, if the next command that is issued reads this register, a code describing the error in more detail may be obtained. If any command other than a dump of this register is issued after error status, sense information will be reset.

30 – Load

|         |            |       |         |
|---------|------------|-------|---------|
| 0       | 1          | 2 - 3 | 4 - 7   |
| Command | Descriptor | Count | Address |

This command transfers from the host the contents of the descriptor. For descriptors larger than four bytes, a count, in four byte increments is specified. For descriptors utilizing an address the address field is specified.

### 7.2.7 Descriptor

00 – Register

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Both fields are four byte based.

"508F909"

01 – Sram

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address.

02 – Dram

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address

03 – Cstore

This descriptor uses both count and address fields. Count is in four byte blocks. Address is in bytes, but if it is not four byte aligned, it is forced to the lower four byte aligned address. This applies to WCS only.

Stand-alone descriptors:

The following descriptors do not use either the count or address fields. They transfer the contents of the referenced register.

04 – ADDR\_REGA

05 – ADDR\_REGB

06 – RAM\_BASE

07 – FILE\_BASE

08 – MAC\_DATA

09 – Q\_IN\_RDY

0A – Q\_OUT\_RDY

0B – DBG\_ADDR

38 – Map

This command allows an instruction in ROM to be replaced by an instruction in WCS. The new instruction will be located in the Host buffer. It will be stored in the first eight bytes of the buffer, with the high bits unused. To reset a mapped out instruction, map it to location 00.

0  
Command

1 – 3  
Address to  
Map To

4 – 7  
Address to  
Map Out

604707 6029009

## 8 HARDWARE SPECIFICATION

### FEATURES

#### • Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI) Interface

- Universal PCI interface supports both 5.0V and 3.3V signaling environments.
- Supports both 32-bit and 64 bit PCI interface.
- Supports PCI clock frequencies from 15MHz to 66MHz
- High performance bus mastering architecture.
- Host memory based communications reduce register accesses.
- Host memory based interrupt status word reduces register reads.
- Plug and Play compatible.
- PCI specification revision 2.1 compliant.
- PCI bursts up to 512 bytes.
- Supports cache line operations up to 128 bytes.
- Both big-endian and little-endian byte alignments supported.
- Supports Expansion ROM.

#### • Network Interface

- Four internal 802.3 and ethernet compliant Macs.
- Media Independent Interface (MII) supports external PHYs.
- 10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX/FX and 100BASE-T4 supported.
- Full and half-duplex modes supported.
- Automatic PHY status polling notifies system of status change.
- Provides SNMP statistics counters.
- Supports broadcast and multicast packets.
- Provides promiscuous mode for network monitoring or multiple unicast address detection.
- Supports "huge packets" up to 32KB.
- Mac-layer loop-back test mode.
- Supports auto-negotiating Phys.

20051209-10449

- **Memory Interface**

- External Dram buffering of transmit and receive packets.
- Buffering configurable as 4MB, 8MB, 16MB or 32MB.
- 32-bit interface supports throughput of 224MB/s
- Supports external FLASH ROM up to 4 MB, for diskless boot applications.
- Supports external serial EEPROM for custom configuration and Mac addresses.

- **Protocol Processor**

- High speed, custom, 32-bit processor executes 66 million instructions per second.
- Processes IP, TCP and NETBIOS protocols.
- Supports up to 256 resident TCP/IP contexts.
- Writable control store (WCS) allows field updates for feature enhancements.

- **Power**

- 3.3V chip operation.
- PCI controlled 5.0V/3.3V I/O cell operation.

- **Packaging**

- 272-pin plastic ball grid array.
- 91 PCI signals.
- 68 MII signals.
- 58 external memory signals.
- 1 clock signal.
- 54 signals split between power and ground.
- 272 total pins.

## GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The microprocessor is a 32-bit, full-duplex, four channel, 10/100-Megabit per second (Mbps), Intelligent Network Interface Controller, designed to provide high-speed protocol processing for server applications. It combines the functions of a standard network interface controller and a protocol processor within a single chip. Although designed specifically for server applications, The microprocessor can be used by PCs, workstations and routers or anywhere that TCP/IP protocols are being utilized.

When combined with four 802.3/MII compliant Phys and Synchronous Dram (SDram), the INIC comprises four complete ethernet nodes. It contains four 802.3/ethernet compliant Macs, a PCI Bus Interface Unit (BIU), a memory controller, transmit fifos, receive fifos and a custom TCP/IP/NETBIOS protocol processor. The INIC supports 10Base-T , 100Base-TX, 100Base-FX and 100Base-T4 via the MII interface attachment of appropriate Phys.

The INIC Macs provide statistical information that may be used for SNMP. The Macs operate in promiscuous mode allowing the INIC to function as a network monitor, receive broadcast and multicast packets and implement multiple Mac addresses for each node.

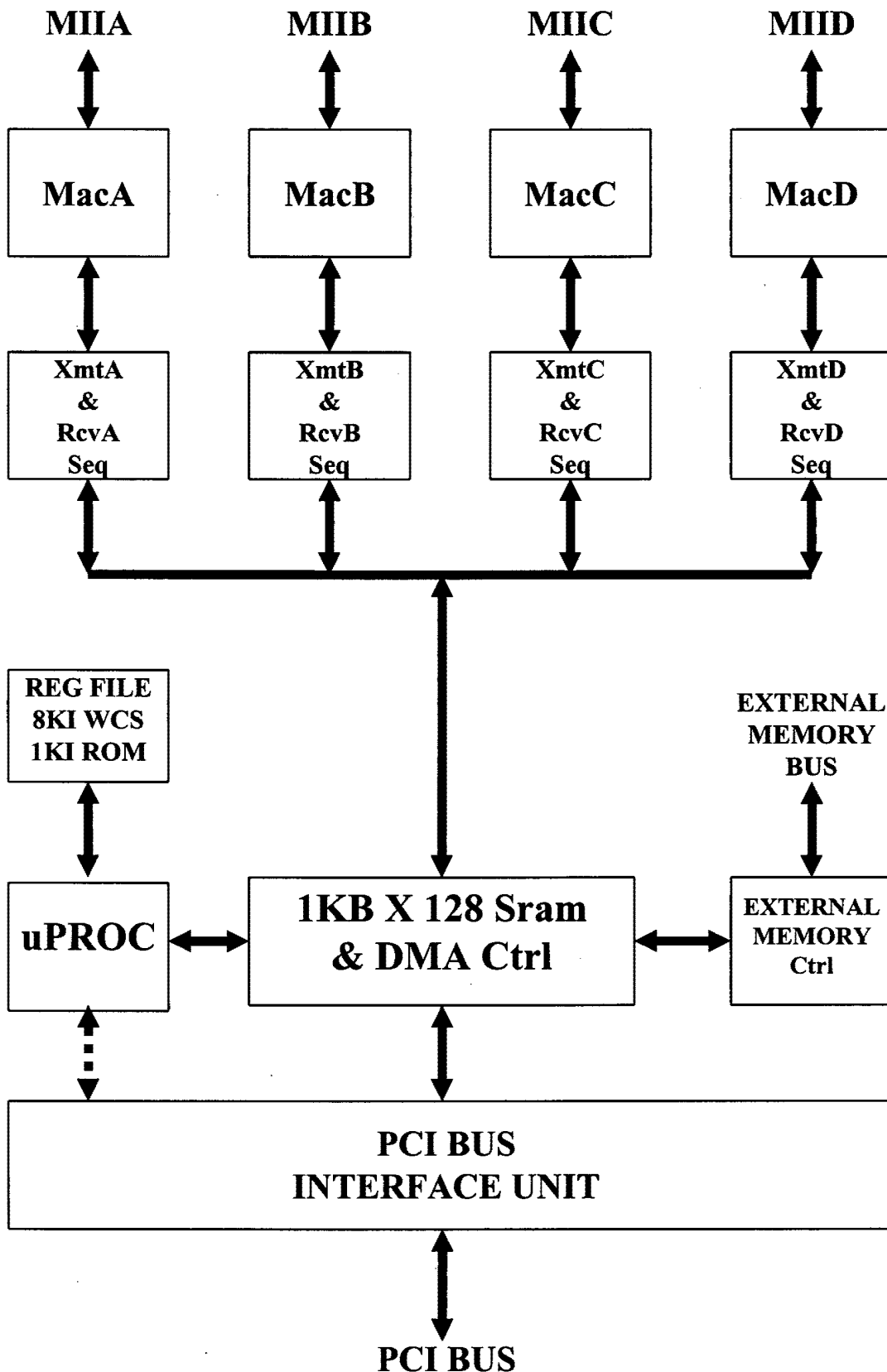
Any 802.3/MII compliant PHY can be utilized, allowing the INIC to support 10BASE-T, 10BASE-T2, 100BASE-TX, 100Base-FX and 100BASE-T4 as well as future interface standards. PHY identification and initialization is accomplished through host driver initialization routines. PHY status registers can be polled continuously by the INIC and detected PHY status changes reported to the host driver. The Mac can be configured to support a maximum frame size of 1518 bytes or 32768 bytes.

The 64-bit, multiplexed BIU provides a direct interface to the PCI bus for both slave and master functions. The INIC is capable of operating in either a 64-bit or 32-bit PCI environment, while supporting 64-bit addressing in either configuration. PCI bus frequencies up to 66MHz are supported yielding instantaneous bus transfer rates of 533MB/s. Both 5.0V and 3.3V signaling environments can be utilized by the INIC. Configurable cache-line size up to 256B will accommodate future architectures, and Expansion ROM/Flash support allows for diskless system booting. Non-PC applications are supported via programmable big and little endian modes. Host based communication has been utilized to provide the best system performance possible.

The INIC supports Plug-N-Play auto-configuration through the PCI configuration space. External pull-up and pull-down resistors, on the memory I/O pins, allow selection of various features during chip reset. Support of an external eeprom allows for local storage of configuration information such as Mac addresses.

External SDram provides frame buffering, which is configurable as 4MB, 8MB, 16MB or 32MB using the appropriate SIMMs. Use of -10 speed grades yields an external buffer bandwidth of 224MB/s. The buffer provides temporary storage of both incoming and outgoing frames. The protocol processor accesses the frames within the buffer in order to implement TCP/IP and NETBIOS. Incoming frames are processed, assembled then transferred to host memory under the control of the protocol processor. For transmit, data is moved from host memory to buffers where various headers are created before being transmitted out via the Mac.

**BLOCK DIAGRAM**



"SECRET" 60819005

# OUTLINE

## • Cores/Cells

LSI Logic Ethernet-110 Core, 100Base & 10Base Mac with MII interface.

LSI Logic single port Sram, triple port Sram and ROM available.

LSI Logic PCI 66MHz, 5V compatible I/O cell.

LSI Logic PLL

## • Die Size / Pin Count

LSI Logic G10 process.

| <u>MODULE</u>              | <u>DESCR</u>                                      | <u>SPEED</u>  | <u>AREA</u>                 |
|----------------------------|---|---------------|-----------------------------|
| Scratch RAM,               | 1Kx128 sport,                                     | 4.37 ns nom., | 06.77 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| WCS,                       | 8Kx49 sport,                                      | 6.40 ns nom., | 18.29 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| MAP,                       | 128x7 sport,                                      | 3.50 ns nom., | 00.24 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| ROM,                       | 1Kx49 32col,                                      | 5.00 ns nom., | 00.45 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| REGs,                      | 512x32 tport,                                     | 6.10 ns nom., | 03.49 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| Macs,                      | .75 mm <sup>2</sup> x 4 =                         |               | 03.30 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| PLL,                       | .5 mm <sup>2</sup> =                              |               | 00.55 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| MISC LOGIC,                | 117,260 gates / (5035 gates / mm <sup>2</sup> ) = |               | 23.29 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| <b>TOTAL CORE</b>          |   |               | <b>56.22 mm<sup>2</sup></b> |
| (Core side) <sup>2</sup> * |   | =             | 56.22 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| Core side                  |   | =             | 07.50 mm                    |
| Die side                   | = core side + 1.0 mm (I/O cells)                  | =             | 08.50 mm                    |
| Die area                   | = 8.5 mm x 8.5 mm                                 | =             | 72.25 mm <sup>2</sup>       |
| Pads needed                | = 220 signals x 1.25 (vss, vdd)                   | =             | 275 pins                    |
| LSI PBGA                   |   | =             | 272 pins                    |

ALACRITECH



**• Datapath Bandwidth**

|   |   |                    |
|---|---|--------------------|
| (10MB/s/100Base) x 2 (full duplex) x 4 connections  | = | 80 MB/s            |
| Average frame size  | = | 512 B              |
| Frame rate = 80MB/s / 512B  | = | 156,250 frames / s |
| Cpu overhead / frame = (256 B context read) + (64B header read) + (128B context write) + (128B misc.) | = | 512B / frame       |
| Total bandwidth = (512B in) + (512B out) + (512B Cpu)   | = | 1536B / frame      |
| Dram Bandwidth required = (1536B/frame) x (156,250 frames/s)  | = | 240MB/s            |
| Dram Bandwidth @ 60MHz = (32 bytes / 167ns)   | = | 202MB/s            |
| Dram Bandwidth @ 66MHz = (32 bytes / 150ns)   | = | 224MB/s            |
| PCI Bandwidth required  | = | 80MB/s             |
| PCI Bandwidth available @ 30 MHz, 32b, average  | = | 46MB/s             |
| PCI Bandwidth available @ 33 MHz, 32b, average  | = | 50MB/s             |
| PCI Bandwidth available @ 60 MHz, 32b, average  | = | 92MB/s             |
| PCI Bandwidth available @ 66 MHz, 32b, average  | = | 100MB/s            |
| PCI Bandwidth available @ 30 MHz, 64b, average  | = | 92MB/s             |
| PCI Bandwidth available @ 33 MHz, 64b, average  | = | 100MB/s            |
| PCI Bandwidth available @ 60 MHz, 64b, average  | = | 184MB/s            |
| PCI Bandwidth available @ 66 MHz, 64b, average  | = | 200MB/s            |

**• Cpu Bandwidth**

|  |   |                        |
|--|---|------------------------|
| Receive frame interval = 512B / 40MB/s                             | = | 12.8us                 |
| Instructions / frame @ 60MHz = (12.8us/frame) / (50ns/instruction) | = | 256                    |
| instructions/frame   |   |                        |
| Instructions / frame @ 66MHz = (12.8us/frame) / (45ns/instruction) | = | 284                    |
| instructions/frame   |   |                        |
| Required instructions / frame (per Clive)                          | = | 250 instructions/frame |

60219009

## • Performance Features

- 512 registers improve performance through reduced scratch ram accesses and reduced instructions.
- Register windowing eliminates context-switching overhead.
- Separate instruction and data paths eliminate memory contention.
- Totally resident control store eliminates stalling during instruction fetch.
- Multiple logical processors eliminate context switching and improve real-time response.
- Pipelined architecture increases operating frequency.
- Shared register and scratch ram improve inter-processor communication.
- Fly-by state-Machine assists address compare and checksum calculation.
- TCP/IP-context caching reduces latency.
- Hardware implemented queues reduce Cpu overhead and latency.
- Horizontal microcode greatly improves instruction efficiency.
- Automatic frame DMA and status between Mac and dram buffer.
- Deterministic architecture coupled with context switching eliminates processor stalls.

50061809 101497

## PROCESSOR

The processor is a convenient means to provide a programmable state-machine which is capable of processing incoming frames, processing host commands, directing network traffic and directing PCI bus traffic. Three processors are implemented using shared hardware in a three-level pipelined architecture which launches and completes a single instruction for every clock cycle. The instructions are executed in three distinct phases corresponding to each of the pipeline stages where each phase is responsible for a different function.

The first instruction phase writes the instruction results of the last instruction to the destination operand, modifies the program counter (Pc), selects the address source for the instruction to fetch, then fetches the instruction from the control store. The fetched instruction is then stored in the instruction register at the end of the clock cycle.

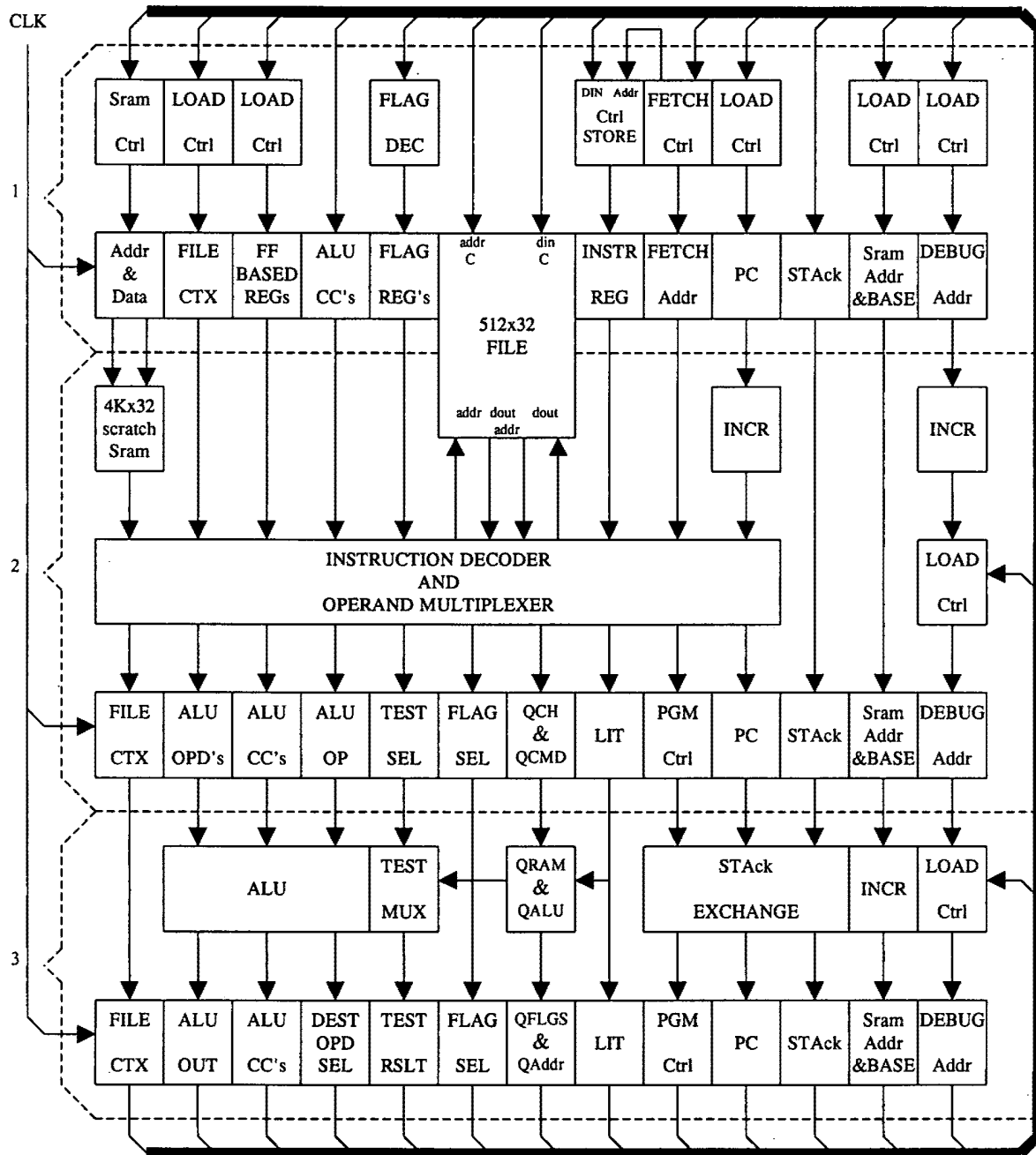
The processor instructions reside in the on-chip control-store, which is implemented as a mixture of ROM and Sram. The ROM contains 1K instructions starting at address 0x0000 and aliases each 0x0400 locations throughout the first 0x8000 of instruction space. The Sram (WCS) will hold up to 0x2000 instructions starting at address 0x8000 and aliasing each 0x2000 locations throughout the last 0x8000 of instruction space. The ROM and Sram are both 49-bits wide accounting for bits [48:0] of the instruction microword. A separate mapping ram provides bits [55:49] of the microword (**MapAddr**) to allow replacement of faulty ROM based instructions. The mapping ram has a configuration of 128x7 which is insufficient to allow a separate map address for each of the 1K ROM locations. To allow re-mapping of the entire 1K ROM space, the map ram address lines are connected to the address bits **Fetch[9:3]**. The result is that the ROM is re-mapped in blocks of 8 contiguous locations.

The second instruction phase decodes the instruction which was stored in the instruction register. It is at this point that the map address is checked for a non-zero value which will cause the decoder to force a **Jmp** instruction to the map address. If a non-zero value is detected then the decoder selects the source operands for the Alu operation based on the values of the **OpdASel**, **OpdBSel** and **AluOp** fields. These operands are then stored in the decode register at the end of the clock cycle. Operands may originate from **File**, **Sram**, or flip-flop based registers. The second instruction phase is also where the results of the previous instruction are written to the **Sram**.

The third instruction phase is when the actual Alu operation is performed, the test condition is selected and the Stack push and pop are implemented. Results of the Alu operation are stored in the results register at the end of the clock cycle.

Following is a block diagram which shows the hardware functions associated with each of the instruction phases. Note that various functions have been distributed across the three phases of the instruction execution in order to minimize the combinatorial delays within any given phase.

# Cpu BLOCK-DIAGRAM



CPU BLOCK-DIAGRAM

## INSTRUCTION SET

The micro-instructions are divided into six types according to the program control directive. The micro-instruction is further divided into sub-fields for which the definitions are dependent upon the instruction type. The six instruction types are listed below.

### INSTRUCTION-WORD FORMAT

| <u>TYPE</u> | <u>[55:49]</u> | <u>[48:47]</u> | <u>[46:42]</u> | <u>[41:33]</u> | <u>[32:24]</u> | <u>[23:16]</u> | <u>[15:00]</u> |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Jcc         | 0b0000000      | 0b00,          | AluOp,         | OpdASel,       | OpdBSEL,       | TstSel,        | Literal        |
| Jmp         | 0b0000000      | 0b01,          | AluOp,         | OpdASel,       | OpdBSEL,       | FlgSel,        | Literal        |
| Jsr         | 0b0000000      | 0b10,          | AluOp,         | OpdASel,       | OpdBSEL,       | FlgSel,        | Literal        |
| Rts         | 0b0000000      | 0b11,          | AluOp,         | OpdASel,       | OpdBSEL,       | 0hff,          | Literal        |
| Nxt         | 0b0000000      | 0b11,          | AluOp,         | OpdASel,       | OpdBSEL,       | FlgSel,        | Literal        |
| Map         | MapAddr        | 0bXX,          | 0bXXXXX,       | 0bXXXXXXXXXX,  | 0bXXXXXXXXXX,  | 0hXX,          | 0hXXXX         |

All instructions include the Alu operation (**AluOp**), operand "A" select (**OpdASel**), operand "B" select (**OpdBSEL**) and **Literal** fields. Other field usage depends upon the instruction type.

The "jump condition code" (**Jcc**) instruction causes the program counter to be altered if the condition selected by the "test select" (**TstSel**) field is asserted. The new program counter (**Pc**) value is loaded from either the **Literal** field or the **AluOut** as described in the following section and the **Literal** field may be used as a source for the Alu or the ram address if the new **Pc** value is sourced by the Alu.

The "jump" (**Jmp**) instruction causes the program counter to be altered unconditionally. The new program counter (**Pc**) value is loaded from either the **Literal** field or the **AluOut** as described in the following section. The format allows instruction bits 23:16 to be used to perform a flag operation and the **Literal** field may be used as a source for the Alu or the ram address if the new **Pc** value is sourced by the Alu.

The "jump subroutine" (**Jsr**) instruction causes the program counter to be altered unconditionally. The new program counter (**Pc**) value is loaded from either the **Literal** field or the **AluOut** as described in the following section. The old program counter value is stored on the top location of the **Pc-Stack** which is implemented as a LIFO memory. The format allows instruction bits 23:16 to be used to perform a flag operation and the **Literal** field may be used as a source for the **Alu** or the ram address if the new **Pc** value is sourced by the **Alu**.

The "Nxt" (**Nxt**) instruction causes the program counter to increment. The format allows instruction bits 23:16 to be used to perform a flag operation and the **Literal** field may be used as a source for the **Alu** or the ram address.

The "return from subroutine" (**Rts**) instruction is a special form of the **Nxt** instruction in which the "flag operation" (**FlgSel**) field is set to a value of 0hff. The current **Pc** value is replaced with the last value stored in the stack. The **Literal** field may be used as a source for the **Alu** or the ram address.

The **Map** instruction is provided to allow replacement of instructions which have been stored in **ROM** and is implemented any time the "map enable" (**MapEn**) bit has been set and the content of the "map address" (**MapAddr**) field is non-zero. The instruction decoder forces a jump instruction with the **Alu** operation and destination fields set to pass the **MapAddr** field to the program control block.

The program control is determined by a combination of **PgmCtrl**, **DstOpd**, **FlgSel** and **TstSel**. The behavior of the program control is defined with the following "C-like" description.

"608T9009"

## SEQUENCER BEHAVIOR

```
if (MapEn & (MapAddr != 0b0000000)) { //re-map instr
    Stackc = Stackc;
    StackB = StackB;
    StackA = StackA;
    InstrAddr = 0h8000 | Pc[2:0] | (MapAddr << 3);
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd);
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd); }

else if (PgmCtrl == Jcc) { //conditional jump
    Stackc = Stackc;
    StackB = StackB;
    StackA = StackA;
    InstrAddr = ~Tst@TstSel ? Pc:(AluDst==Pc) ? AluOut:Literal;
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd);
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd); }

else if (PgmCtrl == Jmp) { //jump
    Stackc = Stackc;
    StackB = StackB;
    StackA = StackA;
    InstrAddr = (AluDst == Pc) ? AluOut:Literal;
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd);
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd); }

else if (PgmCtrl == Jsrr) { //jump subroutine
    Stackc = StackB;
    StackB = StackA;
    StackA = Pc;
    InstrAddr = (AluDst == Pc) ? AluOut:Literal;
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd);
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd); }

else if (FlgSel == Rts) { //return subroutine
    InstrAddr = StackA;
    StackA = StackB;
    StackB = Stackc;
    Stackc = ErrVec;
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd);
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd); }

else { //continue
    InstrAddr = Pc;
    StackA = StackA;
    StackB = StackB;
    Stackc = Stackc;
    Pc = InstrAddr + (Execute & ~DbgMd);
    Fetch = DbgMd ? DbgAddr:InstrAddr;
    DbgAddr = DbgAddr + (Execute & DbgMd); }
```

## ALU OPERATIONS

| <u>AluOp</u> | <u>OPERATION</u>  |                   |
|--------------|---|-------------------|
| 0b00000      | A = (A & ~(1 << B));<br>C = 0; V = (B >= 32) ? 1:0;                   | //bit clear       |
| 0b00001      | A = (A & B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;   | //logical and     |
| 0b00010      | A = (Literal & B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                   | //logical and     |
| 0b00011      | A = (~Literal & B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                  | //logical and not |
| 0b00100      | A = (A   (1 << B));<br>C = 0; V = (B >= 32) ? 1:0;                    | //bit set         |
| 0b00101      | A = (A   B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;   | //logical or      |
| 0b00110      | A = (Literal   B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                   | //logical or      |
| 0b00111      | A = (~Literal   B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                  | //logical or not  |
| 0b01000      | for (i=31; i>=0; i--) if B[i] continue; A=i;<br>C = 0; V = (B) ? 0:1; | //priority enc    |
| 0b01001      | A = (A ^ B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;   | //logical xor     |
| 0b01010      | A = ({Literal} ^ B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                 | //logical xor     |
| 0b01011      | A = ({~Literal} ^ B);<br>C = 0; V = 0;                                | //logical xor not |
| 0b01100      | A = B;<br>C = 0; V = 0;   | //move            |
| 0b01101      | A = B[31:24] ^ B[23:16] ^ B[15:08] ^ B[07:00];<br>C = 0; V = 0;       | //hash            |
| 0b01110      | A = {B[23:16], B[31:24], B[07:00], B[15:08]};<br>C = 0; V = 0;        | //swap bytes      |
| 0b01111      | A = {B[15:00], B[31:16]};<br>C = 0; V = 0;                            | //swap doublets   |

2025-10-14 10:14:09

| <u>AluOp</u> | <u>FUNCTION</u>  |                 |
|--------------|--|-----------------|
| 0b10000      | A = (A + B);<br>C = (A + B) [32]; V = 0;                     | //add B         |
| 0b10001      | A = (A + B + C);<br>C = (A + B + C) [32]; V = 0;             | //add B, carry  |
| 0b10010      | A = (Literal + B);<br>C = (Literal + B) [32]; V = 0;         | //add constant  |
| 0b10011      | A = (-Literal + B);<br>C = (-Literal + B) [32]; V = 0;       | //sub constant  |
| 0b10100      | A = (A - B);<br>C = (A - B) [32]; V = 0;                     | //sub B         |
| 0b10101      | A = (A - B - ~C);<br>C = (A - B - ~C) [32]; V = 0;           | //sub B, borrow |
| 0b10110      | A = (-A + B);<br>C = (-A + B) [32]; V = 0;                   | //sub A         |
| 0b10111      | A = (-A + B - ~C);<br>C = (-A + B - ~C) [32]; V = 0;         | //sub A, borrow |
| 0b11000      | A = (A << B);<br>C = A[31]; V = (B >= 32) ? 0:1;             | //shift left A  |
| 0b11001      | A = (B << Literal);<br>C = B[31]; V = (Literal >= 32) ? 0:1; | //shift left B  |
| 0b11010      | A = (B << 1);<br>C = B[31]; V = 0;                           | //shift left B  |
| 0b11011      | n = (A - B);<br>C = (A - B) [32]; V = 0;                     | //compare       |
| 0b11100      | A = (A >> B);<br>C = A[0]; V = (B >= 32) ? 1:0;              | //shift right A |
| 0b11101      | A = (B >> Literal);<br>C = A[0]; V = (Literal >= 32) ? 1:0;  | //shift right B |
| 0b11110      | A = (B >> 1);<br>C = A[0]; V = 0;                            | //shift right B |
| 0b11111      | n = (B - A);<br>C = (B - A) [32]; V = 0;                     | //compare       |

ALACRITECH 60879009



OpdSel      SELECTED OPERANDs

|             |  |   |
|-------------|--|---|
| 0b0000aaaaa | <b>File</b>  | <b>File@</b> (OpdSel[4:0]   FileBase);<br>Allows paged access to any part of the register file.   |
| 0b0001aaaaa | <b>CpuReg</b>  | <b>File@</b> {2'b11, CpuId, OpdSel[4:0]};<br>Allows direct access to Cpu specific registers.  |
| 0b001XXXXXX | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future expansion.  |
| 0b0100000XX | <b>CpuStatus</b>   | 0b00000000000000BHD00000000000000CC<br>This is a read-only register providing information about the Cpu executing (OpdSel[1:0]) cycles after the current cycle. "CC" represents a value indicating the Cpu. Currently, only CpuId values of 0, 1 and 2 are returned. "H" represents the current state of Hlt, "D" indicates DbgMd and "B" indicates BigMd. Writing this register has no effect.   |
| 0b0100001XX | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future expansion.  |
| 0b0100010XX | <b>Pc</b>  | 0x0000AAAA<br>Writing to this address causes the program control logic to use AluOut as the new Pc value in the event of a <b>Jmp</b> , <b>Jcc</b> or <b>Jsr</b> instruction for the Cpu executing during the current cycle. If the current instruction is <b>Nxt</b> , <b>Map</b> , or <b>Rts</b> , the register write has no effect. Reading this register returns the value in Pc for the Cpu executing (OpdSel[1:0]) cycles after the current cycle.  |
| 0b0100011XX | <b>DbgAddr</b>   | 0xD000AAAA<br>Writing to this register alters the contents of the debug address register (DbgAddr) for the Cpu executing (OpdSel[1:0]) cycles after the current cycle. <b>DbgAddr</b> provides the fetch address for the control-store when <b>DbgMd</b> has been selected and the Cpu is executing. <b>DbgAddr</b> is also used as the control-store address when performing a <b>WrWcs@DbgAddr</b> or <b>RdWcs@DbgAddr</b> operation. "D" represents bit 31 of the register. It is a general purpose flag that is used for event indication during simulation. Reading this register returns a value of 0x00000000. |
| 0b01001XXXX | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future expansion.  |
| 0b010100000 | <b>RamAddr</b> {0b1CCC, 0x000, 0b1, AAAA}<br><b>RamAddr</b> = AluOut[15] ? AluOut : (AluOut   RamBase);<br><b>PrevCC</b> = AluOut[31] ? CCC : AluCC; |   |

A read/write register. When reading this register, the Alu condition codes from the previous instruction are returned together with **RamAddr**.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>    | <u>description</u>                  |
|------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 31         |                | Always 1.                           |
| 30         | <b>PrevC</b>   | Previous Alu Carry.                 |
| 29         | <b>PrevV</b>   | Previous Alu Overflow.              |
| 28         | <b>PrevZ</b>   | Previous Alu Zero.                  |
| 27:16      |                | Always 0.                           |
| 15         |                | Always 1.                           |
| 14:0       | <b>RamAddr</b> | Contents of last Sram address used. |

When writing this register, if alu\_out[31] is set, the previous condition codes will be overwritten with bits 30:28 of **AluOut**. If **AluOut**[15] is set, bits 14:0 will be written to the **RamAddr**. If **AluOut** [15] is not set, bits 14:0 will be ored with the contents of the **RamBase** and written to the **RamAddr**.

"SECRET" 60879009

OpdSel      SELECTED OPERANDS

0b010100001    **AddrRegA**      0x0000AAAA  
**AddrRegA = AluOut;**

A read/write operand which loads **AddrRegA** used to provide the address for read and write operations.

When **AddrRegA[15]** is set, the contents will be presented directly to the ram. When **AddrRegA[15]** is reset, the contents will first be ored with the contents of the **RamBase** register before presentation to the ram. Writing to this register takes priority over Literal loads using **FlgOp**. Reading this register returns the current value of the register.

0b010100010    **AddrRegB**      0x0000AAAA  
**AddrRegB = AluOut;**

A read/write operand which loads **AddrRegB** used to provide the address for read and write operations.

When **AddrRegB[15]** is set, the contents will be presented directly to the ram. When **AddrRegB[15]** is reset, the contents will first be ored with the contents of the **RamBase** register before presentation to the ram. Writing to this register takes priority over Literal loads using **FlgOp**. Reading this register returns the current value of the register.

0b010100011    **AddrRegAb**     0x0000AAAA  
**AddrRegA = AluOut; AddrRegB = AluOut;**

A destination only operand which loads **AddrRegB** and **AddrRegA** used to provide the address for read and write operations Writing to this register takes priority over Literal loads using **FlgOp**. Reading this register returns the value 0x00000000.

0b010100100    **RamBase**       0x0000AAAA  
**RamBase = AluOut;**

A read/write register which provides the base address for ram read and write cycles. When **RamAddr[15]** is set, the contents will not be used. When **RamAddr[15]** is reset, the contents will first be ored with the contents of the **RamBase** register before presentation to the ram. Reading this register returns the value for the current Cpu.

0b010100101    **FileBase**       0b000000000000000000000000AAAAA  
**FileBase = AluOut;**  
**FileAddr = OpdSel[8] ? OpdSel:(OpdSel + FileBase);**

A read/write register which provides the base address for file read and write cycles. When **OpdSel[8]** is set, the contents will not be used and **OpdSel** will be presented directly to the address lines of the file. When **OpdSel[8]** is reset, the contents will first be ored with the contents of the **FileBase** register before presentation to the file. Reading this register returns the value for the current Cpu.

0b010100110    **InstrRegL**      0xIIIIIIII

This is a read-only register which returns the contents of **InstrReg[31:0]**. Writing to this register has no effect.

0b010100111    **InstrRegH**      0x00IIIIII

This is a read-only register which returns the contents of **InstrReg[55:32]**. Writing to this register has no effect.

6006169-1049

OpdSel      SELECTED OPERANDs

- 0b010101000    **Minus1**      0xffffffff  
This is a read-only register which supplies a value 0xffffffff.. Writing to this register has no effect.
  
- 0b010101001    **FreeTime**     A free-running timer with a resolution of 1.00 microseconds and a maximum count of 71 minutes. This timer is cleared during reset.
  
- 0b010101010    **LiteralL**      **Instr[15:0]**  
A read-only register. Writing to this register has no effect
  
- 0b010101011    **LiteralH**      **Instr[15:0] < 16;**  
A read-only register. Writing to this register has no effect
  
- 0b010101100    **MacData** - Writing to this address loads the **AluOut** data into the **MacData** register for use during Mac operations. The Mac operation, resulting from writing to the **MacOp** register, determines the definition of the **MacData** register contents as follows.

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| <u>MacOp</u> | <u>MacData definition</u>  |
| Mstop        | 0bXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX<br>MacData is not used for the StopM operation.   |
| WrMcfg       | hrst1, rsvd, rsvd, crcen, fulld, hrst1, hugen, nopre, paden, prty1, xdl10, ipgr1[6:0], ipgr2[6:0], ipgt[6:0].<br>Loads the MacCfg register with the contents of the MacData register. Refer to LSI Logic's <i>Ethernet-110 Core Technical Manual</i> for detailed definitions of these bits. |
| WrMrng       | 0bXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXSSSSSSSSSS<br>Loads seed[10:0] into the Mac's random number generator.   |
| RdPhy        | 0bXXXRRRRXXXXPPPPXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX<br>Reads register[R] of phy[P].  |
| WrPhy        | 0bXXXRRRRXXXXPPPPDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD<br>Writes register[R] of phy[P] with MacData[15:0].  |

Reading this register returns prsd[15:0] of Mac0 which contains phy status data returned to the Mac at the completion of a RdPhy command. This data is invalid while MacBsy is asserted as a result of a RdPhy command. Refer to the appropriate phy technical manual for a definition of the phy register contents.

264707 "50275005

OpdSel      SELECTED OPERANDS

0b010101101      **MacOp** - A write only register. Writing to this address loads the **MacSel** register and starts execution of the specified operation as follows.

| <u>AluOut</u> | <u>description</u>  |
|---------------|---|
| 0xXXXXX0XM    | <b>Mstop</b> - Halts execution of a <b>MacOp</b> for <b>Mac[M]</b> . The user must wait for <b>MacBsy</b> to be deasserted before issuing another command or changing the contents of <b>MacData</b> .  |
| 0xXXXXX1XM    | <b>WrMcfg</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData</b> to the <b>MacCfg</b> register of <b>Mac[M]</b> . The user must wait for <b>MacBsy</b> to be deasserted before issuing another command or changing the contents of <b>MacData</b> .  |
| 0xXXXXX2XM    | <b>WrMrng</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData</b> to the <b>seed</b> register of <b>Mac[M]</b> . The user must wait for <b>MacBsy</b> to be deasserted before issuing another command or changing the contents of <b>MacData</b> .  |
| 0xXXXXX3XM    | <b>RdPhy</b> - Reads the contents of <b>reg[R]</b> for <b>phy[P]</b> on the MII management bus of <b>Mac[M]</b> . The contents may be read from <b>MacData</b> after <b>MacBsy</b> has been de-asserted.  |
| 0xXXXXX4XM    | <b>WrPhy</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData[15:0]</b> to the <b>reg[R]</b> of <b>phy[P]</b> on the MII management bus of <b>Mac[M]</b> . The user must wait for <b>MacBsy</b> to be deasserted before issuing another command or changing the contents of <b>MacData</b> . |
| 0xXXXXX8XM    | <b>WrAddrAL</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData[15:0]</b> to <b>MacAddrA[15:0]</b> for <b>Mac[M]</b> .  |
| 0xXXXXX9XM    | <b>WrAddrAH</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData[11:0]</b> to <b>MacAddrA[47:16]</b> for <b>Mac[M]</b> .   |
| 0xXXXXXaXM    | <b>WrAddrBL</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData[15:0]</b> to <b>MacAddrB[15:0]</b> for <b>Mac[M]</b> .  |
| 0xXXXXXbXM    | <b>WrAddrBH</b> - Writes the contents of <b>MacData[11:0]</b> to <b>MacAddrB[47:16]</b> for <b>Mac[M]</b> .   |

0b010101110      **ChCmd**      A write-only register.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-------------|---|
| 31:11      | reserved    | Data written to these bits is ignored.  |
| 10:8       | command     | 0 - Stops execution of the current operation and clears the corresponding event flag. |
|            |             | 1 - Transfer data from ExtMem to ExtMem.  |
|            |             | 2 - Transfer data from Pci to ExtMem.   |
|            |             | 3 - Transfer data from ExtMem to Pci.   |
|            |             | 4 - Transfer data from Sram to ExtMem.  |
|            |             | 5 - Transfer data from ExtMem to Sram.  |
|            |             | 6 - Transfer data from Pci to Sram.   |
|            |             | 7 - Transfer data from Sram to Pci.   |
| 07:05      | reserved    | Data written to these bits is ignored.  |
| 04:00      | ChId        | Provides the channel number for the channel command.                                  |

0b010101110      **ChEvt**      A read-only register.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-------------|---|
| 31:00      | ChDn        | Each bit represents the done flag for the respective dma channel. These bits are set by a dma sequencer upon completion of the channel command. Cleared when the processor writes 0 to the corresponding <b>ChCmd</b> register. |

0b010101111      **GenEvt**      A read-only register.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|-------------|--|
| 31         | PciRdEvt    | Indicates that a PCI initiator is attempting to read a $\mu$ proc. register. |
| 30         | PciWrEvt    | Indicates that a PCI initiator has posted a write to a $\mu$ proc. register. |
| 29         | TimeEvt     | An event which occurs once every 2.00 milliseconds.                          |
| 28:00      | reserved    | Reserved for future use.   |

SOURCE: 60375009

0b010110000 **QCtrl** A write-only register used to select and manipulate a Q.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-------------|---|
| 31:11      | reserved    | Data written to these bits are ignored.   |
| 10:8       | <b>Qsz</b>  | Used only during <b>InitQ</b> operations to specify the size of the <b>QBdy</b> in Dram.<br>7 - Queue depth is 32K entries (128KB).<br>6 - Queue depth is 16K entries (64KB).<br>5 - Queue depth is 8K entries (32KB).<br>4 - Queue depth is 4K entries (16KB).<br>3 - Queue depth is 2K entries (8KB).<br>2 - Queue depth is 1K entries (4KB).<br>1 - Queue depth is 512 entries (2KB).<br>0 - Queue depth is 256 entries (1KB).   |
| 7:5        | <b>QOp</b>  | Specifies the queue operation to perform.<br>7 - <b>DblQ</b> Disables all queues.<br>6 - <b>EnQ</b> Enables all queues.<br>5 - <b>RdBdy</b> Increments the <b>QBdyRdPtr</b> and increments the <b>QTIWrPtr</b> .<br>4 - <b>WrBdy</b> Decrements the <b>QBdyWrPtr</b> and increments the <b>QHdRdPtr</b> .<br>3 - <b>RdQ</b> Returns a queue entry in register <b>QData</b> .<br>2 - <b>rsvd</b> Reserved. Not to be used.<br>1 - <b>InitQ</b> Set the queue status to empty and initializes <b>Qsz</b> .<br>0 - <b>SelQ</b> Selects the <b>QId</b> to be utilized during writes to <b>QData</b> . |
| 4:0        | <b>QId</b>  | Specifies the queue on which to perform all operations except <b>DblQ</b> or <b>EnQ</b> .   |

0b010110001 **QData** A read/write register. Writing this register will result in the data being pushed on to the selected queue. Reading this register fetches queue data popped off during the previous **RdQ** operation.

0b010110010 **reserved** Reserved for future expansion.

0b010110011 **XcvCtrl** A write-only register used to enable and disable Mac transmit and receive sub-channels.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>   | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|---------------|---|
| 31:09      | reserved      | Data written to these bits are ignored.   |
| 8          | <b>enable</b> | When set, indicates to the Mac transmit or receive sequencer that the subchannel contains a transmit or receive descriptor. |
| 07:05      | reserved      | Data written to these bits is ignored.  |
| 04         | <b>RcvCh</b>  | Selects a Mac receive subchannel when set. Selects a Mac transmit subchannel when cleared.                                  |
| 03         | reserved      | Data written to this bit are ignored.   |
| 02         | <b>SubCh</b>  | Selects subchannel B when set or A when reset.  |
| 01:00      | <b>MacId</b>  | Provides the Mac number for the subchannel enable bit.  |

0b010110100 **Lru** 0x0000000A

A read/write operand indicating which of the 16 entries is least recently used. When Reading This register the least recently used entry is returned, after which it is automatically made the most recently used entry. This register should only be read in conjunction with a 'Move' operation of the ALU, else the results are unpredictable. Writing to this register forces the addressed entry to become the least recently used entry.

0b010110101 **Mru** 0x0000000A

A write only operand forcing the addressed entry to become the most recently used entry.

"COPY" 60879009

|             |                  |   |
|-------------|------------------|---|
| 0b010111000 | <b>QInRdy</b>    | A read-only register comprising <b>QHd</b> not full flags for each of the 32 queues.  |
| 0b010111001 | <b>QOutRdy</b>   | A read-only register comprising <b>QTl</b> not empty flags for each of the 32 queues. |
| 0b010111010 | <b>QEmpty</b>    | A read-only register comprising <b>QEmpty</b> flags for each of the 32 queues.        |
| 0b010111011 | <b>QFull</b>     | A read-only register comprising <b>QFull</b> flags for each of the 32 queues.         |
| 0b0101111XX | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future expansion.  |
| 0b0110XXXXX | <b>Constants</b> | {0b000, <b>OpdSel</b> [4:0]}  |
| 0b01110XXXX | <b>reserved</b>  | Reserved for future expansion.  |

464707"608T9029

OpdSel      SELECTED OPERANDS

0b01111XXXX Sram OPERATIONS

```

OpdSel[3]      PostAddrOp
0                nop
1                RamAddr = RamAddr + (OpdSel[1:0]);

OpdSel[2]      transpose_Ctrl
0                don't transpose
1                transpose bytes

OpdSel[1:0]    RamOpdSz
0                quadlet
1                triplet
2                doublet
3                byte
    
```

| <u>RAM READ ATTRIBUTES</u>   |                              |                            |                            | <u>SOURCE_OPERAND</u> |             |             |             |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <u>endian</u><br><u>mode</u> | <u>trans-</u><br><u>pose</u> | <u>byte</u><br><u>offs</u> | <u>Sram</u><br><u>data</u> | <u>sz=Q</u>           | <u>sz=T</u> | <u>sz=D</u> | <u>sz=B</u> |
| little                       | 0                            | 0                          | abcd                       | abcd                  | 0bcd        | 00cd        | 000d        |
| little                       | 0                            | 1                          | abcX                       | trap                  | 0abc        | 00bc        | 000c        |
| little                       | 0                            | 2                          | abXX                       | trap                  | trap        | 00ab        | 000b        |
| little                       | 0                            | 3                          | aXXX                       | trap                  | trap        | trap        | 000a        |
| little                       | 1                            | 0                          | abcd                       | dcba                  | 0dcb        | 00dc        | 000d        |
| little                       | 1                            | 1                          | abcX                       | trap                  | 0cba        | 00cb        | 000c        |
| little                       | 1                            | 2                          | abXX                       | trap                  | trap        | 00ba        | 000b        |
| little                       | 1                            | 3                          | aXXX                       | trap                  | trap        | trap        | 000a        |
| BIG                          | 0                            | 0                          | abcd                       | abcd                  | 0abc        | 00ab        | 000a        |
| BIG                          | 0                            | 1                          | Xbcd                       | trap                  | 0bcd        | 00bc        | 000b        |
| BIG                          | 0                            | 2                          | XXcd                       | trap                  | trap        | 00cd        | 000c        |
| BIG                          | 0                            | 3                          | XXXd                       | trap                  | trap        | trap        | 000d        |
| BIG                          | 1                            | 0                          | abcd                       | dcba                  | 0cba        | 00ba        | 000a        |
| BIG                          | 1                            | 1                          | Xbcd                       | trap                  | 0dcb        | 00cb        | 000b        |
| BIG                          | 1                            | 2                          | XXcd                       | trap                  | trap        | 00dc        | 000c        |
| BIG                          | 1                            | 3                          | XXXd                       | trap                  | trap        | trap        | 000d        |

| <u>RAM WRITE ATTRIBUTES</u>  |                              |                           |                          | <u>SOURCE_OPERAND</u> |             |             |             |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <u>endian</u><br><u>mode</u> | <u>trans-</u><br><u>pose</u> | <u>Opd</u><br><u>size</u> | <u>Alu</u><br><u>out</u> | <u>OF=0</u>           | <u>OF=1</u> | <u>OF=2</u> | <u>OF=3</u> |
| little                       | 0                            | Q                         | abcd                     | abcd                  | trap        | trap        | trap        |
| little                       | 0                            | T                         | Xbcd                     | -bcd                  | bcd-        | trap        | trap        |
| little                       | 0                            | D                         | XXcd                     | --cd                  | -cd-        | cd--        | trap        |
| little                       | 0                            | B                         | XXXd                     | ---d                  | --d-        | -d--        | d---        |
| little                       | 1                            | Q                         | abcd                     | dcba                  | trap        | trap        | trap        |
| little                       | 1                            | T                         | Xbcd                     | -dcb                  | dcb-        | trap        | trap        |
| little                       | 1                            | D                         | XXcd                     | --dc                  | -dc-        | dc--        | trap        |
| little                       | 1                            | B                         | XXXd                     | ---d                  | --d-        | -d--        | d---        |
| big                          | 0                            | Q                         | abcd                     | abcd                  | trap        | trap        | trap        |
| big                          | 0                            | T                         | Xbcd                     | bcd-                  | -bcd        | trap        | trap        |
| big                          | 0                            | D                         | XXcd                     | cd--                  | -cd-        | --cd        | trap        |
| big                          | 0                            | B                         | XXXd                     | d---                  | -d--        | ---d        | ---         |
| big                          | 1                            | Q                         | abcd                     | dcba                  | trap        | trap        | trap        |
| big                          | 1                            | T                         | Xbcd                     | dcb-                  | -dcb        | trap        | trap        |
| big                          | 1                            | D                         | XXcd                     | dc--                  | -dc-        | --dc        | trap        |
| big                          | 1                            | B                         | XXXd                     | d---                  | -d--        | ---d        | ---         |

0b1aaaaaaaa **File**    **File@OpdSel[8:0];**  
 Allows direct, non-paged, access to the top half of the register file.

200801111XXXX

2025-10-14 14:49

| <u>TstSel</u> | <u>SELECTED TEST</u>  |   |
|---------------|---|---|
| 0bX00XXXXX    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ AluOut[TstSel[4:0]]                         | //Alu bit   |
| 0bX0100000    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ C   | //carry   |
| 0bX0100001    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ V   | //error   |
| 0bX0100010    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ Z   | //zero  |
| 0bX0100011    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ (Z   ~C)                                    | //less or equal   |
| 0bX0100100    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ PrevC                                       | //previous carry  |
| 0bX0100101    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ PrevV                                       | //previous error  |
| 0bX0100110    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ PrevZ                                       | //previous zero   |
| 0bX0100111    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ (PrevZ & Z)                                 | //64b zero  |
| 0bX0101000    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ QOpDn                                       | //queue op okay   |
| 0bX0101001    | Tst = reserved  |   |
| 0bX010101X    | Tst = reserved  |   |
| 0bX01011XX    | Tst = reserved  |   |
| 0bX0110XXX    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ Lock[TstSel[2:0]]<br>Lock(TstSel[2:0]) = 1; | //tests the current value of<br>//the Lock then set it. |
| 0bX0111XXX    | Tst = TstSel[7] ^ Lock[TstSel[2:0]]                           | //tests the value of Lock.                              |
| 0bX01XXXXX    | Tst = reserved  |   |
| 0bX1XXXXXX    | Tst = reserved  |   |

| <u>FlgSel</u> | <u>FLAG OPERATION</u> |   |
|---------------|-----------------------|---|
| 0b00000000    | No operation.         |   |
| 0b00000001    | <b>SelfRst</b>        | Forces a self reset for the entire chip excluding the PCI configuration registers     |
| 0b00000010    | <b>SelBigEnd</b>      | Selects big-endian mode for ram accesses for the current Cpu.                         |
| 0b00000011    | <b>SelLitEnd</b>      | Selects little-endian mode for ram accesses for the current Cpu.                      |
| 0b00000100    | <b>DblMap</b>         | Disable instruction re-mapping for the current Cpu.                                   |
| 0b00000101    | <b>EnbMap</b>         | Enable instruction re-mapping for the current Cpu.                                    |
| 0b0000011X    | reserved              |   |
| 0b00001XXX    | reserved              |   |
| 0b00010XXX    | <b>ClrLck</b>         | Lock[FlgSel[2:0]] = 0;<br>Clears the semaphore register bit for the current Cpu only. |
| 0b00011XXX    | reserved              |   |



**FlgSel****FLAG OPERATION**

0b0010XXXX

**AddrOp****FlgSel[3:2]**

|   |                               |            |                         |
|---|-------------------------------|------------|-------------------------|
| 0 | <b>RamAddr = Literal[15]</b>  | ? Literal  | : (Literal   RamBase);  |
| 1 | <b>RamAddr = AddrRegA[15]</b> | ? AddrRegA | : (AddrRegA   RamBase); |
| 2 | <b>RamAddr = AddrRegB[15]</b> | ? AddrRegB | : (AddrRegB   RamBase); |
| 3 | if (OpdA == RamAddr)          |            |                         |
|   | <b>RamAddr = AluOut[15]</b>   | ? AluOut   | : (AluOut   RamBase);   |
|   | else if (OpdA == ram)         |            |                         |
|   | <b>RamAddr = AddrRegB[15]</b> | ? AddrRegB | : (AddrRegB   RamBase); |
|   | else                          |            |                         |
|   | <b>RamAddr = AddrRegA[15]</b> | ? AddrRegA | : (AddrRegA   RamBase); |

**FlgSel[1:0]**

|   |                            |                            |  |
|---|----------------------------|----------------------------|--|
|   | <b>addr reg load</b>       |                            |  |
| 0 | nop                        |                            |  |
| 1 | <b>AddrRegA = Literal;</b> |                            |  |
| 2 | <b>AddrRegB = Literal;</b> |                            |  |
| 3 | <b>AddrRegA = Literal;</b> | <b>AddrRegB = Literal;</b> |  |

note: When specifying the same register for both the load and select fields, the current value of the register, before it is loaded with the new value, will be used for the ram address.

0b0011XXXX

reserved

0b01000000

**WrWcsL@Dbg** Causes the bits [31:0] of the control-store at address **DbgAddr** to be written with the current **AluOut** data.

0b01000001

**WrWcsH@Dbg** Causes the bits [63:32] of the control-store at address **DbgAddr** to be written with the current **AluOut** data then increments **DbgAddr**.

0b01000010

**RdWcsL@Dbg** Causes the bits [31:0] of the control-store at address **DbgAddr** to be moved to file address 0x1ff.

0b01000011

**RdWcsH@Dbg** Causes the bits [63:32] of the control-store at address **DbgAddr** to be moved to file address 0x1ff then increments **DbgAddr**.

0b01000100

reserved

0b010001XX

**Step** Allows the Cpu (**FlgSel[1:0]**) cycles after the current cycle to execute a single instruction. There is no effect if the Cpu is not halted. An offset of 0 is not allowed.

0b010010XX

**PcMd** Selects the **Pc** as the address source for the control-store during instruction fetches for the Cpu (**FlgSel[1:0]**) cycles after the current cycle.

0b010011XX

**DbgMd** Selects the **DbgAddr** address register as the address source for the control-store during instruction fetches for the Cpu (**FlgSel[1:0]**) cycles after the current cycle.

0b010100XX

**Hlt** Halts the Cpu (**FlgSel[1:0]**) cycles after the current cycle.

0b010101XX

**Run** Clears Halt for the Cpu (**FlgSel[1:0]**) cycles after the current cycle.

0b01011XXX

reserved

0b011XXXXX

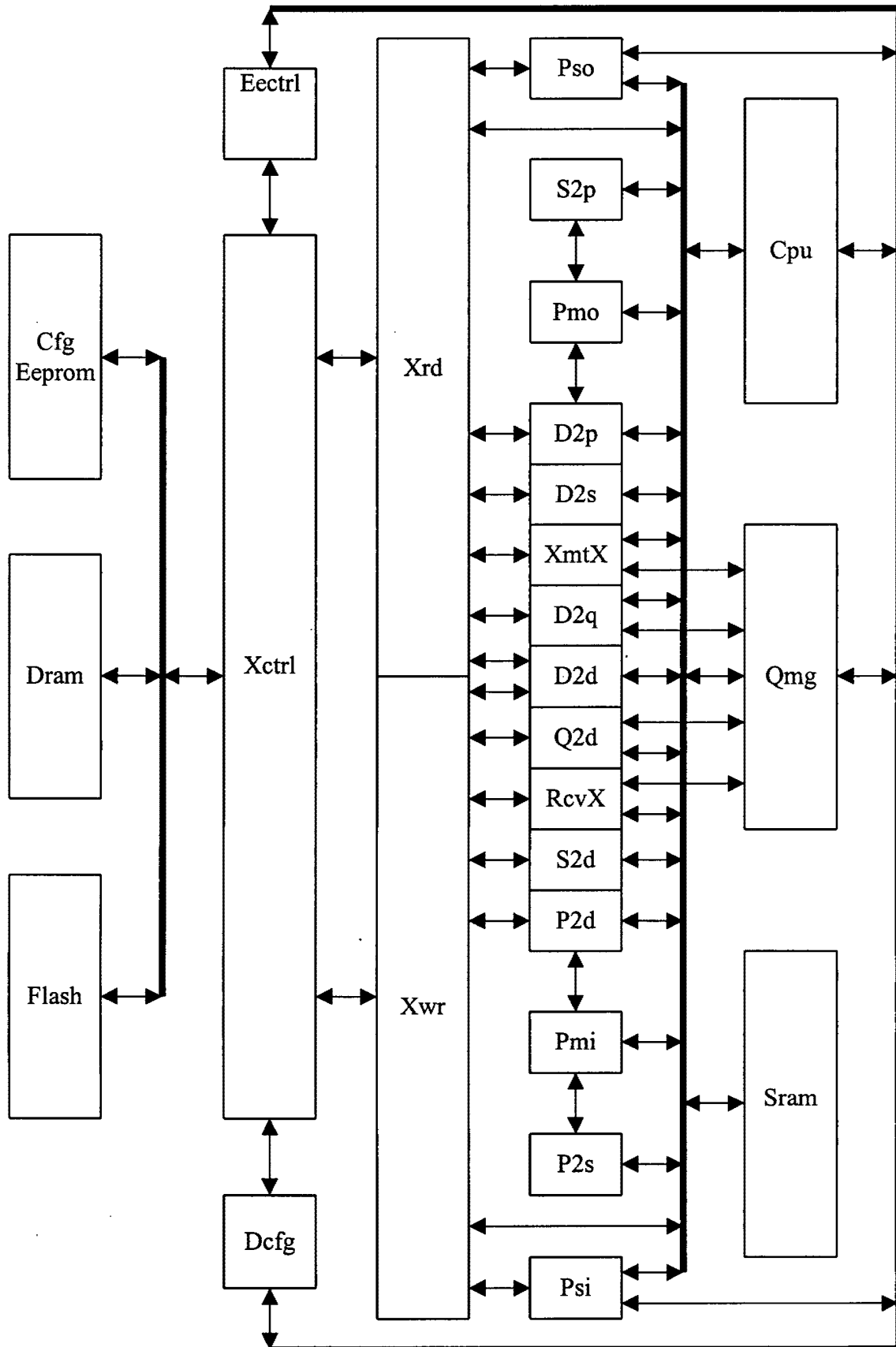
reserved

0b1XXXXXXX

reserved

464747 " 60879009

DATA FLOW



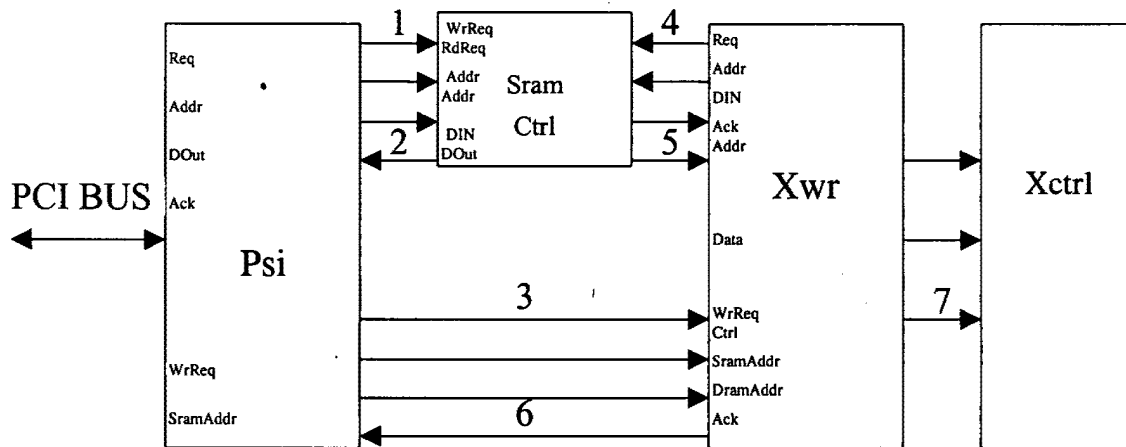
464707 60875009

## SRAM CONTROL SEQUENCER (SramCtrl)

Sram is the nexus for data movement within the INIC. A hierarchy of sequencers, working in concert, accomplish the movement of data between dram, Sram, Cpu, ethernet and the Pci bus. Slave sequencers, provided with stimulus from master sequencers, request data movement operations by way of the Sram, Pci bus, Dram and Flash. The slave sequencers prioritize, service and acknowledge the requests

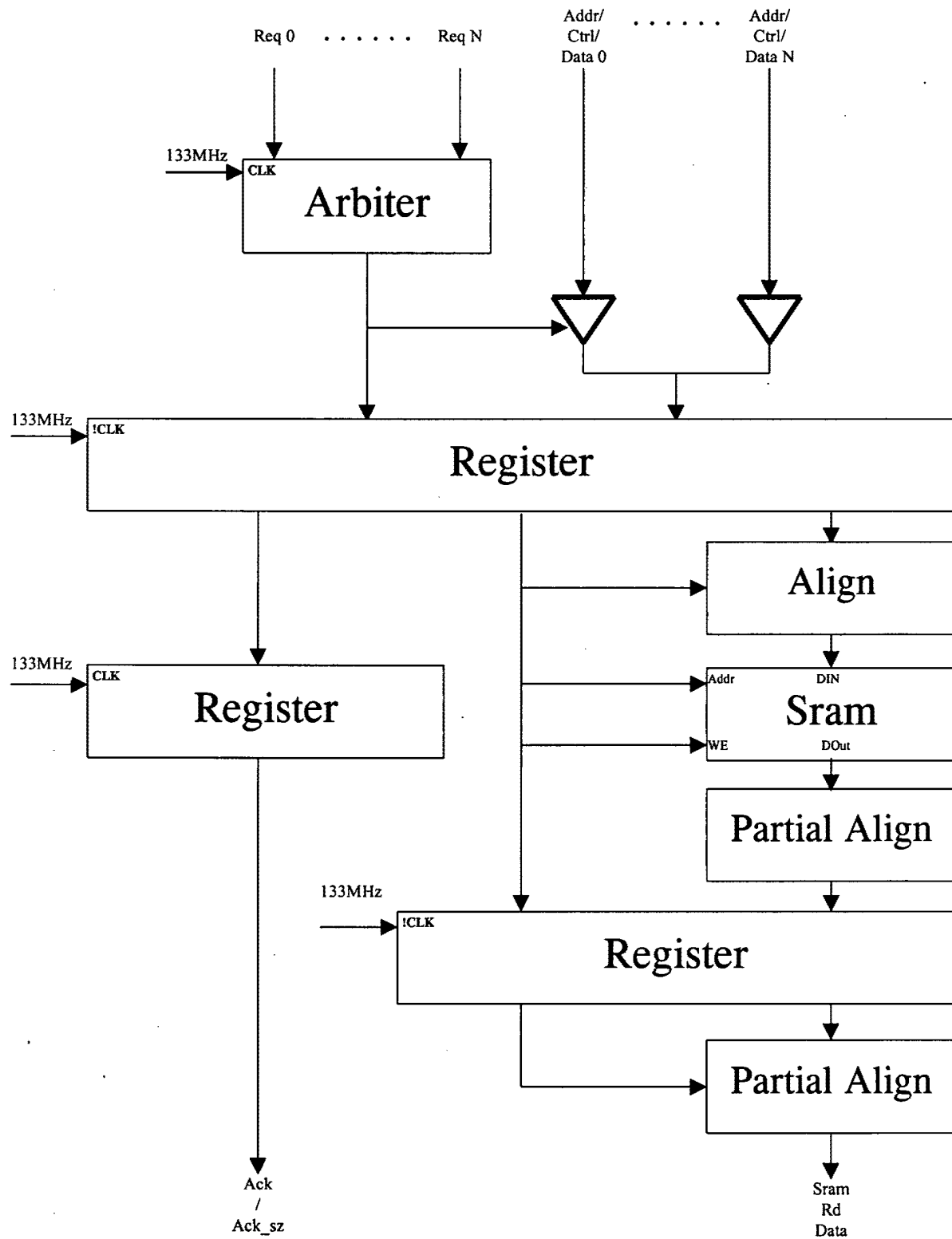
The preceding block diagram shows all of the master and slave sequencers of the INIC product. Request information such as r/w, address, size, endian and alignment are represented by each request line. Acknowledge information to master sequencers include only the size of the transfer being acknowledged.

The following block diagram illustrates how data movement is accomplished for a Pci slave write to Dram. Note that the Psi (Pci slave in) module functions as both a master sequencer. Psi sends a write request to the SramCtrl module. Psi requests Xwr to move data from Sram to dram. Xwr subsequently sends a read request to the SramCtrl module then writes the data to the dram via the Xctrl module. As each piece of data is moved from the Sram to Xwr, Xwr sends an acknowledge to the Psi module.



454707-60815002

# SRAM CONTROL SEQUENCER (SramCtrl)

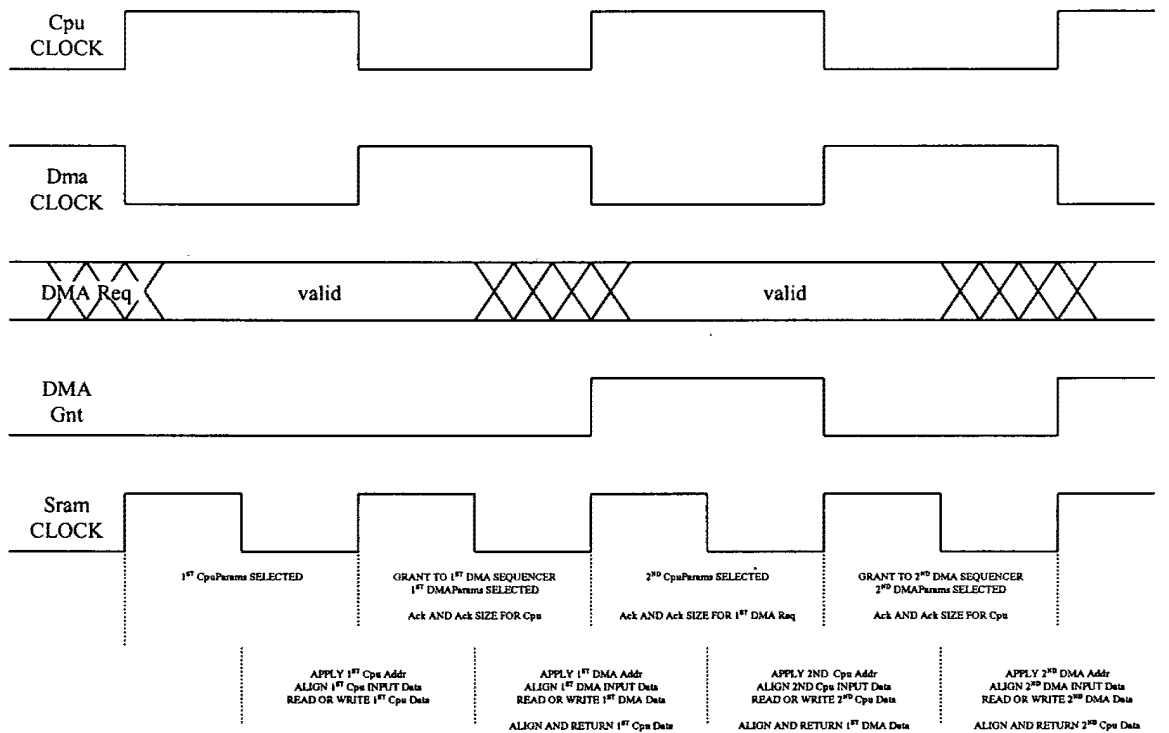


S0061809-101497

The Sram control sequencer services requests to store to, or retrieve data from an Sram organized as 1024 locations by 128 bits (16KB). The sequencer operates at a frequency of 133MHz, allowing both a Cpu access and a dma access to occur during a standard 66MHz Cpu cycle. One 133MHz cycle is reserved for Cpu accesses during each 66MHz cycle while the remaining 133MHz cycle is reserved for dma accesses on a prioritized basis.

The preceding block diagram shows the major functions of the Sram control sequencer. A slave sequencer begins by asserting a request along with r/w, ram address, endian, data path size, data path alignment and request size. SramCtrl prioritizes the requests. The request parameters are then selected by a multiplexer which feeds the parameters to the Sram via a register. The requestor provides the Sram address which when coupled with the other parameters controls the input and output alignment. Sram outputs are fed to the output aligner via a register. Requests are acknowledged in parallel with the returned data.

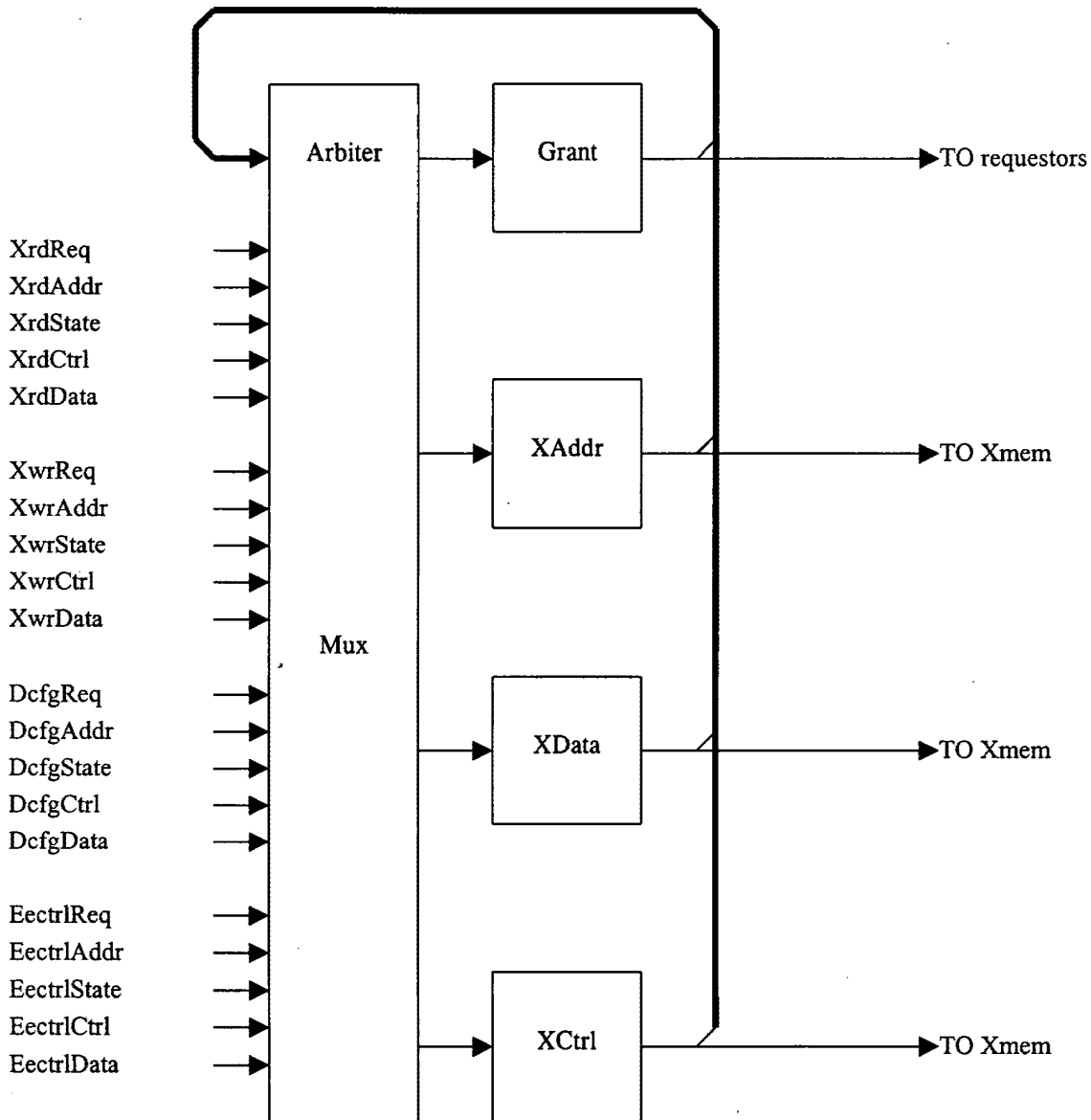
Following is a timing diagram depicting two ram accesses during a single 66MHz clock cycle.



6051309-0149

## EXTERNAL MEMORY CONTROL (Xctrl)

Xctrl provides the facility whereby Xwr, Xrd, Dcfg and Eectrl access external Flash and Dram. Xctrl includes an arbiter, i/o registers, data multiplexers, address multiplexers and control multiplexers. Ownership of the external memory interface is requested by each block and granted to each of the requestors by the arbiter function. Once ownership has been granted the multiplexers select the address, data and control signals from owner, allowing access to external memory.



6081809-10349

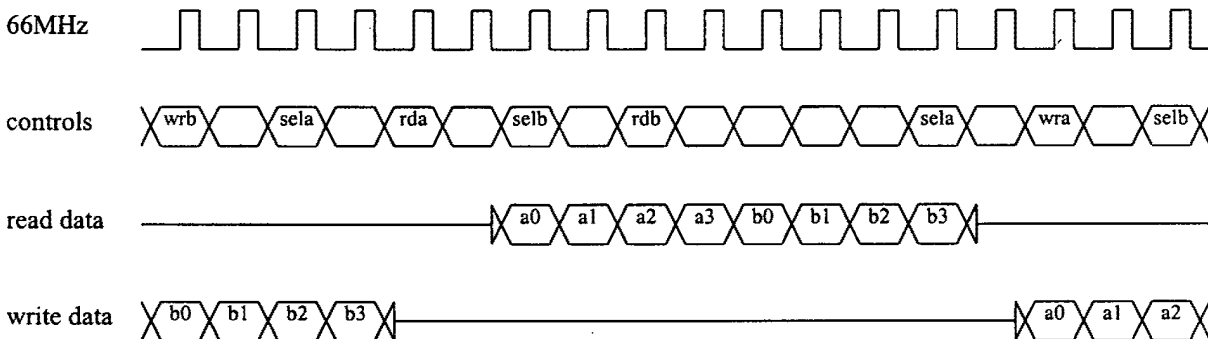
## EXTERNAL MEMORY READ SEQUENCER (Xrd)

The Xrd sequencer acts only as a slave sequencer. Servicing requests issued by master sequencers, the Xrd sequencer moves data from external sdram or flash to the Sram, via the Xctrl module, in blocks of 32 bytes or less. The nature of the sdram requires fixed burst sizes for each of it's internal banks with ras precharge intervals between each access. By selecting a burst size of 32 bytes for sdram reads and interleaving bank accesses on a 16 byte boundary, we can ensure that the ras precharge interval for the first bank is satisfied before burst completion for the second bank, allowing us to re-instruct the first bank and continue with uninterrupted dram access. Sdrams require a consistent burst size be utilized each and every time the sdram is accessed. For this reason, if an sdram access does not begin or end on a 32 byte boundary, sdram bandwidth will be reduced due to less than 32 bytes of data being transferred during the burst cycle.

The following block diagram depicts the major functional blocks of the Xrd sequencer. The first step in servicing a request to move data from sdram to Sram is the prioritization of the master sequencer requests. Next the Xrd sequencer takes a snapshot of the dram read address and applies configuration information to determine the correct bank, row and column address to apply. Once sufficient data has been read, the Xrd sequencer issues a write request to the SramCtrl sequencer which in turn sends an acknowledge to the Xrd sequencer. The Xrd sequencer passes the acknowledge along to the level two master with a size code indicating how much data was written during the Sram cycle allowing the update of pointers and counters. The dram read and Sram write cycles repeat until the original burst request has been completed at which point the Xrd sequencer prioritizes any remaining requests in preparation for the next burst cycle.

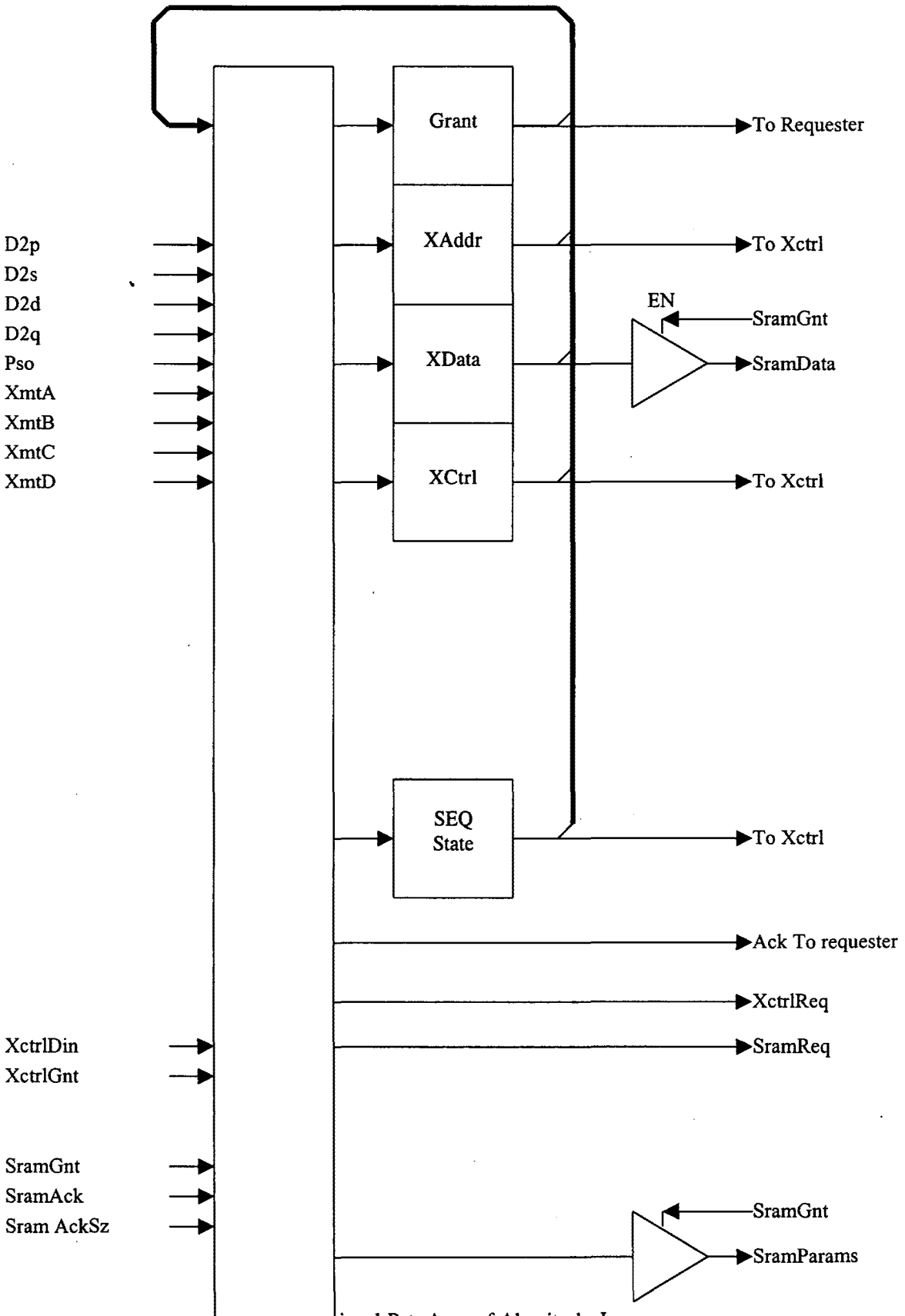
Contiguous dram burst cycles are not guaranteed to the Xrd sequencer as an algorithm is implemented which ensures highest priority to refresh cycles followed by flash accesses, dram writes then dram reads.

Following is a timing diagram illustrating how data is read from sdram. The dram has been configured for a burst of four with a latency of two clock cycles. Bank A is first selected/activated followed by a read command two clock cycles later. The bank select/activate for bank B is next issued as read data begins returning two clocks after the read command was issued to bank A. Two clock cycles before we need to receive data from bank B we issue the read command. Once all 16 bytes have been received from bank A we begin receiving data from bank B.



E0051809 "101497"

# EXTERNAL MEMORY READ SEQUENCER (Xrd)



454707 "60879009



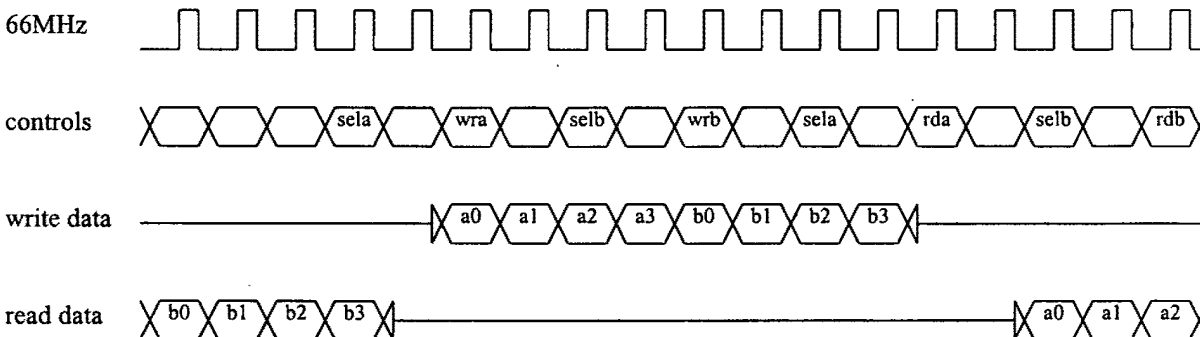
## EXTERNAL MEMORY WRITE SEQUENCER (Xwr)

The Xwr sequencer is a slave sequencer. Servicing requests issued by master sequencers, the Xwr sequencer moves data from Sram to the external sdram or flash, via the Xctrl module, in blocks of 32 bytes or less while accumulating a checksum of the data moved. The nature of the sdram requires fixed burst sizes for each of its internal banks with ras precharge intervals between each access. By selecting a burst size of 32 bytes for sdram writes and interleaving bank accesses on a 16 byte boundary, we can ensure that the ras precharge interval for the first bank is satisfied before burst completion for the second bank, allowing us to re-instruct the first bank and continue with uninterrupted dram access. Sdrams require a consistent burst size be utilized each and every time the sdram is accessed. For this reason, if an sdram access does not begin or end on a 32 byte boundary, sdram bandwidth will be reduced due to less than 32 bytes of data being transferred during the burst cycle.

The following block diagram depicts the major functional blocks of the Xwr sequencer. The first step in servicing a request to move data from Sram to sdram is the prioritization of the level two master requests. Next the Xwr sequencer takes a Snapshot of the dram write address and applies configuration information to determine the correct dram, bank, row and column address to apply. The Xwr sequencer immediately issues a read command to the Sram to which the Sram responds with both data and an acknowledge. The Xwr sequencer passes the acknowledge to the level two master along with a size code indicating how much data was read during the Sram cycle allowing the update of pointers and counters. Once sufficient data has been read from Sram, the Xwr sequencer issues a write command to the dram starting the burst cycle and computing a checksum as the data flies by. The Sram read cycle repeats until the original burst request has been completed at which point the Xwr sequencer prioritizes any remaining requests in preparation for the next burst cycle.

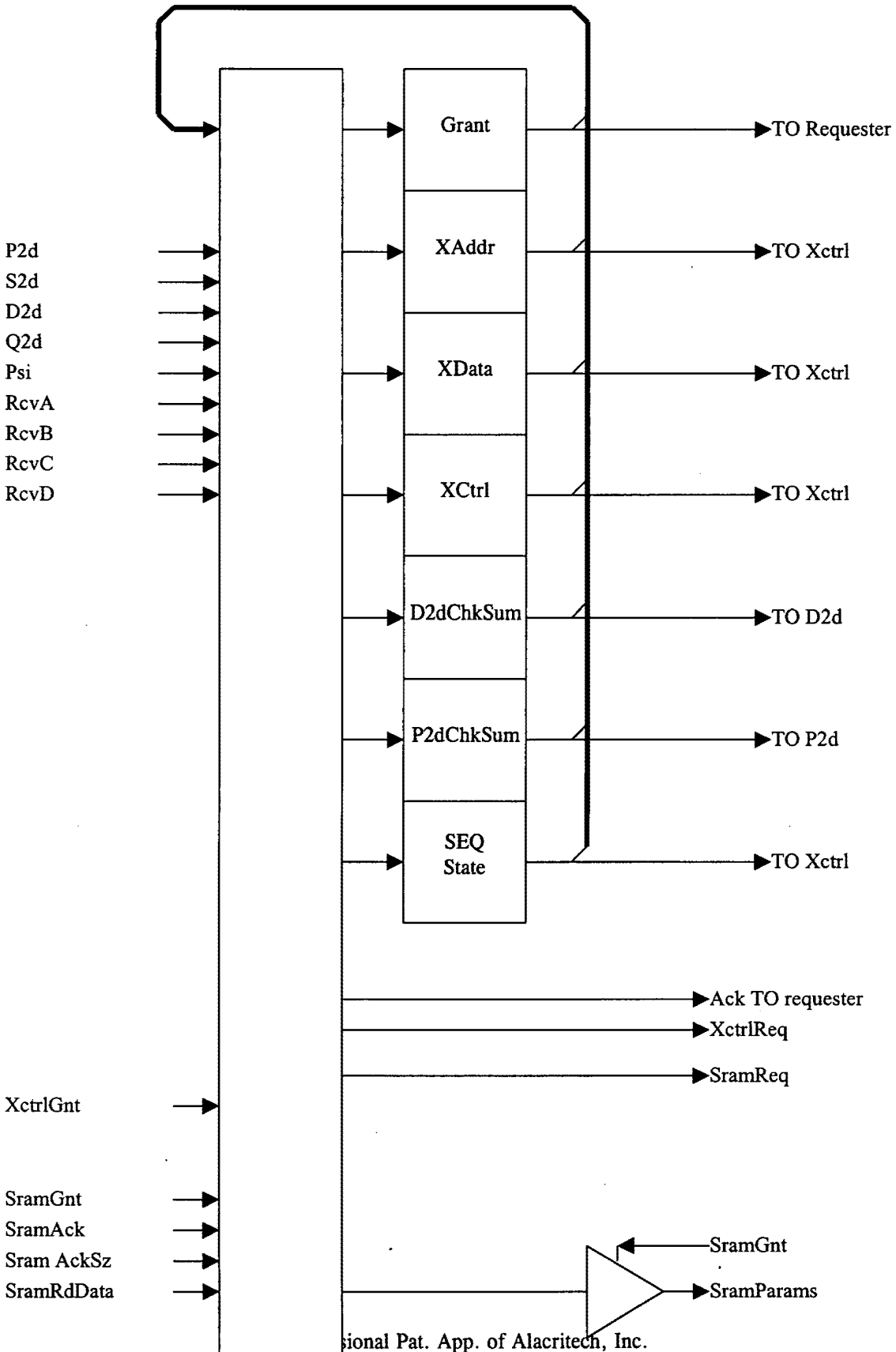
Contiguous dram burst cycles are not guaranteed to the Xwr sequencer as an algorithm is implemented which ensures highest priority to refresh cycles followed by flash accesses then dram writes.

Following is a timing diagram illustrating how data is written to sdram. The dram has been configured for a burst of four with a latency of two clock cycles. Bank A is first selected/activated followed by a write command two clock cycles later. The bank select/activate for bank B is next issued in preparation for issuing the second write command. As soon as the first 16 byte burst to bank A completes we issue the write command for bank B and begin supplying data.



60061309 " 101199"

# EXTERNAL MEMORY WRITE SEQUENCER (Xwr)

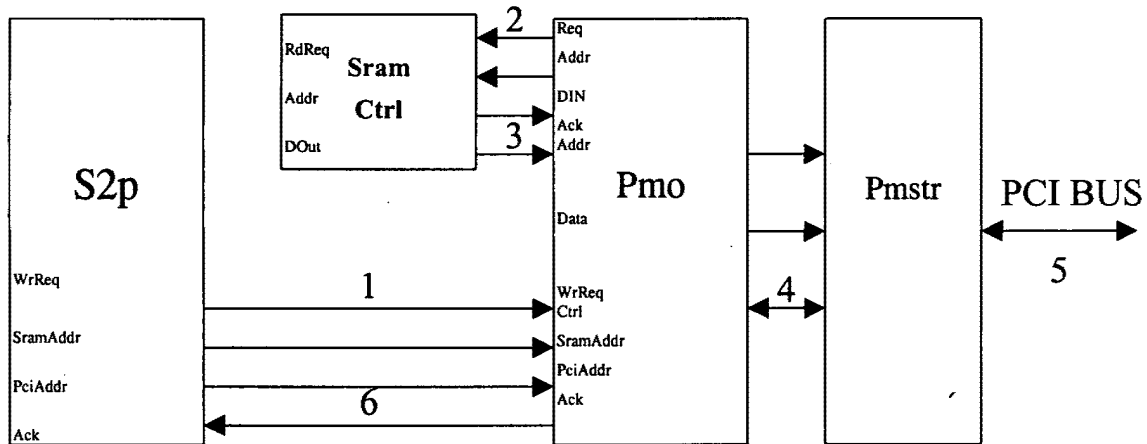


6061809 104497

## PCI MASTER-OUT SEQUENCER (Pmo)

The **Pmo** sequencer acts only as a slave sequencer. Servicing requests issued by master sequencers, the **Pmo** sequencer moves data from an Sram based fifo to a Pci target, via the **PciMstrIO** module, in bursts of up to 256 bytes. The nature of the PCI bus dictates the use of the write line command to ensure optimal system performance. The write line command requires that the **Pmo** sequencer be capable of transferring a whole multiple (1X, 2X, 3X, ...) of cache lines of which the size is set through the Pci configuration registers. To accomplish this end, **Pmo** will automatically perform partial bursts until it has aligned the transfers on a cache line boundary at which time it will begin usage of the write line command. The Sram fifo depth, of 256 bytes, has been chosen in order to allow **Pmo** to accommodate cache line sizes up to 128 bytes. Provided the cache line size is less than 128 bytes, **Pmo** will perform multiple, contiguous cache line bursts until it has exhausted the supply of data.

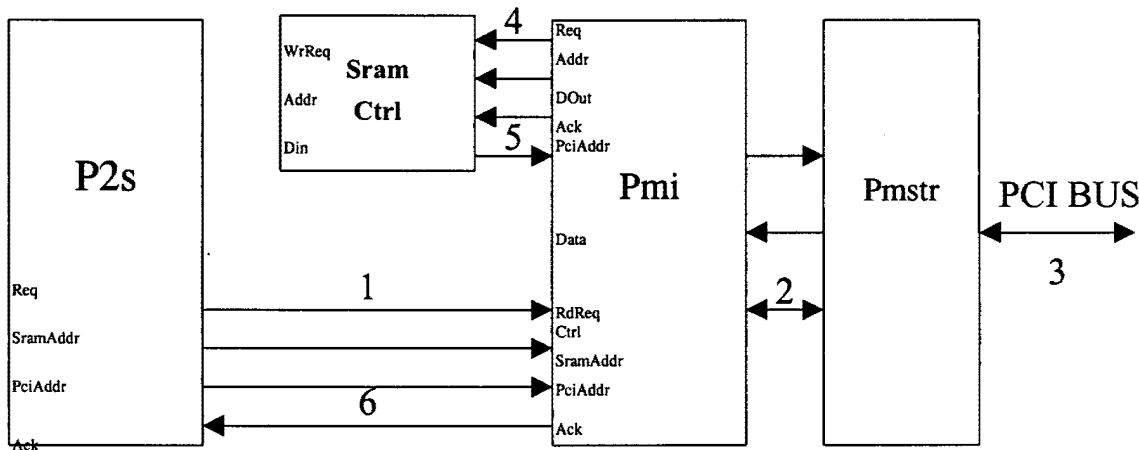
**Pmo** receives requests from two separate sources; the dram to Pci (**D2p**) module and the Sram to Pci (**S2p**) module. An operation first begins with prioritization of the requests where the **S2p** module is given highest priority. Next, the **Pmo** module takes a Snapshot of the Sram fifo address and uses this to generate read requests for the **SramCtrl** sequencer. The **Pmo** module then proceeds to arbitrate for ownership of the Pci bus via the **PciMstrIO** module. Once the **Pmo** holding registers have sufficient data and Pci bus mastership has been granted, the **Pmo** module begins transferring data to the Pci target. For each successful transfer, **Pmo** sends an acknowledge and encoded size to the master sequencer, allow it to update it's internal pointers, counters and status. Once the Pci burst transaction has terminated, **Pmo** parks on the Pci bus unless another initiator has requested ownership. **Pmo** again prioritizes the incoming requests and repeats the process.



## PCI MASTER-IN SEQUENCER (Pmi)

The **Pmi** sequencer acts only as a slave sequencer. Servicing requests issued by master sequencers, the **Pmi** sequencer moves data from a **Pci** target to an **Sram** based fifo, via the **PciMstrIO** module, in bursts of up to 256 bytes. The nature of the **PCI** bus dictates the use of the read multiple command to ensure optimal system performance. The read multiple command requires that the **Pmi** sequencer be capable of transferring a cache line or more of data. To accomplish this end, **Pmi** will automatically perform partial cache line bursts until it has aligned the transfers on a cache line boundary at which time it will begin usage of the read multiple command. The **Sram** fifo depth, of 256 bytes, has been chosen in order to allow **Pmi** to accommodate cache line sizes up to 128 bytes. Provided the cache line size is less than 128 bytes, **Pmi** will perform multiple, contiguous cache line bursts until it has filled the fifo.

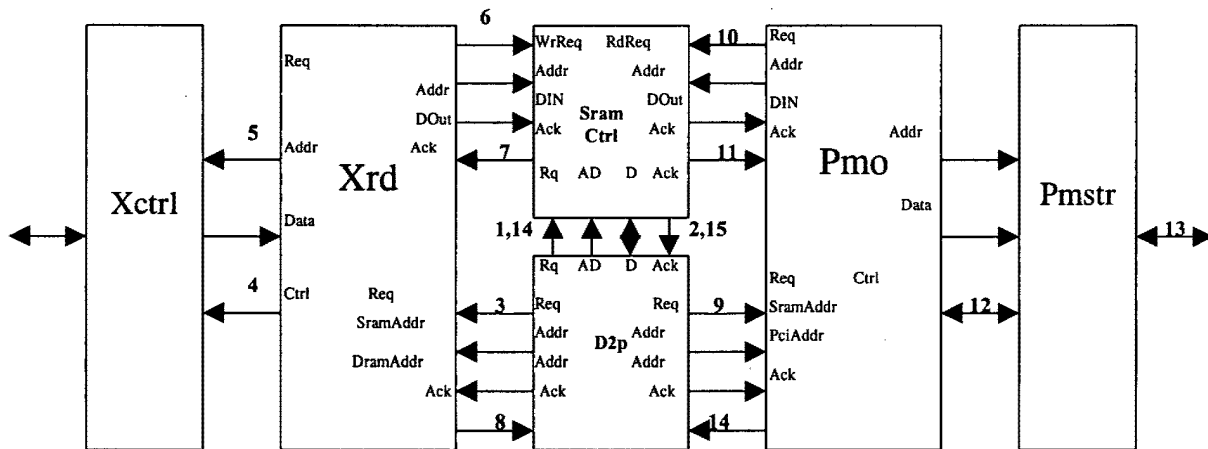
**Pmi** receive requests from two separate sources; the **Pci** to dram (**P2d**) module and the **Pci** to **Sram** (**P2s**) module. An operation first begins with prioritization of the requests where the **P2s** module is given highest priority. The **Pmi** module then proceeds to arbitrate for ownership of the **Pci** bus via the **PciMstrIO** module. Once the **Pci** bus mastership has been granted and the **Pmi** holding registers have sufficient data, the **Pmi** module begins transferring data to the **Sram** fifo. For each successful transfer, **Pmi** sends an acknowledge and encoded size to the master sequencer, allowing it to update it's internal pointers, counters and status. Once the **Pci** burst transaction has terminated, **Pmi** parks on the **Pci** bus unless another initiator has requested ownership. **Pmi** again prioritizes the incoming requests and repeats the process.



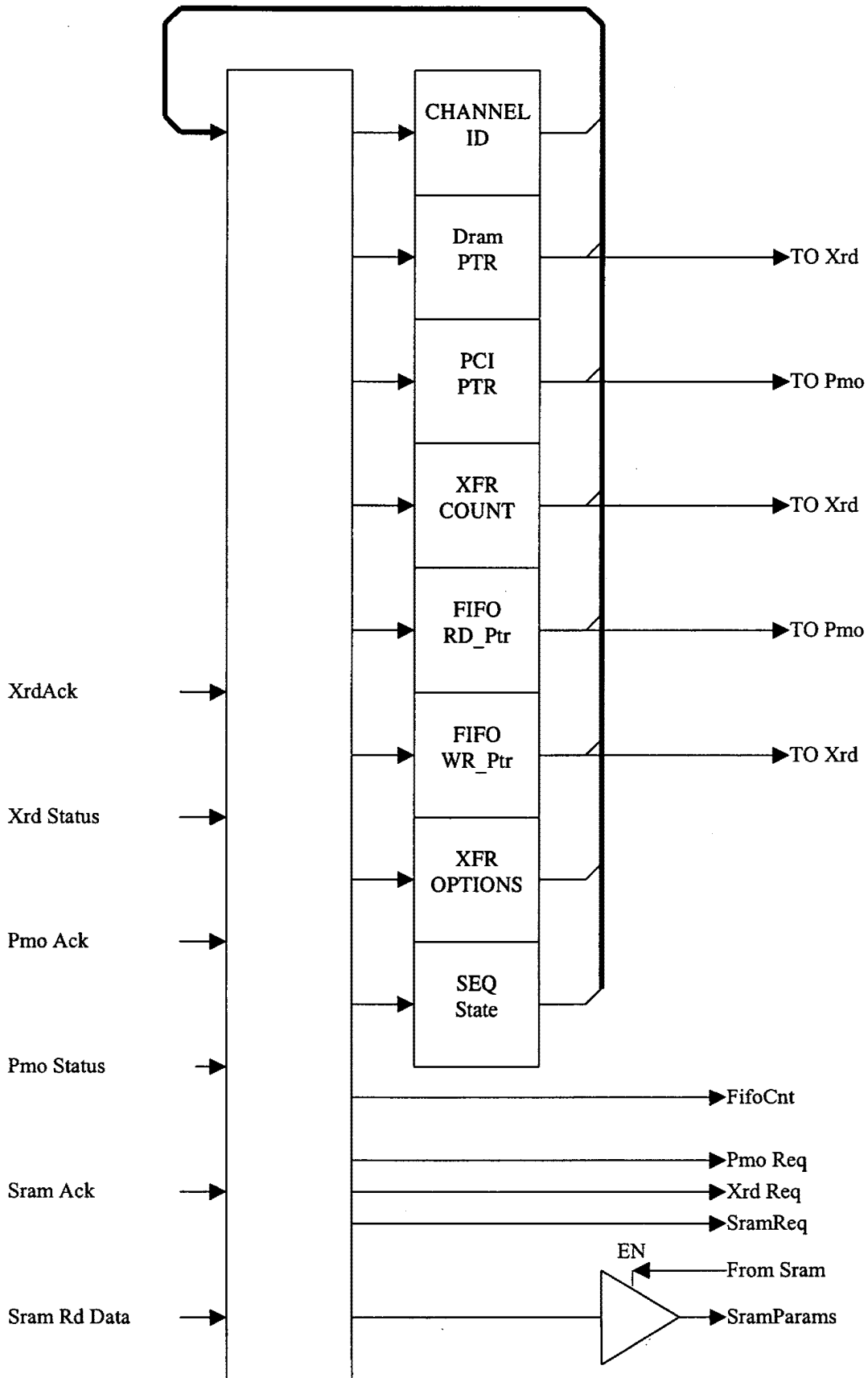
## Dram TO PCI SEQUENCER (D2p)

The **D2p** sequencer acts as a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the **Cpu**, the **D2p** sequencer manages movement of data from **dram** to the **Pci** bus by issuing requests to both the **Xrd** sequencer and the **Pmo** sequencer. Data transfer is accomplished using an **Sram** based fifo through which data is staged.

**D2p** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two **dma** channels. Once a command request has been detected, **D2p** fetches a **dma** descriptor from an **Sram** location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the **dram** address, **Pci** address, **Pci** endian and request size. **D2p** then issues a request to the **D2s** sequencer causing the **Sram** based fifo to fill with **dram** data. Once the fifo contains sufficient data for a **Pci** transaction, **D2s** issues a request to **Pmo** which in turn moves data from the fifo to a **Pci** target. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **D2p** writes ending status in to the **Sram** **dma** descriptor area and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **D2p** then monitors the **dma** channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from **dram** to **Pci** target.



# Dram TO PCI SEQUENCER (D2p)

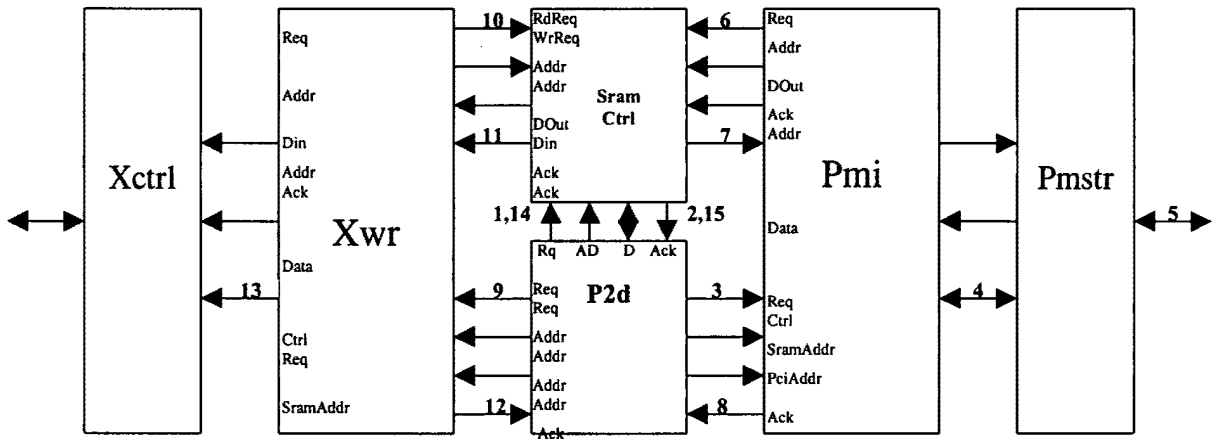


654707 "6087509

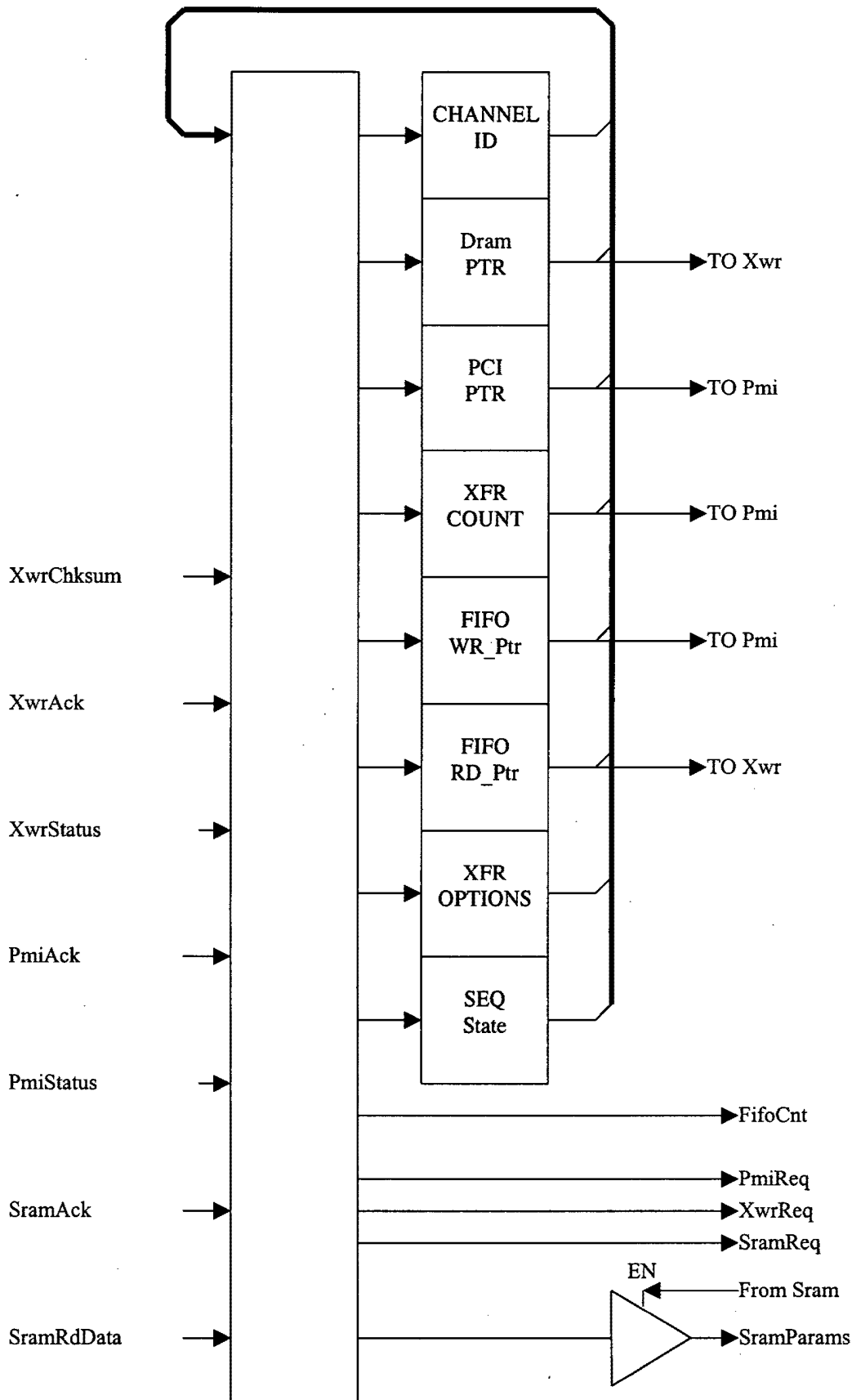
## PCI TO DRAM SEQUENCER (P2d)

The **P2d** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the **Cpu**, the **P2d** sequencer manages movement of data from **Pci** bus to **dram** by issuing requests to both the **Xwr** sequencer and the **Pmi** sequencer. Data transfer is accomplished using an **Sram** based fifo through which data is staged.

**P2d** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two **dma** channels. Once a command request has been detected, **P2d**, operating as a slave sequencer, fetches a **dma** descriptor from an **Sram** location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the **dram** address, **Pci** address, **Pci** endian and request size. **P2d** then issues a request to **Pmo** which in turn moves data from the **Pci** target to the **Sram** fifo. Next, **P2d** issues a request to the **Xwr** sequencer causing the **Sram** based fifo contents to be written to the **dram**. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **P2d** writes ending status in to the **Sram** **dma** descriptor area and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **P2d** then monitors the **dma** channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from a **Pci** target to **dram**.



PCI TO DRAM SEQUENCER (P2d)



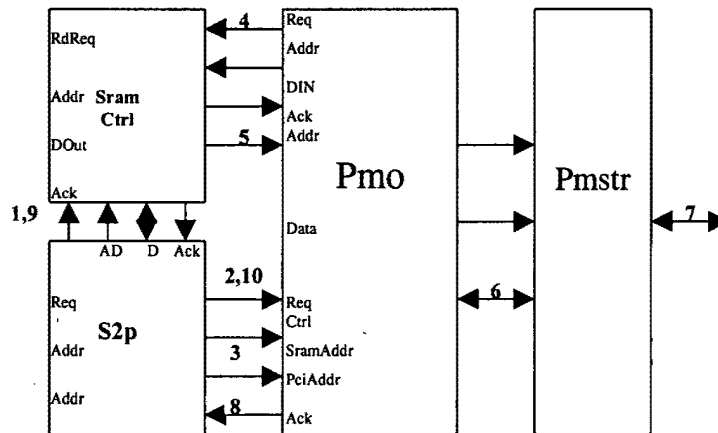
64T01 608T9009



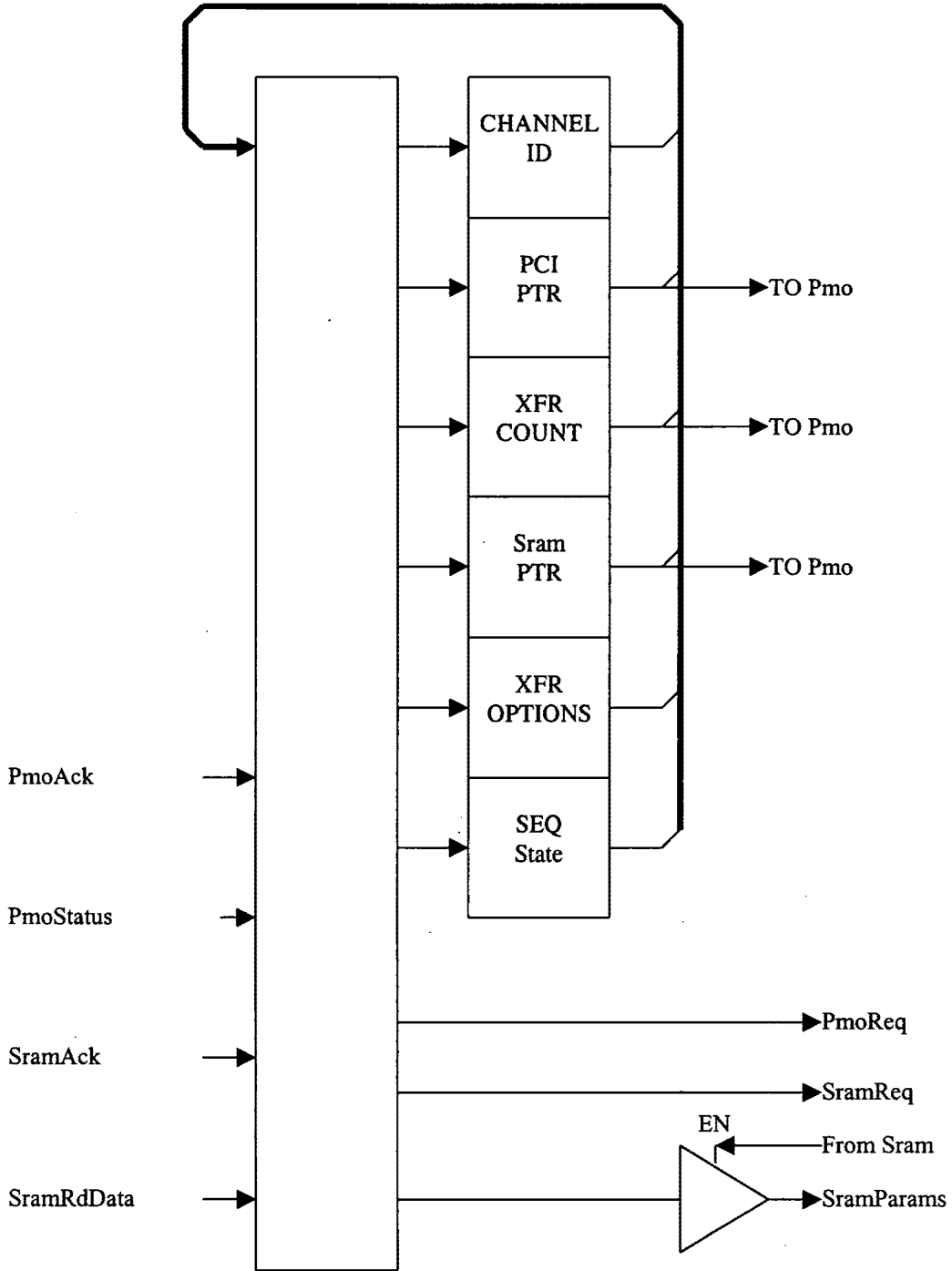
## SRAM TO PCI SEQUENCER (S2p)

The **S2p** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the **Cpu**, the **S2p** sequencer manages movement of data from **Sram** to the **Pci** bus by issuing requests to the **Pmo** sequencer

**S2p** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two **dma** channels. Once a command request has been detected, **S2p**, operating as a slave sequencer, fetches a **dma** descriptor from an **Sram** location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the **Sram** address, **Pci** address, **Pci** endian and request size. **S2p** then issues a request to **Pmo** which in turn moves data from the **Sram** to a **Pci** target. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **S2p** writes ending status in to the **Sram** **dma** descriptor area and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **S2p** then monitors the **dma** channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from **Sram** to **Pci** target.



SRAM TO PCI SEQUENCER (S2p)

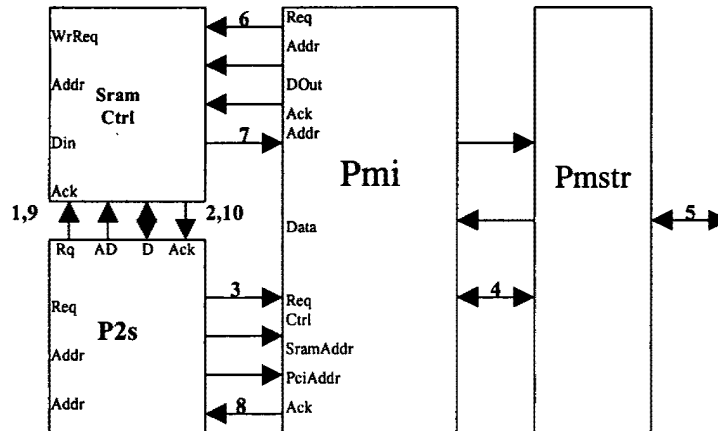


6061809-101497

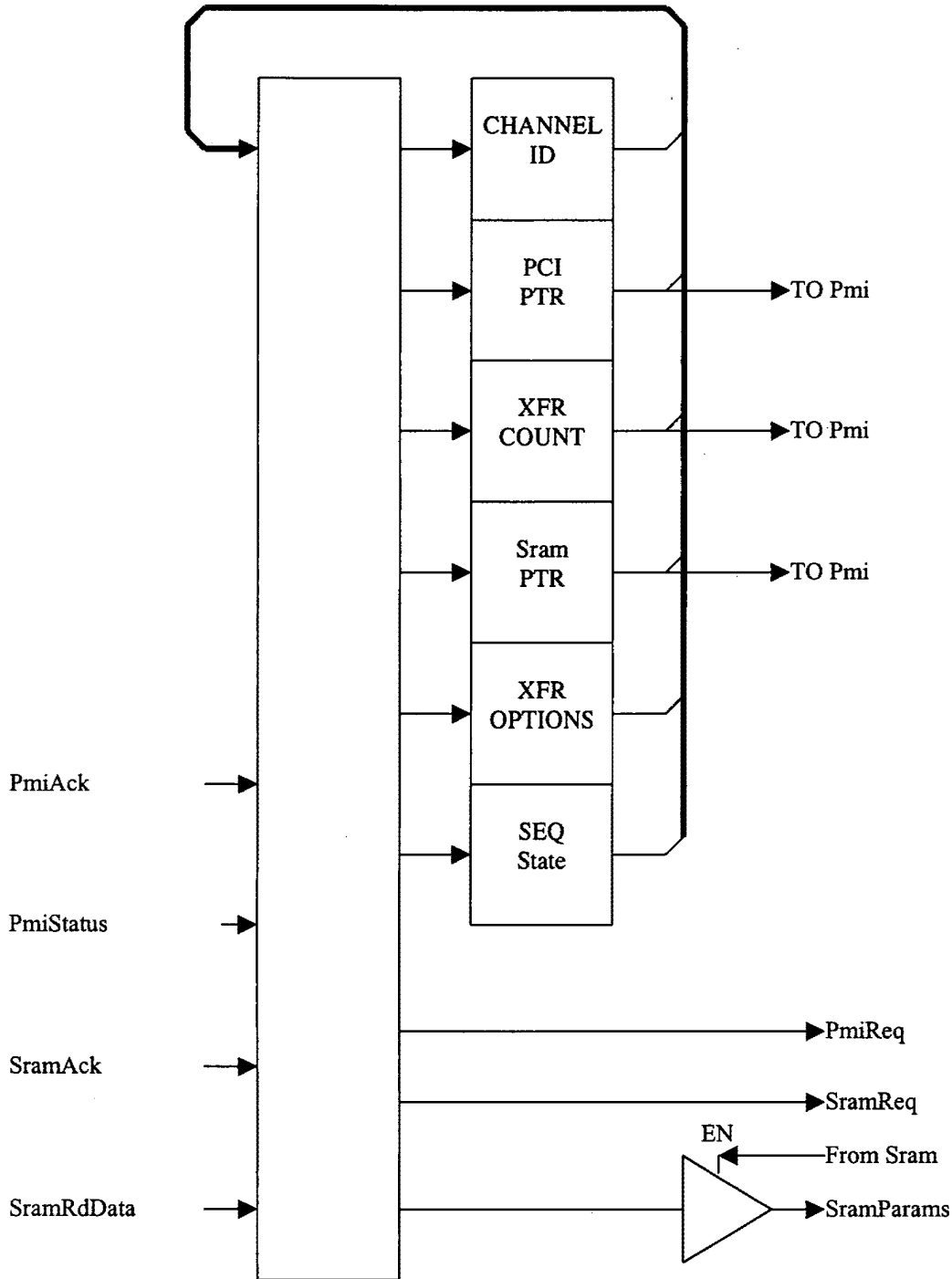
## PCI TO SRAM SEQUENCER (P2s)

The **P2s** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the **Cpu**, the **P2s** sequencer manages movement of data from **Pci** bus to **Sram** by issuing requests to the **Pmi** sequencer.

**P2s** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two **dma** channels. Once a command request has been detected, **P2s**, operating as a slave sequencer, fetches a **dma** descriptor from an **Sram** location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the **Sram** address, **Pci** address, **Pci** endian and request size. **P2s** then issues a request to **Pmi** which in turn moves data from the **Pci** target to the **Sram**. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **P2s** writes ending status in to the **dma** descriptor area of **Sram** and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **P2s** then monitors the **dma** channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from a **Pci** target to **dram**.



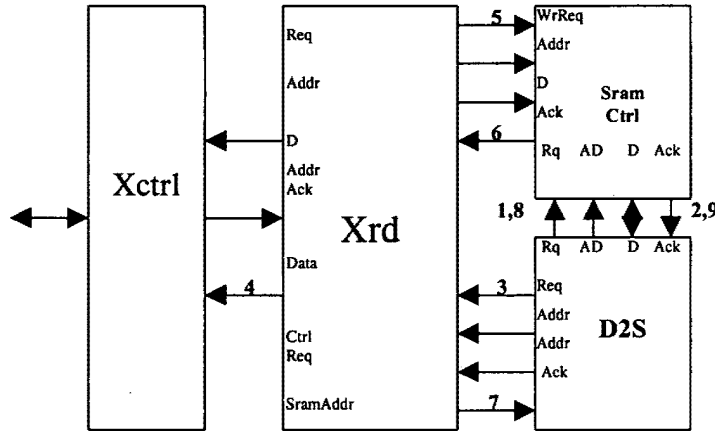
PCI TO SRAM SEQUENCER (P2s)



## DRAM TO SRAM SEQUENCER (D2s)

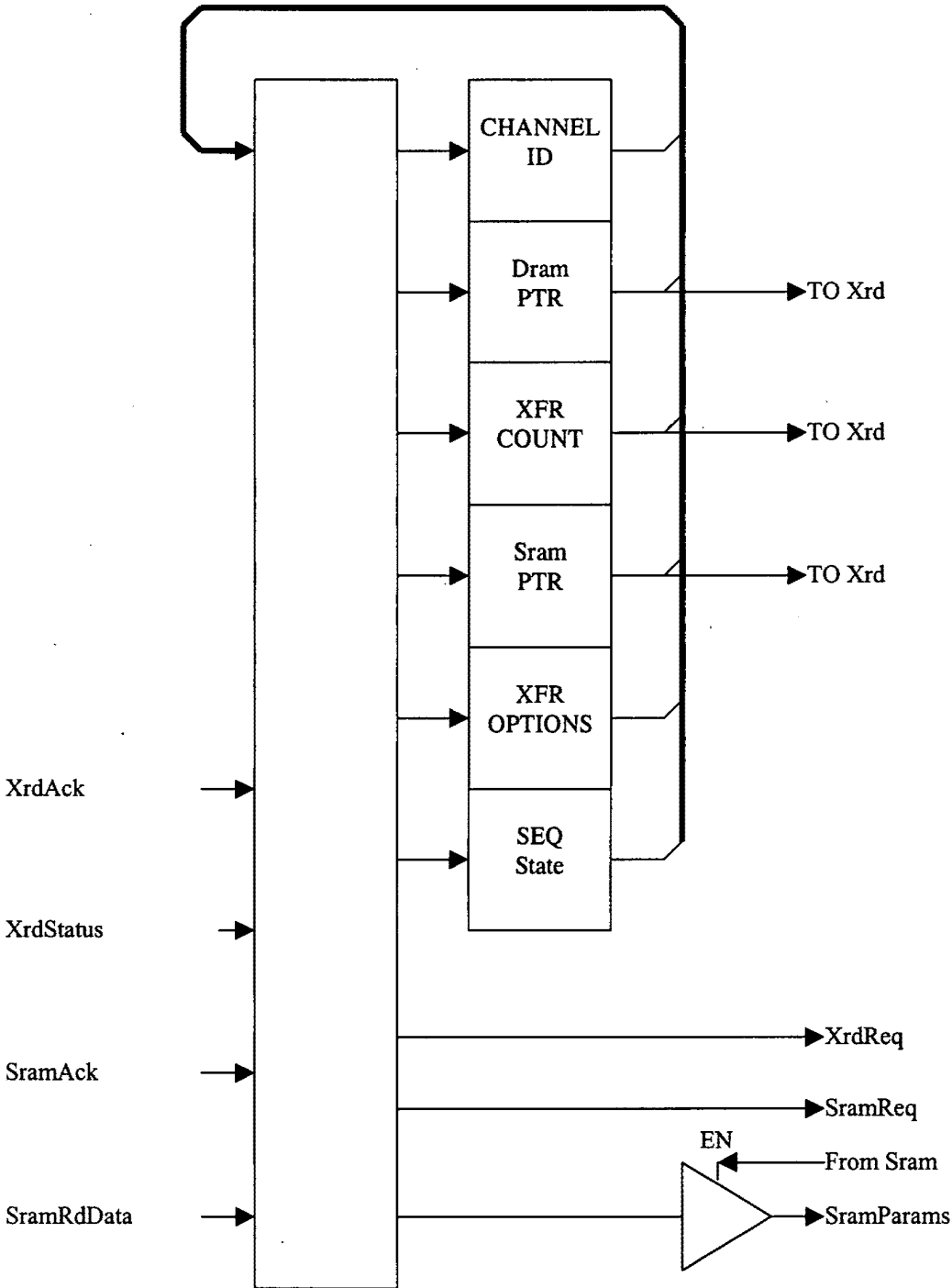
The D2s sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the Cpu, the D2s sequencer manages movement of data from dram to Sram by issuing requests to the Xrd sequencer.

D2s can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two dma channels. Once a command request has been detected, D2s, operating as a slave sequencer, fetches a dma descriptor from an Sram location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the dram address, Sram address and request size. D2s then issues a request to the Xrd sequencer causing the transfer of data to the Sram. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time D2s writes ending status in to the Sram dma descriptor area and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. D2s then monitors the dma channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from dram to Sram.



254707 60879009

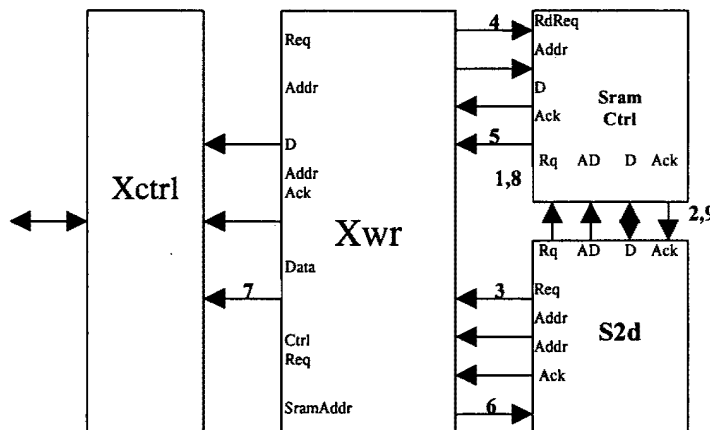
DRAM TO SRAM SEQUENCER (D2s)



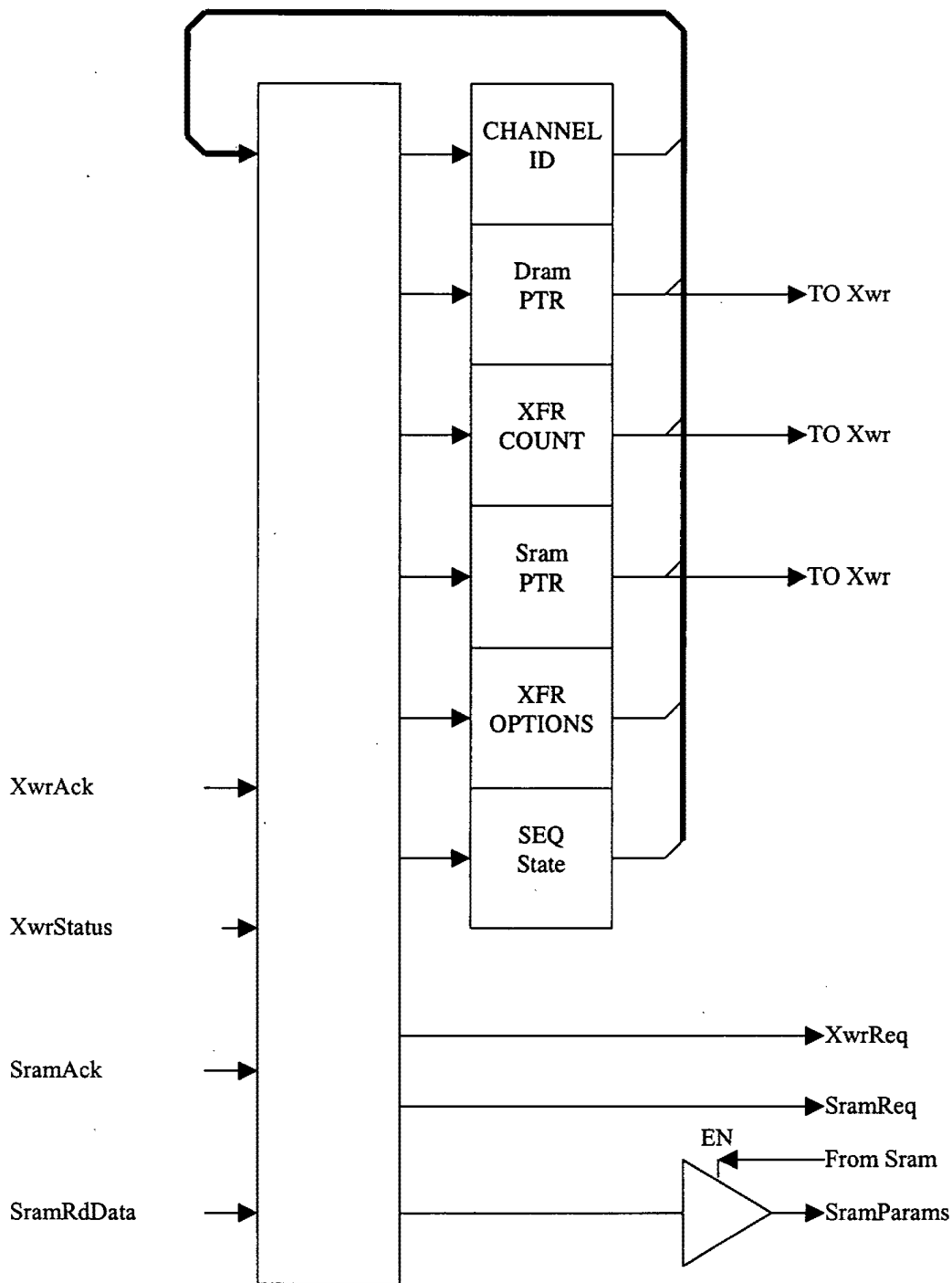
## SRAM TO DRAM SEQUENCER (S2d)

The **S2d** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing channel requests issued by the Cpu, the **S2d** sequencer manages movement of data from Sram to dram by issuing requests to the **Xwr** sequencer.

**S2d** can receive requests from any of the processor's thirty-two dma channels. Once a command request has been detected, **S2d**, operating as a slave sequencer, fetches a dma descriptor from an Sram location dedicated to the requesting channel which includes the dram address, Sram address, checksum reset and request size. **S2d** then issues a request to the **Xwr** sequencer causing the transfer of data to the dram. The process repeats until the entire request has been satisfied at which time **S2d** writes ending status in to the Sram dma descriptor area and sets the channel done bit associated with that channel. **S2d** then monitors the dma channels for additional requests. Following is an illustration showing the major blocks involved in the movement of data from Sram to dram.



SRAM TO DRAM SEQUENCER (S2d)



464477 60879009



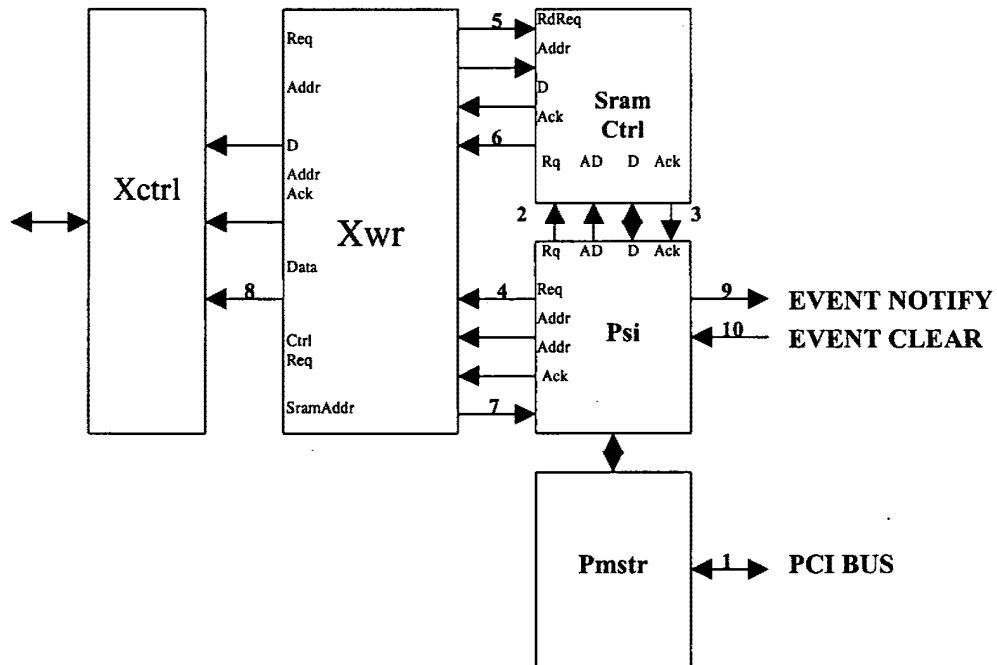
## PCI SLAVE INPUT SEQUENCER (Psi)

The Psi sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing requests issued by a Pci master, the Psi sequencer manages movement of data from Pci bus to Sram and Pci bus to dram via Sram by issuing requests to the SramCtrl and Xwr sequencers.

Psi manages write requests to configuration space, expansion rom, dram, Sram and memory mapped registers. Psi separates these Pci bus operations in to two categories with different action taken for each. Dram accesses result in Psi generating write request to an Sram buffer followed with a write request to the Xwr sequencer. Subsequent write or read dram operations are retry terminated until the buffer has been emptied. An event notification is set for the processor allowing message passing to occur through dram space.

All other Pci write transactions result in Psi posting the write information including Pci address, Pci byte marks and Pci data to a reserved location in Sram, then setting an event flag which the event processor monitors. Subsequent writes or reads of configuration, expansion rom, Sram or registers are terminated with retry until the processor clears the event flag. This allows the INIC to keep pipelining levels to a minimum for the posted write and give the processor ample time to modify data for subsequent Pci read operations.

The following diagram depicts the sequence of events when Psi is the target of a Pci write operation. Note that events 4 through 7 occur only when the write operation targets the dram.



46497-101809-0000

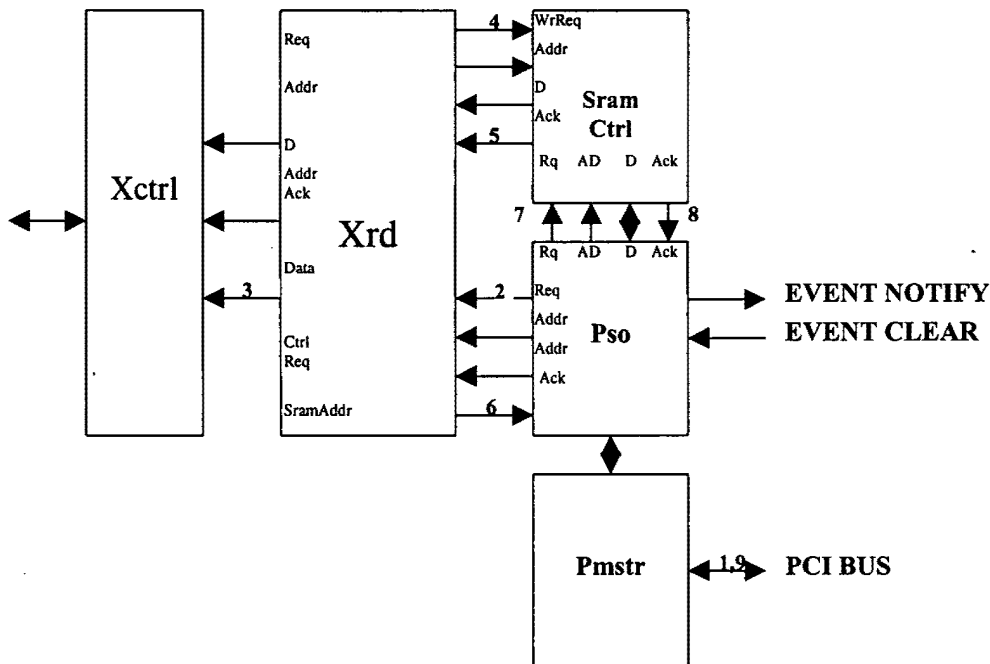
## PCI SLAVE OUTPUT SEQUENCER (Pso)

The **Pso** sequencer acts as both a slave sequencer and a master sequencer. Servicing requests issued by a **Pci** master, the **Pso** sequencer manages movement of data to **Pci** bus form **Sram** and to **Pci** bus from **dram** via **Sram** by issuing requests to the **SramCtrl** and **Xrd** sequencers.

**Pso** manages read requests to configuration space, expansion rom, **dram**, **Sram** and memory mapped registers. **Pso** separates these **Pci** bus operations in to two categories with different action taken for each. **Dram** accesses result in **Pso** generating read request to the **Xrd** sequencer followed with a read request to **Sram** buffer. Subsequent write or read **dram** operations are retry terminated until the buffer has been emptied.

All other **Pci** read transactions result in **Pso** posting the read request information including **Pci** address and **Pci** byte marks to a reserved location in **Sram**, then setting an event flag which the event processor monitors. Subsequent writes or reads of configuration, expansion rom, **Sram** or registers are terminated with retry until the processor clears the event flag. This allows the **INIC** to use a microcoded response mechanism to return data for the request. The processor decodes the request information, formulates or fetches the requested data and stores it in **Sram** then clears the event flag allowing **Pso** to fetch the data and return it on the **Pci** bus.

The following diagram depicts the sequence of events when **Pso** is the target of a **Pci** read operation.

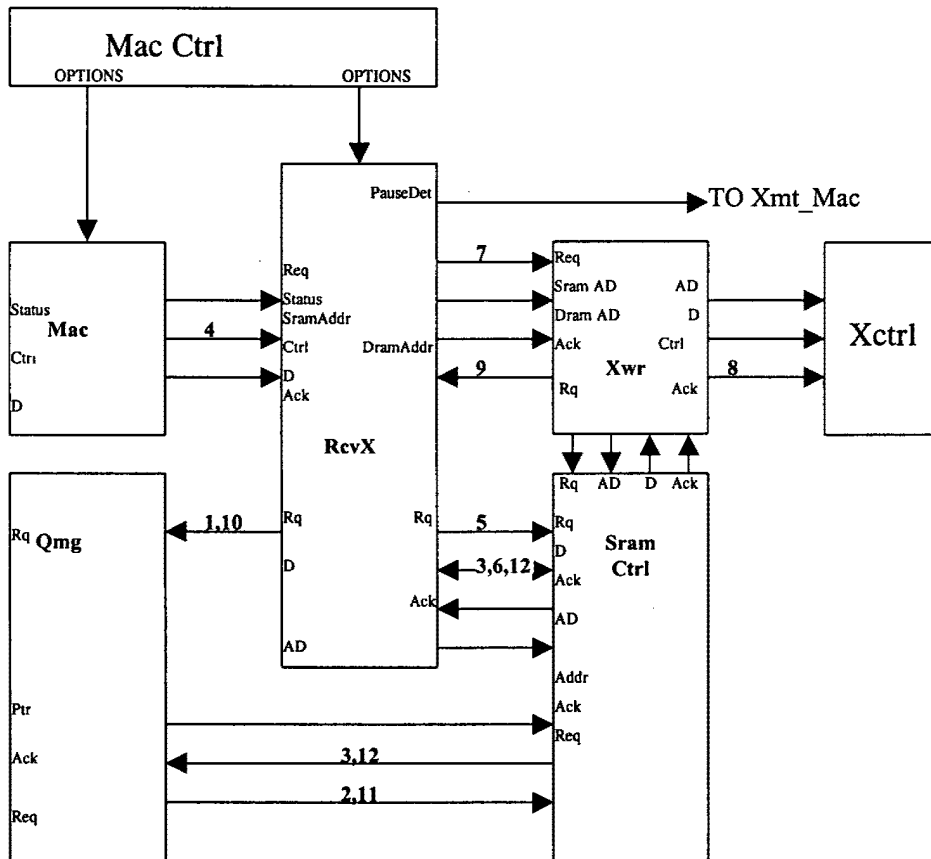


50051809-10149

# FRAME RECEIVE SEQUENCER (RcvX)

The receive sequencer (**RcvSeq**) analyzes and manages incoming packets, stores the result in dram buffers, then notifies the processor through the receive queue (**RcvQ**) mechanism. The process begins when a buffer descriptor is available at the output of the **FreeQ**. **RcvSeq** issues a request to the **Qmg** which responds by supplying the buffer descriptor to **RcvSeq**. **RcvSeq** then waits for a receive packet. The Mac, network, transport and session information is analyzed as each byte is received and stored in the assembly register (**AssyReg**). When four bytes of information is available, **RcvSeq** requests a write of the data to the Sram. When sufficient data has been stored in the Sram based receive fifo, a dram write request is issued to **Xwr**. The process continues until the entire packet has been received at which point **RcvSeq** stores the results of the packet analysis in the beginning of the dram buffer. Once the buffer and status have both been stored, **RcvSeq** issues a write-queue request to **Qmg**. **Qmg** responds by storing a buffer descriptor provided by **RcvSeq**. The process then repeats. If **RcvSeq** detects the arrival of a packet before a free buffer is available, it ignores the packet and sets the **FrameLost** status bit for the next received buffer.

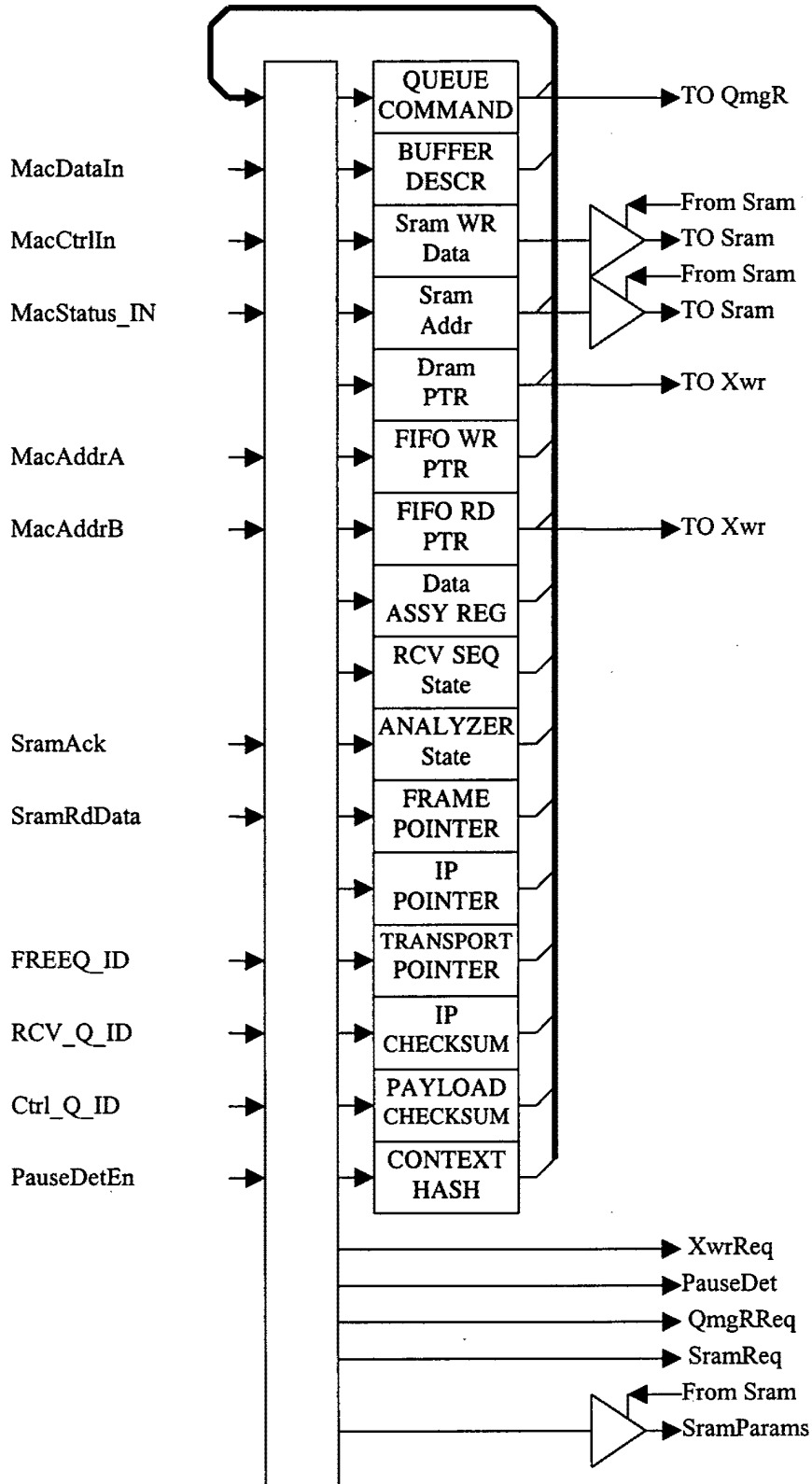
The following diagram depicts the sequence of events for successful reception of a packet followed by a definition of the receive buffer and the buffer descriptor as stored on the **RcvQ**.



"COPY" 60879009

# FRAME RECEIVE SEQUENCER (RcvX)

264707-60875003



## RECEIVE BUFFER DESCRIPTOR

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|-------------|--|
| 31:30      | reserved    |  |
| 29:28      | size        | A copy of the bits in the <b>FreeBufDscr</b> .   |
| 27:00      | address     | Represents the last address + 1 to which frame data was transferred. The address wraps around at the boundary dictated by the <b>S</b> bits. This can be used to determine the size of the frame received. |

## RECEIVE BUFFER FORMAT

**FRAME Status A**      **OFFSET 0x0000:0x0003**

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>  | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|--------------|---|
| 31         | attention    | Indicates one or more of the following: <b>CompositeErr</b> , <b>!IpDn</b> , <b>!MacADet</b> & <b>!MacBDet</b> , <b>IpMcst</b> , <b>IpBcst</b> , <b>!ethernet</b> & <b>!802.3Snap</b> , <b>!Ip4</b> , <b>!Tcp</b> . |
| 30         | CompositeErr | Set when any of the error bits of <b>ErrStatus</b> are set or if frame processing stops while receiving a <b>Tcp</b> or <b>Udp</b> header.  |
| 29         | CtrlFrame    | A control frame was received at our unicast or special <b>MltCst</b> address.   |
| 28         | IpDn         | Frame processing Hlted due to exhaustion of the <b>IP4</b> length counter.  |
| 27         | 802.3Dn      | Frame processing Hlted due to exhaustion of the <b>802.3</b> length counter.  |
| 26         | MacADet      | Frame's destination address matched the contents of <b>MacAddrA</b> .   |
| 25         | MacBDet      | Frame's destination address matched the contents of <b>MacAddrB</b> .   |
| 24         | MacMcst      | The Mac detected a <b>MltCst</b> address.   |
| 23         | MacBcst      | The Mac detected a <b>BrdCst</b> address.   |
| 22         | IpMcst       | The frame processor detected an <b>IP MltCst</b> address.   |
| 21         | IpBcst       | The frame processor detected an <b>IP BrdCst</b> address.   |
| 20         | Frag         | The frame processor detected a <b>Frag IP</b> datagram.   |
| 19         | IpOffst      | The frame processor detected a non-zero <b>IP</b> datagram offset.  |
| 18         | IpFlgs       | The frame processor detected flags within the <b>IP</b> datagram.   |
| 17         | IpOpts       | The frame processor detected a header length greater than 20 for the <b>IP</b> datagram.  |
| 16         | TcpFlgs      | The frame processor detected an abnormal header flag for the <b>TCP</b> segment.  |
| 15         | TcpOpts      | The frame processor detected a header length greater than 20 for the <b>TCP</b> segment.  |
| 14         | TcpUrg       | The frame processor detected a non-zero urgent pointer for the <b>TCP</b> segment.  |
| 13         | CarrierEvt   | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 12         | LongEvt      | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 11         | FrameLost    | Set when an incoming frame could not be processed as a result of an outstanding frame completion event not yet serviced by the utility processor.   |
| 10         | reserved     |   |
| 10         | NoAck        | The frame processor detected a  |
| 09:08      | FrameTyp     | 00 - Reserved.    01- ethernet.    10 - 802.3.    11 - 802.3 Snap.  |
| 07:06      | NwkTyp       | 00 - Unknown.    01- Ip4.    10 - Ip6    11 - ip other.   |
| 05:04      | TrnsptTyp    | 00 - Unknown.    01- reserved.    10 - Tcp    11 - Udp  |
| 03         | NetBios      | A <b>NetBios</b> frame was detected.  |
| 02         | reserved     |   |
| 01:00      | channel      | The Mac on which this frame was received.   |

"OFF" 60BT5009

**FRAME Status B****OFFSET 0x0004:0x0007**

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>       | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-------------------|---|
| 31         | <b>802.3Shrt</b>  | End of frame was encountered before the 802.3 length count was exhausted.   |
| 30         | <b>BufOvr</b>     | The frame length exceeded the buffer space available.   |
| 29         | <b>BadPkt</b>     | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 28         | <b>InvidPrmbl</b> | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 27         | <b>CrcErr</b>     | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 26         | <b>DrblNbbbl</b>  | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 25         | <b>CodeErr</b>    | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 24         | <b>IpHdrShrt</b>  | The IP4 header length field contained a value less than 0x5.  |
| 23         | <b>IpIncmplt</b>  | The frame terminated before the IP length counter was exhausted.  |
| 22         | <b>IpSumErr</b>   | The IP header checksum was not 0xffff at the completion of the IP header read.  |
| 21         | <b>TcpSumErr</b>  | The session checksum was not 0xffff at the termination of session processing.   |
| 20         | <b>TcpHdrShrt</b> | The TCP header length field contained a value less than 0x5.  |
| 19:16      | <b>PrccsCd</b>    | The state of the frame processor at the time the frame processing terminated.<br>0b0000 Processing Mac header.<br>0b0001 Processing 802.3 LLC header.<br>0b0010 Processing 802.3 SNAP header.<br>0b0011 Processing unknown network data.<br>0b0100 Processing IP header.<br>0b0101 Processing IP data (unknown transport).<br>0b0110 Processing transport header (IP data).<br>0b0111 Processing transport data (IP data).<br>0b1000 Processing IP processing complete.<br>0b1001 Reserved.<br>0b101x Reserved.<br>0b11xx Reserved. |
| 15:08      | <b>MacHsh</b>     | The Mac destination-address hash. Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .   |
| 07:00      | <b>CtxHsh</b>     | The 8-bit context-hash generated by exclusive-oring all bytes of the IP source address, IP destination-address, transport source port and the transport destination port.   |

**TIME STAMP****OFFSET 0x0008:0x000B**

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>    | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|----------------|---|
| 31:00      | <b>RcvTime</b> | The contents of FreeClk at the completion of the frame receive operation. |

**CHECKSUM****OFFSET 0x000C:0x000F**

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>      | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|------------------|--|
| 31:16      | <b>IpChksum</b>  | Reflects the value of the IP header checksum at frame completion or IP header completion. If an IP datagram was not detected, the checksum provides a total for the entire data portion of the received frame. The data area is defined as those bytes received after the type field of an ethernet frame, the LLC header of an 802.3 frame or the SNAP header of an 802.3-SNAP frame. |
| 15:00      | <b>TcpChksum</b> | Reflects the value of the transport checksum at IP completion or frame completion. If IP was detected but session was unknown, the checksum will not include the psuedo-header. If IP was not detected, the checksum will be 0x0000.   |

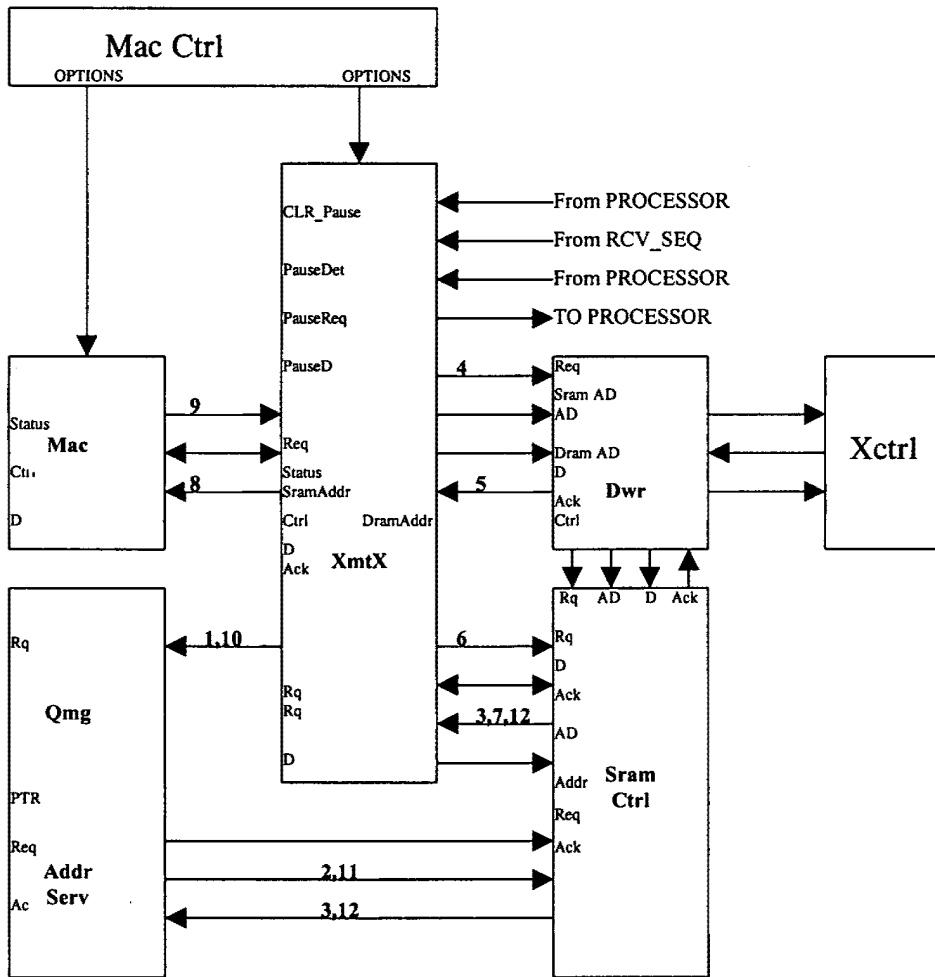
**RESERVED****OFFSET 0x0010:0x0011****FRAME Data****OFFSET 0x0012:END OF BUFFER**

25497 " 60819009

# FRAME TRANSMIT SEQUENCER (XmtX)

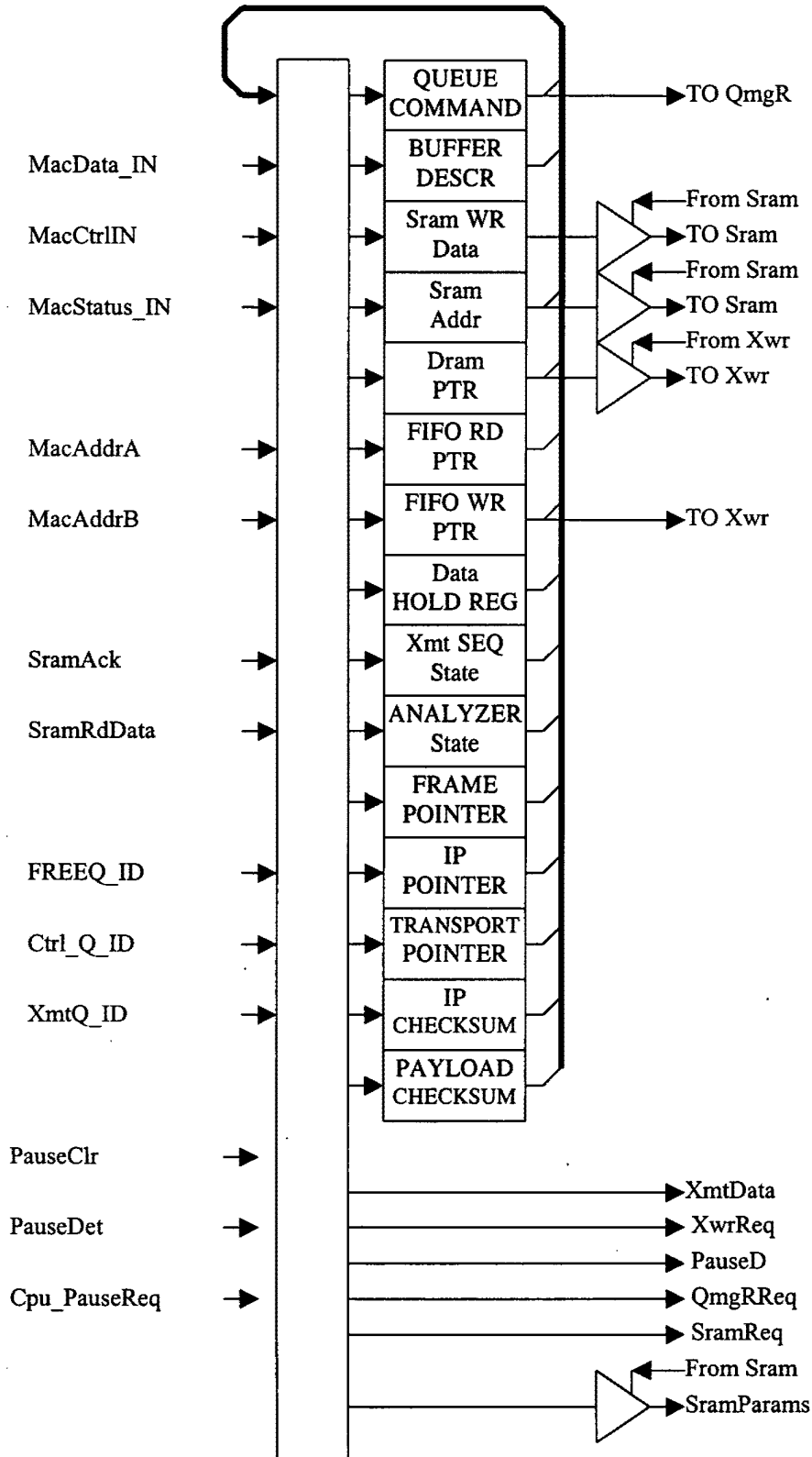
The transmit sequencer (**XmtSeq**) analyzes and manages outgoing packets, using buffer descriptors retrieved from the transmit queue (**XmtQ**) then storing the descriptor for the freed buffer in the free buffer queue (**FreeQ**). The process begins when a buffer descriptor is available at the output of the **XmtQ**. **XmtSeq** issues a request to the **Qmg** which responds by supplying the buffer descriptor to **XmtSeq**. **XmtSeq** then issues a read request to the **Xrd** sequencer. Next, **XmtSeq** issues a read request to **SramCtrl** then instructs the Mac to begin frame transmission. The Mac accepts data from **XmtSeq** which analyzes the packet as it flies-by in order to generate checksums to insert in the data stream. Once the frame transmission has completed, **XmtSeq** stores the buffer descriptor on the **FreeQ** thereby recycling the buffer.

The following diagram depicts the sequence of events for successful transmission of a packet followed by a definition of the receive buffer and the buffer descriptor as stored on the **XmtQ**.



COPYRIGHT © 2009

# FRAME TRANSMIT SEQUENCER (XmtX)



464707 608T9009



## TRANSMIT BUFFER DESCRIPTOR

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-------------|---|
| 31         | ChksumEn    | When set, XmtSeq will insert a calculated checksum. When reset, XmtSeq will not alter the outgoing data stream.   |
| 30         | reserved    |   |
| 29:28      | size        | Represents the size of the buffer by indicating at what boundary the buffer should start and terminate. This is used in combination with EndAddr to determine the starting address of the buffer :<br><br>S = 0 256B boundary. A[7:0] ignored.<br>S = 1 2KB boundary. A[10:0] ignored.<br>S = 2 4KB boundary. A[11:0] ignored.<br>S = 3 32KB boundary. A[14:0] ignored. |
| 27:00      | EndAddr     | The address of the last byte to transmit plus one.  |

## TRANSMIT BUFFER FORMAT

CHECKSUM PRIMER    OFFSET 0x0000:0x0003

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|-------------|--|
| 31:00      | Primer      | A value to be added during checksum accumulation. For IPV4, this should include the psuedo-header values, protocol and Tcp-length. |

RESERVED            OFFSET 0x0004:0x0005

FRAME Data         OFFSET 0x0006:END OF BUFFER

## TRANSMIT Status VECTOR

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>    | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|----------------|--|
| 31         | LnkErr         | Indicates that a link status error occurred before or during transmit. |
| 30:15      | reserved       |  |
| 14         | ExcessDeferral | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 13         | LateAbort      | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 12         | ExcessColl     | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 11         | UnderRun       | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 10         | ExcessLgth     | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 09         | Okay           | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 08         | deferred       | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 07         | BrdCst         | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 06         | MltCst         | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 05         | CrcErr         | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 04         | LateColl       | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |
| 03:00      | CollCnt        | Refer to <i>E110 Technical Manual</i> .                                |

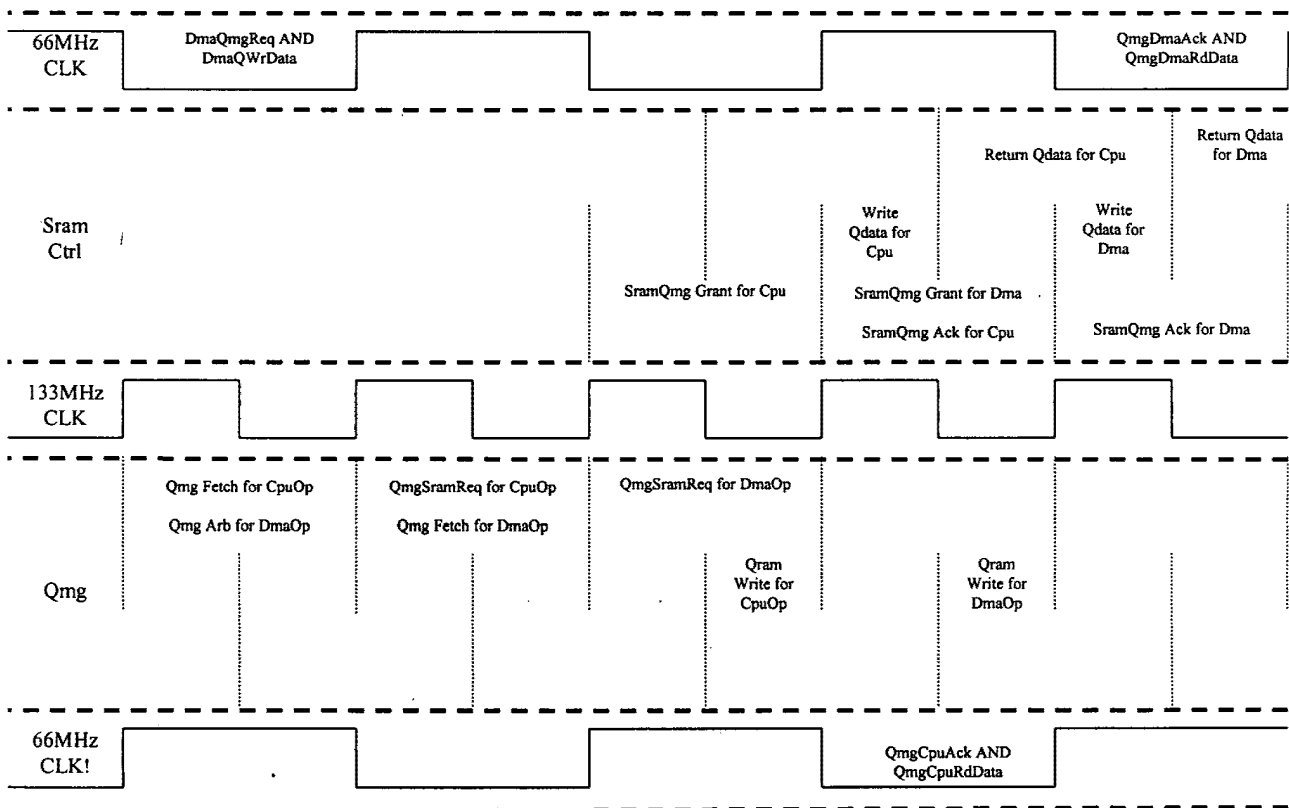
E0051809-101497

## QUEUE MANAGER (Qmg)

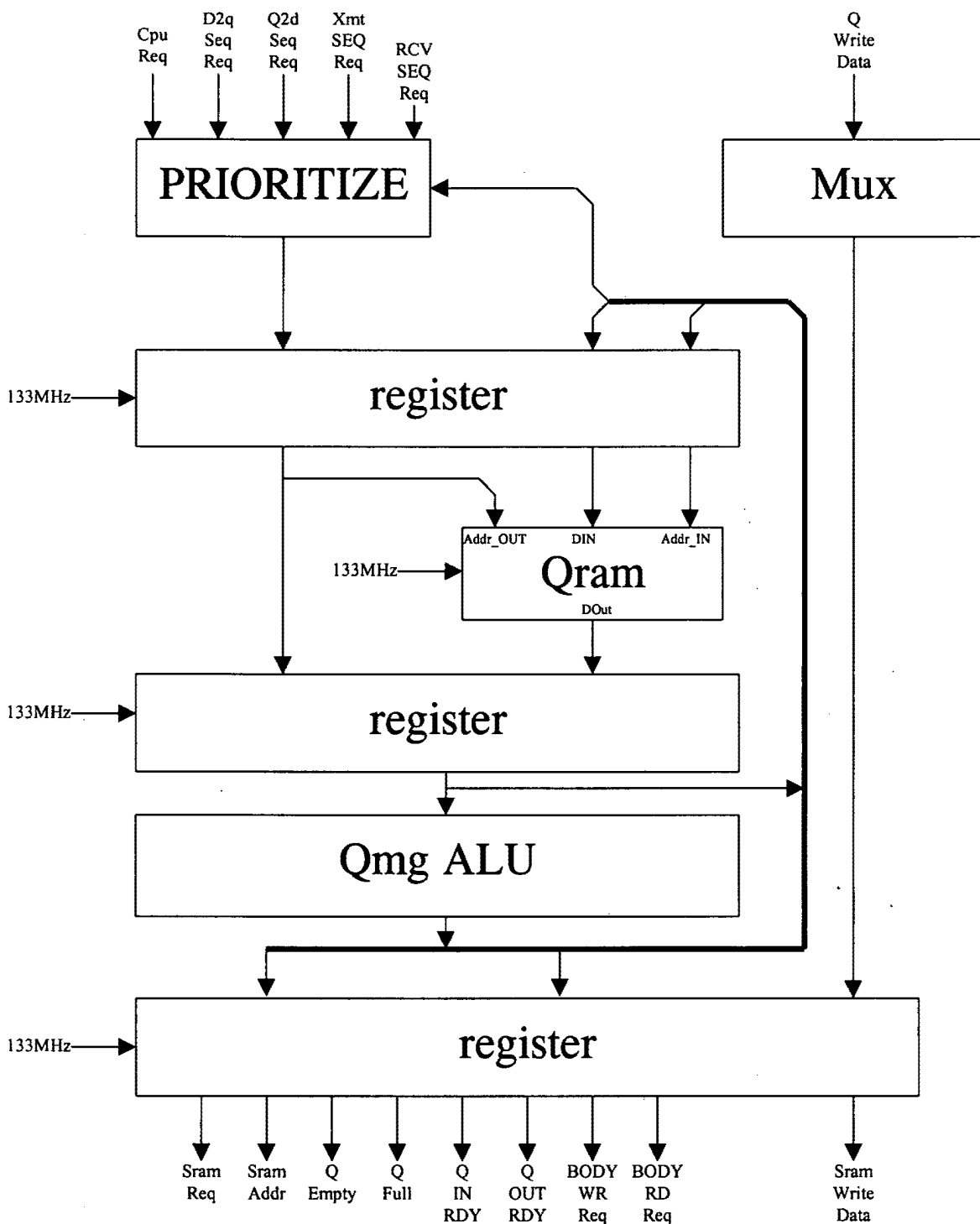
The INIC includes special hardware assist for the implementation of message and pointer queues. The hardware assist is called the queue manager (**Qmg**) and manages the movement of queue entries between Cpu and Sram, between dma sequencers and Sram as well as between Sram and dram. Queues comprise three distinct entities; the queue head (**QHd**), the queue tail (**QTl**) and the queue body (**QBdy**). **QHd** resides in 64 bytes of scratch ram and provides the area to which entries will be written (pushed). **QTl** resides in 64 bytes of scratch ram and contains queue locations from which entries will be read (popped). **QBdy** resides in dram and contains locations for expansion of the queue in order to minimize the Sram space requirements. The **QBdy** size depends upon the queue being accessed and the initialization parameters presented during queue initialization.

**Qmg** accepts operations from both Cpu and dma sources. Executing these operations at a frequency of 133MHz, **Qmg** reserves even cycles for dma requests and reserves odd cycles for Cpu requests. Valid Cpu operations include initialize queue (**InitQ**), write queue (**WrQ**) and read queue (**RdQ**). Valid dma requests include read body (**RdBdy**) and write body (**WrBdy**). **Qmg** working in unison with **Q2d** and **D2q** generate requests to the **Xwr** and **Xrd** sequencers to control the movement of data between the **QHd**, **QTl** and **QBdy**.

The preceding block diagram shows the major functions of **Qmg**. The arbiter selects the next operation to be performed. The dual-ported Sram holds the queue variables **HdWrAddr**, **HdRdAddr**, **TIWrAddr**, **TIRdAddr**, **BdyWrAddr**, **BdyRdAddr** and **Qsz**. **Qmg** accepts an operation request, fetches the queue variables from the queue ram (**Qram**), modifies the variables based on the current state and the requested operation then updates the variables and issues a read or write request to the Sram controller. The Sram controller services the requests by writing the tail or reading the head and returning an acknowledge.



# QUEUE MANAGER (Qmg)



"608T900S"

## DMA OPERATIONS

DMA operations are accomplished through a combination of thirtytwo dma channels (**DmaCh**) and seven dma sequencers (**DmaSeq**). Each dma channel provides a mechanism whereby a Cpu can issue a command to any of the seven dma sequencers. Where as the dma channels are multi-purpose, the dma sequencers they command are single purpose as follows.

| <u>dma seq #</u> | <u>name</u>   | <u>description</u>                  |
|------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0                | none          | This is a no operation address.     |
| 1                | <b>D2dSeq</b> | Moves data from ExtMem to ExtMem.   |
| 2                | <b>D2sSeq</b> | Moves data from ExtMem bus to sram. |
| 3                | <b>D2pSeq</b> | Moves data from ExtMem to Pci bus.  |
| 4                | <b>S2dSeq</b> | Moves data from sram to ExtMem.     |
| 5                | <b>S2pSeq</b> | Moves data from sram to Pci bus.    |
| 6                | <b>P2dSeq</b> | Moves data from Pci bus to ExtMem.  |
| 7                | <b>P2sSeq</b> | Moves data from Pci bus to sram.    |

The processors manage dma in the following way. The processor writes a dma descriptor to an Sram location reserved for the dma channel. The format of the dma descriptor is dependent upon the targeted dma sequencer. The processor then writes the dma sequencer number to the channel command register.

Each of the dma sequencers polls all thirtytwo dma channels in search of commands to execute. Once a command request has been detected, the dma sequencer fetches a dma descriptor from a fixed location in Sram. The Sram location is fixed and is determined by the dma channel number. The dma sequencer loads the dma descriptor in to it's own registers, executes the command, then overwrites the dma descriptor with ending status. Once the command has halted, due to completion or error, and the ending status has been written, the dma sequencer sets the done bit for the current dma channel.

The done bit appears in a dma event register which the Cpu can examine. The Cpu fetches ending status from Sram, then clears the done bit by writing zeroes to the channel command (**ChCmd**) register. The channel is now ready to accept another command.

The format of all channel command registers is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>  | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|--------------|---|
| 31:11      | reserved     | Data written to these bits is ignored.  |
| 10:8       | <b>ChCmd</b> | 0 - Stops execution of the current operation and clears the corresponding event flag.<br>1 - Transfer data from ExtMem to ExtMem.<br>2 - Transfer data from ExtMem bus to sram.<br>3 - Transfer data from ExtMem to Pci bus.<br>4 - Transfer data from sram to ExtMem.<br>5 - Transfer data from sram to Pci bus.<br>6 - Transfer data from Pci bus to ExtMem.<br>7 - Transfer data from Pci bus to Sram. |
| 07:05      | reserved     | Data written to these bits is ignored.  |
| 04:00      | <b>ChId</b>  | Provides the channel number for the channel command.  |

254707-6979009

The format of the **P2d** or **P2s** descriptor is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>      | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|------------------|---|
| 127:96     | <b>PciAddrH</b>  | Bits [63:32] of the Pci address.  |
| 95:64      | <b>PciAddrL</b>  | Bits [31:00] of the Pci address.  |
| 59:32      | <b>MemAddr</b>   | Bits [27:00] of the ExtMem address or bits [15:00] of the Sram address. |
| 31         | <b>PciEndian</b> | When set, selects big endian mode for Pci transfers.                    |
| 30         | <b>WideDbI</b>   | When set, disables Pci 64-bit mode.                                     |
| 22         | <b>DstFlash</b>  | Selects Flash for the external memory destination of <b>P2d</b> .       |
| 15:00      | <b>XfrSz</b>     | Bits [15:00] of the requested dma size expressed in bytes.              |

The format of the **S2p** or **D2p** descriptor is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>      | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|------------------|---|
| 123:96     | <b>MemAddr</b>   | Bits [27:00] of the ExtMem address or bits [15:00] of the Sram address. |
| 95:64      | <b>PciAddrH</b>  | Bits [63:32] of the Pci address.  |
| 63:32      | <b>PciAddrL</b>  | Bits [31:00] of the Pci address.  |
| 30         | <b>SrcFlash</b>  | Selects Flash for the external memory source of <b>D2p</b> .            |
| 23         | <b>PciEndian</b> | When set, selects big endian mode for Pci transfers.                    |
| 22         | <b>WideDbI</b>   | When set, disables Pci 64-bit mode.                                     |
| 15:00      | <b>XfrSz</b>     | Bits [15:00] of the requested dma size expressed in bytes.              |

The format of the **S2d**, **D2d** or **D2s** descriptor is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>     | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|-----------------|---|
| 127:124    | reserved        | Reserved for future use.  |
| 123:96     | <b>SrcAddr</b>  | Bits [27:00] of the ExtMem address or bits [15:00] of the Sram address.         |
| 95:60      | reserved        | Reserved for future use.  |
| 59:32      | <b>DstAddr</b>  | Bits [27:00] of the ExtMem address or bits [15:00] of the Sram address.         |
| 30         | <b>FlashSel</b> | Selects Flash for the external memory source of <b>D2d</b> or <b>D2s</b> .      |
| 22         | <b>FlashSel</b> | Selects Flash for the external memory destination of <b>S2p</b> or <b>D2d</b> . |
| 15:00      | <b>XfrSz</b>    | Bits [15:00] of the requested dma size expressed in bytes.                      |

The format of the ending status or all channels is as follows.

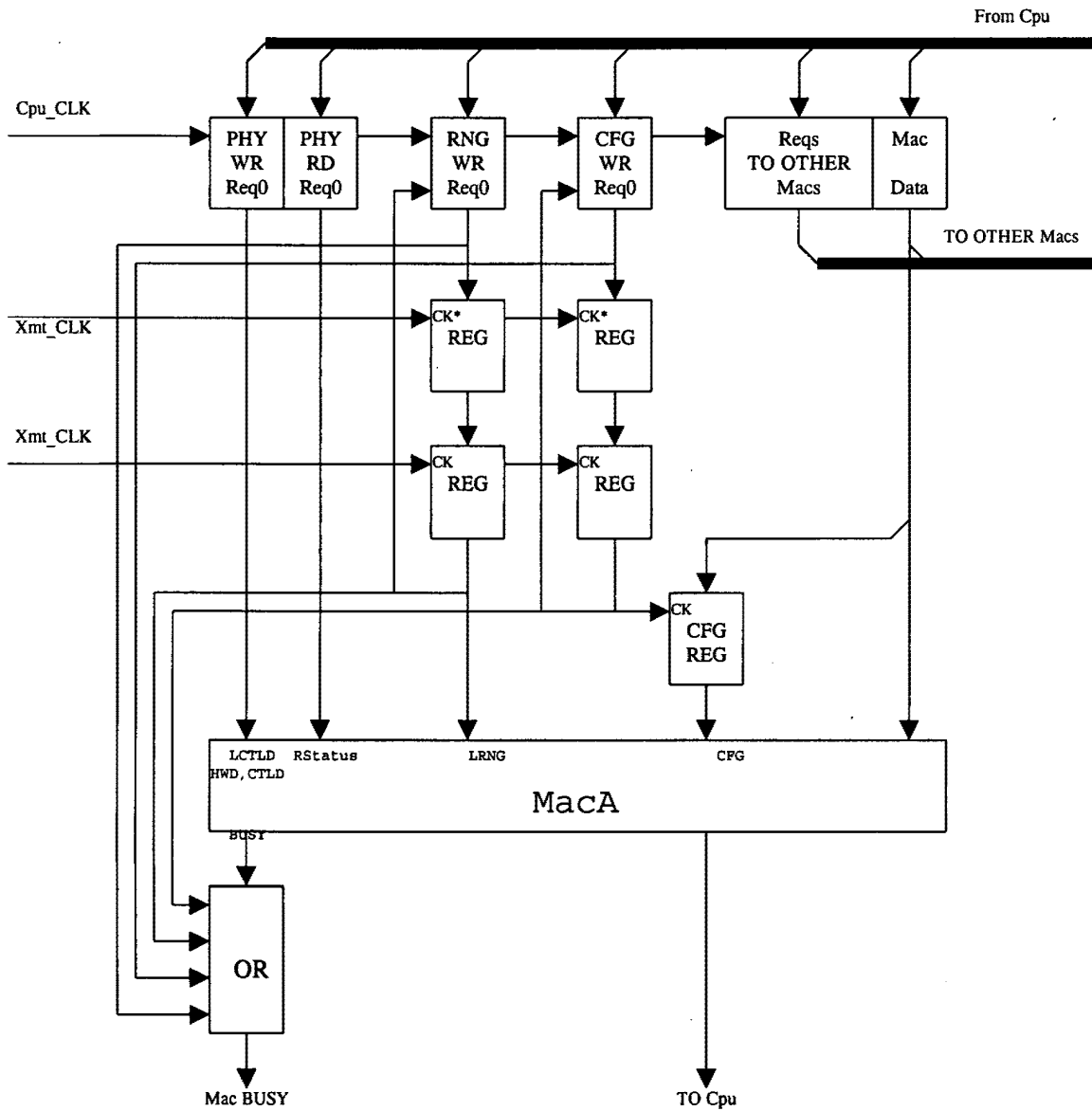
| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u>      | <u>description</u>  |
|------------|------------------|---|
| 127:64     | reserved         | Not used.   |
| 63:32      | <b>ChkSum</b>    | Represents the 1's compliment sum of all halfwords transferred during a <b>P2d</b> or <b>D2d</b> operation only.      |
| 31:24      | reserved         | Reserved for future use.  |
| 23:20      | <b>SrcStatus</b> | TBD.  |
| 19:16      | <b>DstStatus</b> | TBD.  |
| 15:00      | <b>XfrSz</b>     | Bits [15:00] of the residual dma size expressed in bytes. This value will be zero if the dma operation was successful |

The format of the **ChEvt** register is as follows.

| <u>bit</u> | <u>name</u> | <u>description</u>   |
|------------|-------------|--|
| 31:00      | <b>ChDn</b> | Each bit represents the done flag for the respective dma channel. These bits are set by a dma sequencer upon completion of the channel command. Cleared when the processor writes 0 to the corresponding <b>ChCmd</b> register <b>ChCmdOp</b> field. |

"SECRET" 60879009

# MAC CONTROL (Macctrl)



454707-6087909

## Appendix A

The following load calculations are based on the following basic formulae:

$N = X * R$  (Little's Law) where

N = number of jobs in the system (either in progress or in a queue),

X = system throughput,

R = response time (which includes time waiting in queues).

$U = X * S$  (from Little's Law) where

S = service time,

U = utilization.

$R = S / (1-U)$  for exponential service times (which is the worst-case assumption).

A 256 byte frame at 100Mb/sec takes 20  $\mu$ sec per frame.

4 \* 100 Mbit ethernets receiving at full frame rate is:

51200 (4 \* 12800) frames/sec @ 1024 bytes/frame

102000 frames/sec @ 512 bytes/frame

204000 frames/sec @ 256 bytes/frame.

The following calculations assume 250 instructions/frame, 45nsec clock. Thus

$S = 250 * 45 \text{ nsecs} = 11.2 \mu\text{secs}$ .

| Av. Frame Size | Thruput<br>(X) | Utilization<br>(U) | Response<br>(R) | Nbr. in system<br>(N) |
|----------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1024           | 51200          | .57                | 26 usecs        | 1.3                   |
| 512            | 102000         | > 1                | --              | --                    |
| 256            | 204000         | > 1                | --              | --                    |

Lets look at it for varying instructions per frame assuming 512 bytes per frame average.

| Instns<br>Per Frame | Service<br>Time (S) | Thruput<br>(X) | Utilization<br>(U) | Response<br>(R) | Nbr. in system<br>(N) |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 250                 | 11.2 usec           | 102000         | > 1                | --              | --                    |
| 250                 | 11.2                | 85000 (*)      | .95                | 224 usecs       | 19                    |
| 250                 | 11.2                | 80000 (**)     | .89                | 101             | 8                     |
| 225                 | 10                  | 102000         | 1.0                | --              | --                    |
| 225                 | 10                  | 95000 (*)      | .95                | 200             | 19                    |
| 225                 | 10                  | 89000 (**)     | .89                | 90              | 8                     |
| 200                 | 9                   | 102000         | .9                 | 90              | 9                     |
| 150                 | 6.7                 | 102000         | .68                | 20              | 2                     |

(\*) shows what frame rate can be supported to get a utilization of less than 1.

(\*\*) shows what frame rate can be supported with 8 SRAM TCB buffers and at least 8 process contexts.

If 100 instructions / frame is used,  $S = 100 * 45 \text{ nsecs} = 4.5 \text{ usecs}$ , and we can support 256 byte frames:

|     |     |        |     |    |    |
|-----|-----|--------|-----|----|----|
| 100 | 4.5 | 204000 | .91 | 50 | 10 |
|-----|-----|--------|-----|----|----|

Firstly note that these calculations assume that response times increase exponentially as utilization increases. This is the worst-case assumption, and probably may not be true for our system.

The figures show that to support a theoretical full 4 \* 100 Mbit receive load with an average frame size of 512 bytes, there will need to be 19 active "jobs" in the system, assuming 250 instructions per frame. Due to SRAM limitations, the current design specifies 8 SRAM buffers for active TCBs, and not to swap a TCB out of SRAM once it is active. So under these limitations, the INIC will not be able to keep up with the full frame rate. Note that the initial implementation is trying to use only 8KB of SRAM, although 16KB may be available, in which case 19 TCB SRAM buffers could be used. This is a cost trade-off.


The real point here is the effect of instructions/frame on the throughput that can be maintained. If the instructions/frame drops to 200, then the INIC is capable of handling the full theoretical load (102000 frames/second) with only 9 active TCBs. If it drops to 100 instructions per frame, then the INIC can handle full bandwidth at 256 byte frames (204000 frames/second) with 10 active TCBs. The bottom line is that ALL hardware-assist that reduces the instructions/frame is really worthwhile. If header-assist hardware can save us 50 instructions per frame then it goes straight to the throughput bottom line.

---

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING UNDER 37 CFR 1.10

I hereby certify that this Provisional Patent Application is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee", label number EH756230105US, in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on October 14, 1997.

Date: October 14, 1997

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Mark Lauer  
(person mailing Application)

6061809 101497



70014 U.S. PTO  
 68-406-6009  
 10/13/97  
 Class  
 PROVISIONAL APPLICATION NUMBER

| POSITION    | ID NO. | DATE    |
|-------------|--------|---------|
| CLASSIFIER  |        |         |
| EXAMINER    |        |         |
| TYPIST      | 71702  | 1-30-98 |
| VERIFIER    |        |         |
| CORPS CORR. | 66548  | 11-2-98 |
| SPEC. HAND  |        |         |
| FILE MAINT  |        |         |
| DRAFTING    |        |         |

SERIAL NUMBER  
 6070011309 110  
 PROVISIONAL

APPLICANTS  
 LAWRENCE B. BOLL  
 PETER K. CRAFT  
 CLIVE M. PHILBR

CONTINUING DATA  
 VERIFIED

FOREIGN APPLICANT  
 VERIFIED

FOREIGN FILING

Foreign priority claimed  
 35 USC 119 conditions met  
 Verified and Acknowledged

MARK LAUER  
 SUITE 250  
 6850 REGIONAL  
 DUBLIN CA 94568

INTELLIGENT

TITLE

SCAN